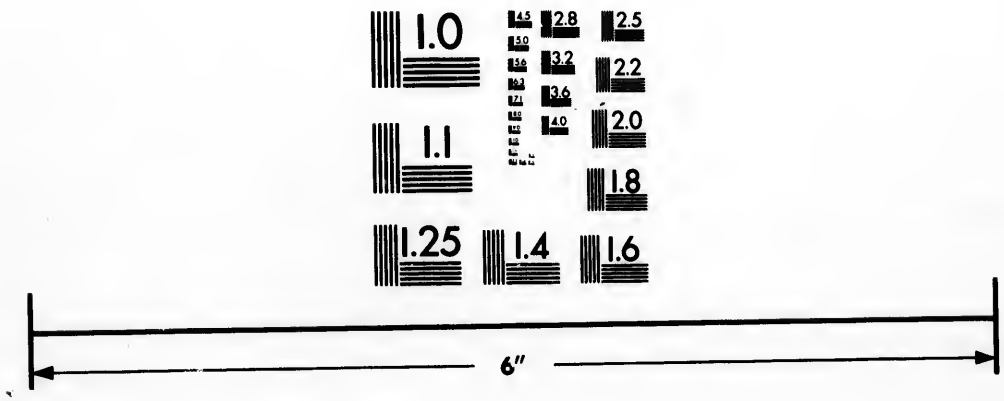
IMAGE EVALUATION
TEST TARGET (MT-3)



Photographic Sciences Corporation

23 WEST MAIN STREET
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580
(716) 872-4503

Technical and Bibliographic Notes/Notes techniques et bibliographiques

The Institute has attempted to obtain the best original copy available for filming. Features of this copy which may be bibliographically unique, which may alter any of the images in the reproduction, or which may significantly change the usual method of filming, are checked below.

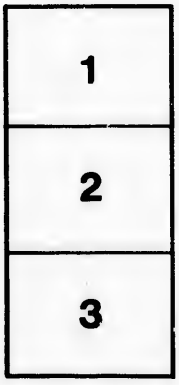
L'Institut a microfilmé le meilleur exemplaire qu'il lui a été possible de se procurer. Les détails de cet exemplaire qui sont peut-être uniques du point de vue bibliographique, qui peuvent modifier une image reproduite, ou qui peuvent exiger une modification dans la méthode normale de filmage sont indiqués ci-dessous.

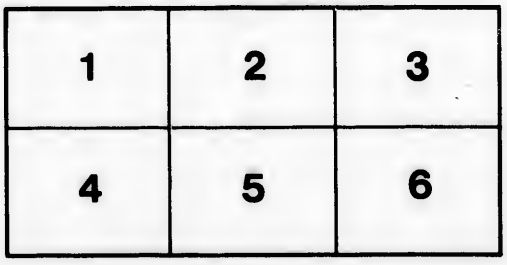
- [x] Coloured covers/ Couverture de couleur
- [x] Covers damaged/ Couverture endommagée
- [x] Covers restored and/or laminated/ Couverture restaurée et/ou pelliculée
- [ ] Cover title missing/ Le titre de couverture manque
- [ ] Coloured maps/ Cartes géographiques en couleur
- [ ] Coloured ink (i.e. other than blue or black)/ Encre de couleur (i.e. autre que bleue ou noire)
- [ ] Coloured plates and/or illustrations/ Planches et/ou illustrations en couleur
- [ ] Bound with other material/ Relié avec d'autres documents
- [x] Tight binding may cause shadows or distortion along interior margin/ La reliure serrée peut causer de l'ombre ou de la distortion le long de la marge intérieure
- [ ] Blank leaves added during restoration may appear within the text. Whenever possible, these have been omitted from filming/ Il se peut que certaines pages blanches ajoutées lors d'une restauration apparaissent dans le texte, mais, lorsque cela était possible, ces pages n'ont pas été filmées.
- [ ] Additional comments:/ Commentaires supplémentaires:

- [ ] Coloured pages/ Pages de couleur
- [x] Pages damaged/ Pages endommagées
- [ ] Pages restored and/or laminated/ Pages restaurées et/ou pelliculées
- [x] Pages discoloured, stained or foxed/ Pages décolorées, tachetées ou piquées
- [x] Pages detached/ Pages détachées
- [ ] Showthrough/ Transparence
- [ ] Quality of print varies/ Qualité inégale de l'impression
- [ ] Includes supplementary material/ Comprend du matériel supplémentaire
- [ ] Only edition available/ Seule édition disponible
- [ ] Pages wholly or partially obscured by errata slips, tissues, etc., have been refilmed to ensure the best possible image/ Les pages totalement ou partiellement obscurcies par un feuillet d'errata, une pelure, etc., ont été filmées à nouveau de façon à obtenir la meilleure image possible.

This item is filmed at the reduction ratio checked below/
Ce document est filmé au taux de réduction indiqué ci-dessous.

10X		14X		18X		22X		26X		30X	
	12X		16X		20X		24X		28X		32X





SI

Ac

JOU

S
O

In FOU
and P

Vol. I. (
E

Vol. II. (
E

Vol. III.
"Ar

LONGMA
and
Als

Published by Authority

NEW EDITION OF

THE INFANTRY SWORD EXERCISE.

WITH ILLUSTRATIONS.

PRICE SIXPENCE.

LONDON:

Printed under the Superintendence of H. M. Stationery Office,

AND SOLD BY

PARKER, SON, and BOURN, 445, West Strand; W. CLOWES and Sons, 14, Charing Cross; HARRISON and SONS, 59, Pall Mall; and W. H. ALLEN and Co., 13, Waterloo Place.

Also by ALEX. THOM and SONS, Abbey Street, Dublin.

Authority
N OF
ORD EXERCISE.

PRICE SIXPENCE.

H. M. Stationery Office,
nd; W. CLOWES and Sons
SONS, 59, Pall Mall;
Waterloo Place.
bbey Street, Dublin.

FIELD EXERCISE
AND
EVOLUTIONS
OF
INFANTRY,

AS REVISED

By Her Majesty's Command,

1861.

LONDON:
INTED UNDER THE SUPERINTENDENCE OF HER MAJESTY'S STATIONERY OFFICE,
AND SOLD BY
PARKER, SON, AND BOURN, 445, West Strand;
W. CLOWES AND SONS, 14, Charing Cross;
HARRISON AND SONS, 59, Pall Mall; and
W. H. ALLEN AND CO., 13, Waterloo Place:
Also by ALEX. THOM AND SONS, Abbey Street, DUBLIN.

1862.

Price One Shilling.

[11,684.—10,000.—1/62.]

G

THE "Field
ving been re
ommanding i
ommands to re
and of Troo
system now
is to their
Majesty tr
plicit ob
tions, an
s of the A
by introd
ich has been

By Co
Ge

GENERAL ORDER.

Horse Guards, S.W.,
January 1862.

THE "Field Exercise and Evolutions of Infantry" having been revised, His Royal Highness the General Commanding in Chief has received the Queen's commands to require of all General Officers in command of Troops the most scrupulous adherence to the system now promulgated.

It is to their superintendence and vigilance that Her Majesty trusts for the enforcement of prompt and implicit obedience to all General Orders and Regulations, and His Royal Highness reminds the Officers of the Army of the responsibility they will incur by introducing any deviation from a system which has been sanctioned by Her Majesty.

By Command of His Royal Highness the General Commanding in Chief.

J. YORKE SCARLETT, A.G.

CONTENTS.

PART I.

RECRUIT OR SQUAD DRILL.

GENERAL PRINCIPLES.

RECRUIT OR SQUAD DRILL WITHOUT ARMS.

GENERAL DIRECTIONS.

SQUAD DRILL, WITH INTERVALS.

MARCHING.

SQUAD DRILL IN SINGLE RANK.

SQUAD DRILL, WITH ARMS, IN SINGLE RANK.

SQUAD DRILL, WITH ARMS, IN TWO RANKS.

PART II.

OF THE COMPANY.

GENERAL PRINCIPLES.

PART III.

RIFLE EXERCISES.

General Directions.

PART IV.

FORMATION AND EVOLUTIONS OF A BATTALION.

GENERAL PRINCIPLES.

A BATTALION ON PARADE.

FORMATION AND MOVEMENTS OF A BATTALION IN LINE.

GENERAL PRINCIPLES.

FORMATION AND MOVEMENTS.

COLUMN MOVEMENTS.

GENERAL PRINCIPLES.

MOVEMENTS.

MOVEMENTS AND CHANGES OF FRONT IN ECHELLON.

General Principles.

MOVEMENTS AND CHANGES OF FRONT IN ECHELLON.

G

PART V.

LIGHT INFANTRY.

GENERAL PRINCIPLES.

LIGHT INFANTRY MOVEMENTS OF A COMPANY.

MOVEMENTS OF A BATTALION.

ADVANCED AND REAR GUARDS.

PIQUETS.

ORMATIONS AND

GEN

RIGADE MOVEME
AND

PART VI.

FORMATIONS AND MOVEMENTS OF THE BRIGADE OR LINE.

GENERAL PRINCIPLES.

BRIGADE MOVEMENTS OF CONTIGUOUS COLUMNS AND COLUMNS IN MASS.

MOVEMENTS IN LINE OR LINE OF COLUMNS.

MOVEMENTS OF A BRIGADE IN DOUBLE COLUMN.

ADVANCING OR RETIRING IN COLUMN.

CHANGES OF FRONT AND POSITION.

DEPLOYMENTS.

THE FL

MOVEMENTS OF

POS

THE FLANK MARCH IN FOURS.

SQUARES.

MOVEMENTS OF DIVISIONS OR LARGER BODIES.

SECOND LINES.

General Principles.

Movements.

POSITION OF ARTILLERY.

PART VII.

MISCELLANEOUS SUBJECTS.

INSPECTIONS OR REVIEWS.

ROUTE MARCHING.

SINGLE RANK AND SKELETON DRILL.

GUARDS.

FUNERALS.

Regimental Q

COLONEL . . . .
LIEUTENANT-COLON
MAJOR . . . .
ADJUTANT . . .
CAPTAIN . . . .
LIEUTENANT . .
ENSIGN . . . .
STAFF OFFICERS .
QUEEN'S COLOUR .
REGIMENTAL COLOU

Brig

ASSISTANT AD
ASSISTANT QUA
BRIGADE MAJO
MOUNTED OFFI

ORIGINAL FORMATIO
INTERMEDIATE FOR-
MATION . .
FINAL FORMATION .
DIRECTION OF MOVI

Regimental Officers, Non-commissioned Officers, &c.

COLONEL . . . . .
LIEUTENANT-COLONEL
MAJOR . . . . .
ADJUTANT . . . .
CAPTAIN . . . . .
LIEUTENANT . . .
ENSIGN . . . . .
STAFF OFFICERS . .
QUEEN'S COLOUR . .
REGIMENTAL COLOUR.

SERJEANT MAJOR . .
COVERING SERJEANT .
SERJEANT . . . . .
STAFF SERJEANT . .
PRIVATE, FRONT-RANK
PRIVATE, REAR-RANK.
PIONEER . . . . .
BAND SERJEANT . .
BANDSMAN . . . .
DRUM MAJOR . . .
DRUMMER OR BUGLER.

Brigade and Division Officers.

ASSISTANT ADJUTANT GENERAL . . . .
ASSISTANT QUARTERMASTER GENERAL . .
BRIGADE MAJOR . . . . . .
MOUNTED OFFICER OR CAVALRY SOLDIER.

ORIGINAL FORMATION { Front Rank / Rear Rank
INTERMEDIATE FORMATION . . { Front Rank / Rear Rank
FINAL FORMATION . { Front Rank / Rear Rank

DIRECTION OF MOVEMENTS . .

Col. D. Lysons, delt.

EXPLANATION OF PLATES.

1. Battalions are usually composed of eight or ten companies, but in order that the figures might be drawn on as large a scale as possible, the battalions in the plates of Part IV. have been represented as having only six companies.

2. In the plates of Part IV. it has not been considered advisable to represent the supernumerary rank nor the band and drums in each figure, as too much detail would have made them indistinct. The positions of the subaltern officers and serjeants are fully explained in Parts II. and IV., and they are represented in the Plates V., VI., VII., VIII., and IX. of Part II., in the Plates XXIII., XXIV., and XXVI. of Part IV., and partially in several others, as in Plate XXXIV.

3. In Parts V. and VI., on account of the reduced scale, it has been found impracticable to represent the ranks in the same manner as in Part IV. Ranks, and, in several instances, companies and battalions, have been there represented by single lines without detail.

I

RECRUIT

GENI

1. *Instruction of th*
this duty is intruste
their mode of convey
attention to their dir
capacity of the recru
and good-will are ap
practice, and ought n
2. Recruits must b
comprehend one thi
When first taught th
and the rifle, should
when more advance
but taught to correct
should not be kept to
exercise. Marching
with the rifle instruct

Duration of Drill
always to be preferre
attention both of the

ATES.

f eight or ten com-
ght be drawn on as
s in the plates of
ing only six com-

ot been considered
y rank nor the band
h detail would have
the subaltern officers
rts II. and IV., and
I., VII., VIII., and
XXIV., and XXVI.
others, as in Plate

of the reduced scale,
present the ranks in
nks, and, in several
ave been there repre-

PART I.

RECRUIT OR SQUAD DRILL.

GENERAL PRINCIPLES.

I.

1. *Instruction of the Recruit.*—The instructors to whom this duty is intrusted, must be clear, firm, and concise in their mode of conveying instruction, in order to command attention to their directions. They must allow for the weak capacity of the recruit, and be patient, where endeavour and good-will are apparent, for quickness is the result of practice, and ought not at first to be expected.

2. Recruits must be carried on progressively; they should comprehend one thing before they proceed to another. When first taught their positions, their fingers, elbows, &c., and the rifle, should be properly placed by the instructor; when more advanced, recruits should not be touched, but taught to correct themselves when admonished. They should not be kept too long at any particular part of their exercise. Marching without arms should be intermixed with the rifle instruction.

II.

Duration of Drills, &c.—Short and frequent drills are always to be preferred to long lessons, which exhaust the attention both of the instructor and recruit, and too much

pains cannot be taken by those intrusted with the instruction of recruits to move them on progressively from squad to squad according to their merit, so that the quick, intelligent soldier may not be kept back by those of inferior capacity. To arrive at the first squad should be made an object of ambition to the young soldier.

III.

Mutual Instruction.—A system of mutual instruction will be practised amongst recruits; it gives the young soldier additional interest in his drill, and prepares him for the duties of a non-commissioned officer. Each recruit in succession will occasionally be called out to put his squad through one or two exercises, and encouraged while so doing to correct any error he may observe in the movements of his comrades. If lists of those who show talent for imparting instruction were kept by the captains, and in the orderly room of a regiment, it would be found to create much emulation, and be useful to point out those who were, this respect, fit for promotion.

IV.

Divisi of a Battalion into Drill Classes.—A battalion should be d vided into three classes.

The first, o consist of soldiers who are perfect in every part of their drill.

The secon d, of those who are found to be awkward or deficient in any way; men of this class will continue to parade and drill until d drill with the first class, but will have extra drill until they are considered fit for the first class.

The th ird, in addition to recruits, will include any men who ha ve become very deficient in their drill from having been in hospital, in prison, or absent from their duty for a length of time; men of this class will not be drilled with the battalion till they are fit to join the second class.

1. *Words of Co*
and distinctly pro
2. Every comm
preceded by a cau
command must be
or executive part,
one word or syllab
Company—Halt:
3. The foregoin
numbers given in
where the words
to be quick, and
required is of that
4. When the l
preparatory move
word, and separa
pauses as, *On the*
as though there w
caution and execu
5. Officers an
quently be practi
be found a good
commissioned off
simultaneously, t
instructor.

ted with the instruc-
gressively from squad
that the quick, intel-
by those of inferior
ad should be made an
er.

f mutual instruction
; it gives the young
, and prepares him for
ficer. Each recruit in
l out to put his squad
encouraged while so
observe in the move-
those who show talent
by the captains, and in
ould be found to create
oint out those who were,

ll Classes.—A battalion
who are perfect in every

und to be awkward o
class will continue t
s, but will have extr
the first class.
s, will include any me
their drill from having
t from their duty for
will not be drilled wit
the second class.

V.

1. *Words of Command.*—Every command must be loud, and distinctly pronounced as it is written.

2. Every command that consists of one word must be preceded by a caution; the caution or cautionary part of a command must be articulated slowly and distinctly, the last or executive part, which, in general, should consist of only one word or syllable, must be given sharply and quickly, as *Company—Halt: Right Half—Face.*

3. The foregoing rule does not apply to the words and numbers given in the *Extension Motions* and *Balance Step*, where the words must be given sharply when the motion is to be quick, and slowly and smoothly when the motion required is of that nature.

4. When the last word of a caution is the signal for any preparatory movement, it will be given as an executive word, and separated from the rest of the command by a pause as, *On the Right Backwards—Wheel. Quick—March*, as though there were two separate commands, each with its caution and executive word.

5. Officers and non-commissioned officers should frequently be practised in giving words of command. It will be found a good plan to practise several officers or non-commissioned officers together in giving words of command simultaneously, the time and pitch being first given by the instructor.

RECRUIT OR SQUAD DRILL WITHOUT ARMS.

GENERAL DIRECTIONS.

I.

System.—The following system will be adopted, both for the instruction of recruits, and in the setting-up or spring drill of a battalion. Recruits should, if possible, be instructed singly as far as Section 22.

II.

Formation of Squads.—1. A few men will be placed in line (that is, side by side) at arm's length apart; while so formed they will be termed a "Squad with Intervals."

2. If necessary, the squad may consist of two such lines of men, in which case the men in the second line will cover the intervals between the men in the first, so that in marching they may take their own points, as directed in Sect. 10.

3. Recruits should, in the first instance, be placed by the instructor without any dressing; when they have learned to dress, as directed in Section 3, they should be taught to fall in as above described, and then to dress and to correct their distances; after they have been instructed as far as Section 24, they may fall in in single rank, and then, if required to drill with intervals, be opened out as directed in No. 6 of these General Directions.

Setting-up or Spring Drill.—1. A battalion will be formed, as follows, in squads with intervals, for spring or setting up drill.

2. Companies will be arranged, with considerable intervals between them, in lines parallel to each other.

3. Captains will d
place a subaltern off
as instructor.

4. On a signal fro
will be opened out
of companies, and
structors when at su

5. Each squad wil

From the Right (or Left) Form Single Rank.—Quick-March.

M
fil
wi
th
co
m
th
th
sq
th

M
fil
ra
ra
fa
th
th
th
hi
re
ha
ra
hi
lef

3. Captains will divide their companies into squads, and place a subaltern officer or serjeant in front of each squad, as instructor.

4. On a signal from the commanding officer, the squads will be opened out to the right and left from the centres of companies, and will be halted successively by their instructors when at sufficient distances from each other.

5. Each squad will be formed into single rank, thus:

From the Right (or Left) Form Single Rank.—Quick-March.

If forming from the right, on the word *March* the front rank man of the right file will stand fast, the rest of the squad will close to the left by the side step; the rear rank man of the right file will come up on the left of his front rank man as soon as there is room for him; the front rank man of the next file will then halt, and so on to the left of the squad, each rear rank man moving up on the left of his front rank man.

If forming from the left, on the word *March*, the rear rank man of the left file will step up on the left of his front rank man, who will stand fast; the rear rank man of the next file will also stand fast, the rest of the squad will close to the right; as soon as there is room for the rear rank man of the 2nd file from the left, he will move up on the left of his front rank man, who will halt; the rear rank man of the 3rd file will then halt, and so on to the right; each rear rank man moving up on the left of his front rank man, all feeling to the left.

6. The squads when formed in single rank will be told off from right to left; the instructor will explain to recruits the difference between odd numbers and even numbers, and proceed as follows:—

Odd Numbers One Pace Forward. *Even Numbers One Pace Step Back.* *Slow—March.*	As the men take their pace to the front or rear they will turn the palms of their hands full to the front, keeping their elbows close to their sides.

7. The lieutenant-colonel, assisted by the majors, his adjutant, and serjeant-major, will take general superintendence of the drill; the captains will superintend their respective companies.

8. To ensure uniformity throughout the battalion, the commanding officer will inform the captains, while their squads are standing at ease, what movement or exercise they are to practise next, and no instructor will go beyond or vary from the movement or exercise thus ordered until further instructions are given.

9. Awkward men will be marked for the second class drill, as the squads must not be kept back on their account.

10. The following signals on the drum may be used:—

Three taps on the drum will signify that the instructors are to give the words *Stand at Ease;* or, if marching, *Halt, Dress, Stand at Ease.* If squads have arrived at the extent of their ground when marching, they will be faced about before they are dressed.

Twice three taps will signify that the instructors are to give the words *Stand at Ease,* and *Stand Easy;* or, if marching, *Halt, Stand at Ease,* and *Stand Easy.*

One tap, when marching, will signify that the instructors are to give the words *Right* or *Left about-turn.*

Odd Numbers a Pace Step Back. Even Numbers a Pace Forward. Slow-March. Eyes Right— Dress. Eyes—Front.	
On the Right (or *Left*) *Form Two Deep.*	
Quick—March.	

13. After this, co
dismissed without
the parade may dir

SQUAD
S. 1

The exact squar
front is the first
soldier. The heels
straight; the toes
angle of 60 degrees
the shoulder, the el
in open files the pa
the front, with the
must be rather dra
without constraint;
so that weight
part of the et; th

Odd Numbers a Pace Step Back. Even Numbers a Pace Forward. Slow-March. Eyes Right—Dress. Eyes—Front.

11. When a drill is concluded, squads will be closed and re-formed two deep.

On the Right (or *Left*) *Form Two Deep.*

12. On the words *Form two deep*, the original rear rank men will take one pace to the rear.

Quick—March.

On the word *March*, the whole will close on the flank named, the rear rank men covering correctly. If closing on the left, the rear rank man of the left file will take a pace to his right, in order to cover his front rank man.

13. After this, companies will be re-formed, or the squads dismissed without re-forming, as the officer commanding the parade may direct.

Squad Drill with Intervals.

S. 1. Position of the Soldier.

The exact squareness of the shoulders and body to the front is the first and great principle of the position of a soldier. The heels must be in line and closed; the knees straight; the toes turned out, so that the feet may form an angle of 60 degrees; the arms hanging straight down from the shoulder, the elbows turned in and close to the sides; in open files the palms of the hands are to be turned full to the front, with the thumb close to the forefinger; the hips must be rather drawn back, and the breast advanced, but without constraint; the body straight and inclining forward, so that the weight of it may bear principally on the fore part of the feet; the head to be erect, but not thrown back,

the chin slightly drawn in, and the eyes looking straight to the front.

When the soldier falls in for instruction, he will be taught to place himself in the position above described.

N.B.—The words in the margin printed in *italics*, are the commands to be given by the instructor.

S. 2. *Standing at Ease.*

Soldiers will first be taught the motions of the hands and of the foot by numbers, then judging their own time.

1. *By Numbers.*

The caution,—*Stand at Ease by Numbers*, must first be given.

One. — On the word *One*, raise the arms from the elbows, left hand in front of the centre of the body, as high as the waist, palm upwards; the right hand as high as the right breast, palm to the left front; both thumbs separated from the fingers, and the elbows close to the sides.

Two. — On the word *Two*, strike the palm of the right hand on that of the left, drop the arms to their extent, keeping the hands together, and passing the right hand over the back of the left as they fall; at the same time draw back the right foot six inches, and bend slightly the left knee.

When the motions are completed the arms must hang loosely and easily, the fingers pointing towards the ground,

the right thumb li
of the left hand; t
being on the righ
constraint.

Squad-Atten-tion.

Caution,—*St*

Stand at-Ease.

Squad-Atten-tion.

If the comman
word *Stand Easy*
their limbs, but wi
the word *Attentio*
dressing in line. I
accurately, they sh
feet.

Before calling n
easy, the caution
every soldier will
Stand at-Ease, an

S. 3. *Dr*

Eyes-Right.

LL,

looking straight to
on, he will be taught
escribed.

rinted in *italics*, are
uctor.

ise.

ons of the hands and
heir own time.

nbers, must first be

raise the arms from
nd in front of the
as high as the waist,
right hand as high
palm to the left front;
ted from the fingers,
e to the sides.

, strike the palm of
that of the left, drop
extent, keeping the
d passing the right
k of the left as they
time draw back the
es, and bend slightly

the arms must hang
g towards the ground,

the right thumb lightly held between the thumb and palm of the left hand; the body must incline forward, the weight being on the right leg and the whole attitude without constraint.

Squad–Attention. { On the word *Attention*, spring up to the position described in Section 1, letting the arms fall, by the shortest way, to the sides.

2. *Judging the Time.*

Caution,—*Stand at Ease, judging your own Time.*

Stand at–Ease. { On the word *Ease*, go through the motions described in the standing at ease by numbers, distinctly but smartly, and without any pause between them.

Squad–Attention. } As before.

If the command to *Stand at–Ease* is followed by the word *Stand Easy*, the men will be permitted to move their limbs, but without quitting their ground, so that upon the word *Attention* no one shall have materially lost his dressing in line. If men are required to keep their dressing accurately, they should be cautioned not to move their left feet.

Before calling men to attention, when they are standing easy, the caution *Eyes–Front* must be given, upon which every soldier will resume his position as described in the *Stand at–Ease*, and remain steady.

S. 3. Dressing a Squad with Intervals.

Eyes–Right. { On the words *Eyes–Right*, the eyes will be directed to the right, the head being slightly turned in that direction.

Dress. — On the word *Dress*, each soldier, except the right-hand man, will extend his right arm, palm of the hand upwards, nails touching the shoulder of the man on his right, at the same time he will take up his dressing in line by moving till he is just able to distinguish the lower part of the face of the second man beyond him; care must be taken that, in so doing, he carries his body backward or forward with the feet, moving to his dressing with short quick steps, that his shoulders are kept perfectly square, and that the position of the soldier is retained throughout.

Eyes–Front. — On the words *Eyes–Front*, the eyes and head are to be turned to the front, the arm dropped, and the first position of the soldier resumed.

Dressing by the left will be practised in like manner.

S. 4. *Extension Motions.*

In order to open his chest, and give freedom to his muscles, the soldier will be practised in the following extension motions.

Men formed in squads with intervals, will be faced a half face to the right, before commencing the following practices.

First Practice.

One. — On the word *One*, bring the hands and arms to the front till the fingers meet at the points, nails downwards, then raise them in a circular direction over the

One. — he
ar
th
re
de

Two. — up
p-
th
th
er
el

Three. — w
el
th
to
th

Four. — th
ar
br
a
ar
su

N.B. The foregoi
that the muscles wil

One. — fr
ar
m
to

One. head, the ends of the fingers still touching and pointing downwards so as to touch the forage cap, thumbs pointing to the rear, elbows pressed back, shoulders kept down.

Two. On the word *Two*, throw the hands up, extending the arms smartly upwards, palms of the hands inwards, then force them obliquely back, and gradually let them fall to the position of attention, endeavouring as much as possible to elevate the neck and chest.

Three. On the word *Three*, raise the arms outwards from the sides without bending the elbow, pressing the shoulders back, until the hands meet above the head, palms to the front, fingers pointing upwards, thumbs locked, left thumb in front.

Four. On the word *Four*, bend over until the hands touch the feet, keeping the arms and knees straight, the head being brought down in the same direction; after a slight pause raise the body gradually and bring the arms to the sides, and resume the position of attention.

N.B. The foregoing motions are to be done slowly, so that the muscles will be exerted throughout.

Second Practice.

One. On the word *One*, raise the hands in front of the body at the full extent of the arms, and in line with the mouth, palms meeting but without noise, thumbs close to the forefingers.

Two.	On the word *Two*, separate the hands smartly, throwing them well back, slanting downwards, at the same time raise the body on the fore part of the feet.
One.	On the word *One*, bring the arms forward to the position above described, and so on.
Two.	
Three.	On the word *Three*, smartly resume the position of attention.

In this practice the second motion may be continued without repeating the words *One, Two*, by giving the order *Continue the Motion*; the squad will then take the time from the right-hand man; on the word *Steady* the men will remain at the second position, and on the word *Three* they will resume the position of attention.

Third Practice.

The squad will make a half face to the right into file, previous to commencing the third practice.

One.	On the word *One*, raise the hands in front of the body, as in the second practice, but with the hands clenched.
Two.	On the word *Two*, separate the hands smartly, throwing the arms back in line with the shoulders, back of the hand downwards.
Three.	On the word *Three*, swing the arms round as quickly as possible from front to rear.
Steady.	On the word *Steady*, resume the second position.
Four.	On the word *Four*, let the arms fall smartly to the position of attention.

When necessary
with clubs.

Soldiers will be
hen judging thei
he right-hand salu

Rig

One.	
Two.	
Three.	
Four.	

Right-han

Right-hand Salute.	

When necessary, the third practice may be performed with clubs.

S. 5. *Saluting.*

Soldiers will be practised in saluting, first by numbers, then judging their own time, being faced to the right for the right-hand salute, to the left for the left-hand salute.

Right-hand Salute by Numbers.

One.	On the word *One*, raise the right hand smartly, without bending the elbow, as high as the mouth, pointing in the same direction as the right foot, knuckles upwards, thumb close to the forefinger.
Two.	On the word *Two*, bring the hand slowly round till the point of the thumb and the side of the forefinger touch the lower edge of the cap or peak, wrist and fingers slightly bent, at the same time turn the head a little to the left, and look towards the person saluted.
Three.	On the word *Three*, bring the hand and arm slowly to the position attained by the first motion, turning the head and eyes to the front.
Four.	On the word *Four*, bring the arm down smartly to the position of attention, without bending the elbow.

Right-hand Salute, judging your own Time.

Right-hand Salute.	On the word *Salute*, go through the two first motions as described in *one* and *two*.

Attention. { On the word *Attention*, come to the position of attention, by the two motions described in *three* and *four*.

Soldiers will be taught to salute with the left hand in like manner.

Soldiers if standing still when an officer approaches, will face towards him, come to attention, and salute; if sitting, they will rise, stand at attention, and salute. When walking, they will salute an officer as they pass him, commencing their salute six paces before they come up to him; they should therefore be practised in marching two or three together round the drill ground, saluting points placed on either side of them, care being taken that they always salute with the hand furthest from the point saluted; when several men are together, the man nearest to that point will give the time.

Soldiers will invariably salute anybody they know to be an officer, whether he is in uniform or not.

S. 6. *Facings.*—Plate II.

In going through the facings, the left heel must never quit the ground; but the soldier must turn on it as on a pivot, the right foot being drawn back to turn the body to the right, and carried forward to turn it to the left: the body must incline forward, the knees being kept straight.

To the Right-face. { On the word *Face*, place the hollow of the right foot smartly against the left heel, keeping the shoulders square to the front.

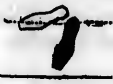
Two. { On the word *Two*, raise the toes, and turn a quarter circle to the right on both heels, which must be pressed together.

Fig. 1.
TO THE RIGHT-FACE.

RIGHT ABOUT-F.

Fig.
RIGHT HALF-FACE.

THREE.



ttention, come to the
on, by the two motions
and *four.*

ith the left hand in like

officer approaches, will
and saluto; if sitting,
d salute. When walk-
pass him, commencing
come up to him; they
narching two or three
saluting points placed
taken that they always
he point saluted; when
nearest to that point

ybody they know to be
or not.

ATE II.

left heel must never quit
turn on it as on a pivot,
o turn the body to the
it to the left: the body
ng kept straight.

Face, place the hollow of
artly against the left heel,
lders square to the front.
Two, raise the toes, and
ircle to the right on both
t be pressed together.

PLATE II.

Fig. 1.
TO THE RIGHT-FACE.

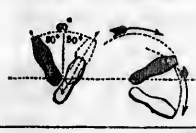


Fig. 2.
TO THE LEFT-FACE.

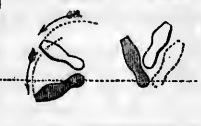


Fig. 3.
RIGHT ABOUT-FACE.

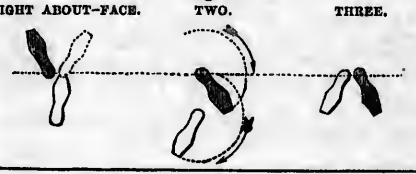


Fig. 4.
RIGHT HALF-FACE.

Fig. 5.
LEFT HALF-FACE.

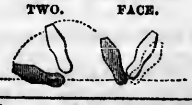
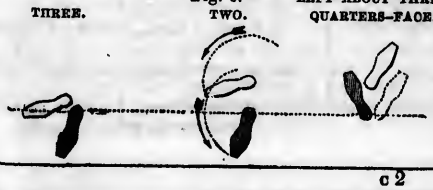


Fig. 6.
LEFT ABOUT THREE QUARTERS-FACE.



To the Left-face.

Two.

Right about-face.

Two.

Three.

Left about-face.

Two.

Three.

Right (or *Left*) *Half-face.*

Two.

Right (or *Left*) *about, three-quarters face.*

To the Left-face.	On the word *Face*, place the right heel against the hollow of the left foot, keeping the shoulders square to the front.
Two.	On the word *Two*, raise the toes, and turn a quarter circle to the left on both heels, which must be pressed together.
Right about-face.	On the word *Face*, place the ball of the right toe against the left heel, keeping the shoulders square to the front.
Two.	On the word *Two*, raise the toes, and turn to the right about on both heels.
Three.	On the word *Three*, bring the right foot smartly back in a line with the left.
Left about-face.	On the word *Face*, place the right heel against the ball of the left toe, keeping the shoulders square to the front.
Two.	On the word *Two*, raise the toes, and turn to the left about on both heels.
Three.	On the word *Three*, bring up the right foot smartly in a line with the left.
Right (or *Left*) *Half-face.*	On the word *Face*, draw back (or advance) the right foot one inch.
Two.	On the word *Two*, raise the toes and turn an eighth of a circle to the right (or left) on both heels.
Right (or *Left*) *about, three-quarters face.*	When it is necessary to perform the diagonal march to the rear the soldier will receive the words *Right* (or *Left*) *about, three-quarters face*, upon which he will bring the ball of the right foot (not the ball of the toe) to the left heel, or the right heel to the ball of the left foot, and will make a three-quarters face in the given direction, in the same manner as he faces about.

Squad–Front. When it is intended to resume the original front, after any of the foregoing facings, the word of command *Front* may be given, on which the whole will face, as accurately as possible, to their former front.

Whether the soldier has previously faced to the right or left about, he will always front by the right about. But if he has faced to the right about three-quarters, he will front by the left about three-quarters, and vice versâ.

At squad drill with intervals, the facings will always be done by numbers, except when the word *Front* is given, in which case the soldier will judge his own time, which must be a pause of slow time between each motion.

The foot in the first of the above motions is to be carried back or brought forward without a jerk; the movement being from the hip, so that the body may be kept perfectly steady until it commences to turn.

MARCHING.

S. 7. *Length of Step.*

In slow or quick time the length of a pace is 30 inches, except in "stepping out," when it is 33 inches, and in "stepping short" 10.

In "double time" the length of the pace is 36 inches.

The length of the side step, which is always taken in quick time, is 10 inches.

N.B. When a soldier takes a side pace to clear or cover another, as in forming four deep, which will be hereafter described, the pace will be 21 inches.

In slow time 7
In quick time 11
In double time 14

S. 9. Th

The proper cad
the mind of the
drum. The lengt
of a pace stick;
taught to march
pace stick; the d
is halted, never
superintendent of
time, every squa
beating the men
cadence; when i
their squads in m
tions, which wou
soldier from the t

In order to b
"Plummet" mu
plummets have b
none of these car
may be adopted.
string that is not
measured from th
ball, must be as
Thus arranged,
required.

Slow ti
Quick
Double

The correctne
tested by referen

S. 8. Cadence.

In slow time	75 steps	62 yards 18 inches	are taken
In quick time	110 „	91 „ 24 „	in a
In double time	150 „	150 „ — „	minute.

S. 9. The Drum, Plummet, and Pace Stick.

The proper cadence in marching must be impressed on the mind of the recruit by beating the time for him on a drum. The length of his pace is to be corrected by means of a pace stick; no recruit or squad of recruits must be taught to march without the constant use of the drum and pace stick; the drum to beat the time only when the squad is halted, never when it is in motion. Whenever the superintendent of the drill considers it necessary to give the time, every squad will be halted, and while the drum is beating the men will give their whole attention to the cadence; when it ceases, the instructors will at once put their squads in motion, without further cautions or instructions, which would tend to distract the attention of the soldier from the time given.

In order to beat the time correctly on a drum the "Plummet" must be used. A variety of pendulums or plummets have been constructed for this purpose. When none of these can be procured, the following simple method may be adopted. Suspend a spherical ball of metal by a string that is not liable to stretch; the length of the string measured from the point of suspension to the centre of the ball, must be as follows for the different degrees of march. Thus arranged, the plummet will swing the exact time required.

	Inches.	Hundredths.
Slow time - - - -	24 ·	96
Quick - - - -	11 ·	66
Double - - - -	6 ·	26

The correctness of the plummet should frequently be tested by reference to a watch.

The length of the pace in marching will be measured with the pace stick, which is simply a large pair of wooden compasses, with legs about three feet long, and furnished with an iron rod or wing and screw to fix it open at the different lengths of pace. The correctness of the pace stick should occasionally be tested; for this purpose the length of the several paces should be cut on a board or a stone, to which the points of the pace stick may be applied.

S. 10. Position in Marching.

In marching, the soldier must maintain the position of the body as directed in Section 1. He must be well balanced on his limbs. His arms and hands must be kept steady by his sides, and on no account suffered to vibrate; care must be taken that the hand does not cling to the thigh, or partake in the least degree of the movement of the leg. The body must be kept erect and square to the front. The movement of the leg must spring from the haunch and be free and natural.

Both knees must be kept straight, except while the leg is being carried from the rear to the front, when the knee must necessarily be a little bent, to enable the foot to be raised sufficiently high to clear the ground without grazing it. The foot must be carried straight to the front, and, without being drawn back, placed softly on the ground, so as not to jerk or shake the body, the toes turned out at an angle of 30 degrees. The head to be erect, as described in Section 1, and the eyes looking straight to the front.

Although several men may be drilled together in a squad with intervals, they must act independently and in every way as if they were being instructed singly; each soldier must be taught to march in a straight line, and to take a correct pace, both as regards time and length, without being in the slightest degree influenced by the other men of the squad.

Before the squad
care that the men
but in correct line
taught to take up
down the centre o
his eyes and fixin
straight to his fro
will then observe
line, such as a sto
about 70 yards dis

The object of th
free movement of
fect squareness of
body. No labour
most essential obje
tion of good marc
the soldier does no
back a shoulder l

1.

Caution,—*Balanc*

Front.

ILL,

will be measured with
pair of wooden com-
and furnished with an
open at the different
the pace stick should
ose the length of the
d or a stone, to which
pplied.

rching.

aintain the position of
1. He must be well
and hands must be
no account suffered to
he hand does not cling
t degree of the move-
kept erect and square
leg must spring from

except while the leg is
front, when the knee
enable the foot to be
round without grazing
ght to the front, and,
oftly on the ground, so
the toes turned out at
o be erect, as described
raight to the front.
led together in a squad
ndently and in every way
gly; each soldier must
e, and to take a correct
h, without being in the
her men of the squad.

Before the squad is put in motion the instructor will take care that the men are not only square in their own persons, but in correct line with each other. Each soldier must be taught to take up a straight line to his front by looking down the centre of his body between his feet, then lifting his eyes and fixing them upon some object on the ground straight to his front at a distance of about 150 yards; he will then observe some nearer point in the same straight line, such as a stone, tuft of grass, or other casual object, about 70 yards distant.

S. 11. *Balance Step.*

The object of the balance step is to teach the soldier the free movement of his legs, preserving at the same time perfect squareness of shoulders, and the utmost steadiness of body. No labour must be spared to attain this first and most essential object, which forms, indeed, the very foundation of good marching. The instructor must be careful that the soldier does not contract a habit of drooping or throwing back a shoulder during these motions.

1. *Without gaining Ground.*

Caution,—*Balance Step without gaining Ground, commencing with the Left Foot.*

Front.	On the word *Front*, the left foot will be raised from the ground by a slight bend of the knee, and carried gently to the front without a jerk; the knee being gradually straightened as the foot is brought forward, the toe turned out at an angle of 30 degrees, the sole of the foot kept about three inches from the ground and parallel to it; the left heel in line with the right toe.

Rear. — When steady, on the word *Rear*, the left foot will be brought gently back (without a jerk), till the toe is in line with the right heel, the left knee a little bent. The left foot in this position will not be so flat as when in front; the toe will be a little depressed.

Front. *Rear.* — When steady, the words *Front* and *Rear* will be repeated several times, and the motions performed as above described.

Halt. — On the word *Halt*, which should always be given when the moving foot is in rear, that foot will be brought to the ground in a line with the other.

The instructor will afterwards make the soldier balance upon the left foot, carrying the right foot forward and backward.

Accustoming a soldier to stand on one leg and swing the other backward and forward without constraint, is an excellent practice.

2. *Gaining Ground, First Practice.*

Caution,—*Balance Step, gaining Ground by the Word Forward.*

Front. — On the word *Front*, the left foot will be carried to the front, as described in the balance step, without gaining ground.

As soon as the men are steady in the above position, the word *Forward* will be given, on which the left foot will be brought to the ground at 30 inches distance from heel to heel, toes turned out at an angle of 30 degrees, and the right foot will immediately be raised, and held extended to the rear, the knee slightly

, on the word *Rear*, the
e brought gently back
), till the toe is in line
heel, the left knee a little
foot in this position will
s when in front; the toe
epressed.
y, the words *Front* and
peated several times, and
formed as above described.
Halt, which should always
he moving foot is in rear,
e brought to the ground
e other.
make the soldier balance
right foot forward and

d on one leg and swing
without constraint, is an

irst Practice.
g Ground by the Word

Front, the left foot will
e front, as described in the
ithout gaining ground.
he men are steady in the
the word *Forward* will
hich the left foot will be
ground at 30 inches dis-
to heel, toes turned out
30 degrees, and the right
diately be raised, and held
e rear, the knee slightly

bent, toe in line with the left heel.

Forward. Great care must be taken that the knees are kept perfectly straight as long as both feet are touching the ground; that the toes remain throughout at the proper angles; that the body accompanies the leg, and that the inside of the heel is placed on the imaginary straight line that passes through the points on which the soldier is marching; that the body remains straight, but inclining forward; that the head is erect, and turned neither to the right nor left.

Front. On the word *Front*, the right foot will be brought forward, and so on.

Halt. On the word *Halt*, which should always be given when the moving foot is to the front, that foot will complete its pace, and the rear foot will be brought up in line with it.

3. *Gaining Ground, Second Practice.*

Caution.—*Balance Step, gaining Ground by the Word Front.*

Front. On the word *Front*, the soldier will take a full pace slowly with his left foot; raise his right foot and carry it to the front, heel in line with the left toe, foot turned out at an angle of 30 degrees;

Front. and then pause till the word *Front* is repeated, on which the right foot will be brought to the ground 30 inches to the front, and the left immediately brought forward, and so on.

When the soldier becomes steady in this practice, he will gradually be carried

Slow. — on to the slow march, by repeating the word *Front* quicker and quicker, until the cadence of the slow march is attained, when the instructor will give the word *Slow*, on which the soldier will move on steadily in slow time.

Halt. — As in gaining ground, first practice.

In this practice great care must be taken that the body is kept well forward, and that the soldier does not contract a habit of leaning or swinging backward.

S. 12. *Slow Step.*

The instructor must bear in mind that the three most important objects in this part of the drill are, cadence, length of pace, and direction.

Slow-March. — The time having been given on the drum, on the word *March*, the left foot will be carried 30 inches to the front, and, without being drawn back, will be placed softly on the ground so as not to jerk or shake the body; the right foot will be carried forward in like manner, and so on.

The soldier must be carefully trained and thoroughly instructed in this step, as an essential foundation for arriving at accuracy in the paces of greater celerity.

S. 13. *The Halt.*

Squad-Halt. — On the word *Halt*, the moving foot will complete its pace, and the rear foot be brought up in line with it.

After the word *Halt*, men will stand perfectly steady, in whatever position they may be, unless ordered to *Dress*.

Step-out.

This step is ne
front is require
time; at the wo
will be resumed.

Step-short.

This step is u

S. 16.

Mark-Time.

If men are r
from the halt, t
Slow.

march, by repeating the
cker and quicker, until
e slow march is attained.
ctor will give the word
the soldier will move on
time.
ground, first practice.
be taken that the body
soldier does not contract
kward.

Step.
hind that the three most
f the drill are, cadence,

ving been given on the
word *March*, the left foot
30 inches to the front,
eing drawn back, will be
the ground so as not to
he body; the right foot
forward in like manner,

trained and thoroughly
essential foundation for
f greater celerity.

Halt.
Halt, the moving foot will
ace, and the rear foot be
line with it.
stand perfectly steady, in
nless ordered to *Dress*.

S. 14. *Stepping out.*

Step-out. When marching in slow time, on the words *Step-out*, the soldier must be taught to lengthen his pace to 33 inches by leaning forward a little, but without altering the cadence.

This step is necessary when a temporary exertion to the front is required, and is applied both to slow and quick time; at the words *Slow* (or *Quick*) the pace of 30 inches will be resumed.

S. 15. *Stepping short.*

Step-short. On the words *Step-short*, the foot advancing will finish its pace, and afterwards each soldier will take paces of ten inches until the word *Forward* is given, when the usual pace of 30 inches will be resumed.

This step is useful when a slight check is required.

S. 16. *Marking Time in the Slow Cadence.*

Mark-Time. On the words *Mark-Time*, the foot then advancing will complete its pace, after which the cadence will be continued, without gaining ground, by alternately throwing out each foot and bringing it back square with the other, keeping the body steady; at the word *Forward*, the usual pace of 30 inches will be resumed.

If men are required to mark time in the slow cadence from the halt, the word of command will be *Mark Time-Slow*.

S. 17. *Stepping Back in Slow Time.*

Step Back Slow-March. — *Halt.*

In stepping back, the pace will be 30 inches, and the cadence the same as in the slow march. Soldiers must be taught to move straight to the rear, preserving their shoulders square to the front and their bodies erect. On the word *Halt*, the foot in front must be brought back square with the other.

A few paces only of the step back can be necessary at a time.

S. 18. *Changing Feet.*

Change-Feet.

To change feet in marching, the advancing foot will complete its pace, and the ball of the rear foot will be brought up quickly to the heel of the advanced one, which will instantly make another step forwards, so that the cadence will not be lost, in fact two successive steps will be taken with the same foot.

This may be required when any part of a battalion or a single soldier is stepping with a different foot from the rest.

S. 19. *The Quick Step.*

The cadence of the slow march having become perfectly familiar to the soldier, he will be taught to march in quick time.

Quick-March.

The time having been given on a drum, on the word *March*, the squad will move off, conforming to the directions given in Section 10.

When a soldier is perfectly grounded in marching in quick time, all the alterations of step laid down for the slow march must be practised in quick time.

In marking time a
thrown out and bro
simply be raised alt
ground.

From the halt the
-*Quick.*

S. 2

The directions for
apply in a great degr

Double-March.

Squad-Halt. As
ping the hands and
The soldier will
cadence in the same
he feet must be rai
nd that the toes n
he ground.

Marking time in
xercise for giving

In marking time at the quick cadence, the feet will not be thrown out and brought back as in slow time, but will simply be raised alternately about three inches from the ground.

From the halt the word of command will be *Mark Time Quick.*

S. 20. *The Double March.*

The directions for the march, in the preceding sections, apply in a great degree to this step.

Double-March. The time having been given on a drum, on the word *March*, the men will step off together with the left feet; at the same time raising their hands as high as the waist, carrying back the elbows and clenching the fists, the flat part of the arm close to the side; the head to be kept erect, and the shoulders square to the front; the knees a little bent; the body being more advanced than in the other marches. The instructor will be careful to habituate the soldier to the full pace of 36 inches, otherwise he will get into the habit of a short trot, which would obviously defeat the advantages of the double march.

Squad-Halt. As in Section 13, at the same time dropping the hands and extending the fingers.

The soldier will be taught to mark time in the double cadence in the same manner as in quick time; except that the feet must be raised higher, the knees being more bent; and that the toes must be depressed while the foot is off the ground.

Marking time in this manner will be found a useful exercise for giving freedom of motion to the legs.

From the halt the word of command will be *Mark Time-Double.*

S. 21. *The Side or Closing Step.*

Soldiers will be taught the side step first by numbers, then judging their own time.

1. *By Numbers.*

Caution,—*Right close by Numbers.*

One.	On the word *One*, the right foot will be carried ten inches to the right, the shoulders and face being kept perfectly square to the front, and the knees straight.
Two.	On the word *Two*, the left foot will be closed smartly to the right foot, heels touching.
One.	The word *One* being repeated, the right foot will be carried on ten inches as before described, and so on.
Squad-Halt.	When the word *Halt* is given, the left foot will be closed to the right as on the word *Two*.

2. *Judging the Time.*

Caution,—*Right close, judging your own Time.*

Right Close, Quick-March.	On the words *Quick-March*, each man will carry his right foot ten inches direct to the right, and instantly close his left foot to it, thus completing the pace. He will proceed to take the next pace in the same manner; shoulders to be kept square, knees not bent, unless on rough or broken ground. The direction must be kept in a straight line to the flank, neither inclining to the front nor rear.

Squad-Halt. { pl
ste

Soldiers will be
numbers, and judgin
Soldiers must al
number of paces to
word of command;
paces right close, Qu
Time is of great
should be complete
to the front in the q

S. 22.

Soldiers must be
to the left, in turni
in turning to the ri

Squad. To the Right-Turn. {

Squad. Front-Turn. {

Squad-Halt. { On the word *Halt*, the men will complete the pace they are taking, and remain steady.

Soldiers will be practised in closing to the left by numbers, and judging their own time, in like manner.

Soldiers must also be practised in taking any given number of paces to either flank, and then halting without word of command; the command to be given thus, *Three paces right close, Quick-March.*

Time is of great importance in the side step; each pace should be completed in the same time that a pace is taken to the front in the quick march.

S. 22. *Turning when on the March.*

Soldiers must be practised in turning to the right and to the left, in turning a half turn to the right and left, and in turning to the right and left about on the march.

Squad. To the Right-Turn. { 1. *Turning to the Right and then to the Front.*—On the word *Turn*, which should be given as the left foot is coming to the ground, each soldier will turn his body at right angles to the direction in which he has been moving, and move on at once, without checking his pace, in the new direction.

Squad. Front-Turn. { On the word *Turn*, which should be given as the right foot is coming to the ground, each soldier will turn again to the front and move on without checking the pace.

Squad. To the Left—Turn.

Squad. Front—Turn.

2. *Turning to the Left and then to the Front.*—Soldiers will turn to the left in like manner, the word being given as the right foot is coming to the ground—after which they will turn to the front, the word being given as the left foot is coming to the ground.

A soldier will always turn to the right on the left foot; and to the left on the right foot. If the word *Turn* is not given as the proper foot is coming to the ground, the soldier will move on one pace more and then turn.

3. *Turning a Half Turn to the Right and Left.*—Soldiers must also be practised in making a half turn to the right and left, and then moving on (without checking the pace) in a diagonal direction, taking up fresh points, at once, to march on.

4. *Turning to the Right and Left about.*—Soldiers will also be taught to turn about on the march, which must be done in three short paces, without losing the cadence. Having completed the turn, the soldier will at once move off in the opposite direction to that in which he was previously marching, the fourth pace being a full pace of 30 inches.

Squad Drill in Single Rank.

S. 23. *Pivot and Reverse Flanks.*

When the squad is formed in rank the flank towards which men are ordered to touch is called the Pivot Flank, the opposite flank is called the Reverse Flank.

S. 24. *Formation of the Squad in Single Rank.*

At this stage of the drill a few soldiers will be formed in single rank without intervals, that is, touching each other.

The right-hand c
remainder will fall
very lightly toward
structed in "The To
the principal guide
man when properly
hand man (towards
arm, immediately b
served in the positi
of the hands will
close to the sides,
the trousers, and cl

S. 2

Soldiers will firs
together.

In dressing, eac
flank to which he
the head, as direc
backward or forw
with short quick s
be avoided; his s
and the position
ing Section, retai

Two men on the right and one on the left, a pace and a half to the front.

Slow-March.

The right-hand or left-hand man being first placed, the remainder will fall in in line one after the other, touching very lightly towards him. Soldiers must be carefully instructed in "The Touch," as it constitutes, in this formation, the principal guide and regulator when marching. Each man when properly in line, should touch his right or left-hand man (towards the pivot flank) at the thick part of the arm, immediately below the elbow; the body must be preserved in the position described in Section 1, but the palms of the hands will be turned flat to the thighs; the elbows close to the sides, the thumbs as far back as the seams of the trousers, and close to the fore-finger.

S. 25. *Dressing when Halted.*

Soldiers will first be taught to dress man by man, then together.

In dressing, each soldier will cast his eye towards the flank to which he is ordered to dress, with a slight turn of the head, as directed in Section 3; he must carry his body backward or forward with the feet, moving to his dressing with short quick steps; bending backward or forward must be avoided; his shoulders must be kept perfectly square, and the position of the soldier, as explained in the preceding Section, retained throughout.

Two men on the right and one on the left, a pace and a half to the front.

Slow-March.

1. *Dressing man by man.*—Preparatory to teaching a squad to dress by the right, the drill instructor must order the two men on the right, and one on the left, to take a pace and a half to the front; having completed his pace and a half, the right-hand man will take four side paces to his right; and the

three points thus placed will raise their right arms from the elbow at right angles to their bodies.

Man by man, by the right—Dress up.

The instructor having ascertained that the points are in line, will order his squad to dress up man by man. The third man from the right will take one pace to his front with the left foot, and shuffle up into line in the manner already described; as soon as he is steady, the next man will proceed in like manner, and so on to the left. The faces of the men, and not their breasts or feet, are the line of dressing. Each man is to be able just to distinguish the lower part of the face of the second man beyond him.

Eyes-Front.

When the instructor is satisfied that the line is correct, he will give the words *Eyes-Front*, on which the men will turn their heads and eyes to the front, the three points will drop their right hands, and the right-hand man will close on the squad.

In like manner the squad must be taught to dress up, man by man, by the left; also to dress back, man by man, by the right and left.

2. *Dressing together.*—The men must next be taught to dress forward and backward, taking the pace together, but shuffling up or back in succession, the same points being given as in dressing man by man. The words of command will be, *Squad, By the Right* (or *Left*)—*Dress Up*, or *By the Right* (or *Left*)—*Dress Back.*

All dressing is performed on the foregoing principles. When soldiers are on the alignment they have to occupy, and their dressing is simply to be corrected, the words *Eyes*

Right, (or *Left*,) *Dre*
Dress only will be gi
back to their places su
on the flank from whi
When no man is
instructor should inva
which to dress his line

S. 26. *Mar*

The soldier will nex
the different marches
learned singly, or in s
rules being observed.
Before a squad is c
be indicated by the c
During the march
head nor the eyes
that the dressing is
shoulders are kept p
The squad will f
the front, both by t
time; it will then
and in marking tim
will be exercised in t
The soldier must
without halting, fr
slow time, as well
double to quick: in
Quick, the arms wil
The instructor sh
of the pivot man,
object ascertain if th
When a soldier
behind or before t

Right, (or *Left*,) *Dress*, or after the word *Halt*, the word *Dress* only will be given, on which they will shuffle up or back to their places successively, commencing with the man on the flank from which they are dressed.

When no man is placed for that purpose, the officer or instructor should invariably fix upon some casual object on which to dress his line.

S. 26. *Marching to the Front and Rear.*

The soldier will next practise in squad without intervals the different marches and varieties of step which he has learned singly, or in squad with intervals; the same general rules being observed.

Before a squad is ordered to march, the pivot flank must be indicated by the caution, *By the Right*, or *By the Left*.

During the march, care must be taken that neither the head nor the eyes are ever turned towards either flank, that the dressing is kept by the touch only, and that the shoulders are kept perfectly square and the body steady.

The squad will first be taught to march straight to the front, both by the right and left, in slow and quick time; it will then be practised in all the varieties of step and in marking time, in both cadences; after which it will be exercised in the double time.

The soldier must be practised in changing the pace, without halting, from slow to quick, and from quick to slow time, as well as from quick to double, and from double to quick: in the case last mentioned, on the word *Quick*, the arms will be dropped and the fingers extended.

The instructor should occasionally remain halted in rear of the pivot man, and by fixing his eyes on some distant object ascertain if the squad is marching straight to its front.

When a soldier loses his touch, or finds himself a little behind or before the other men of his squad, he must be

taught to recover his place in the rank gradually, and on no account to jump or rush to it, which would make him unsteady, and spoil the marching of the rest of the squad.

S. 27. Wheeling of a Single Rank from the Halt.

Right-Wheel. Slow-March.

1. *Wheeling forwards.*—On the word *Wheel*, the right-hand man, called the pivot man, will face to the right, and if belonging to a corps armed with the long rifle, will raise his right arm from the elbow at right angles to his body; if in a corps armed with the short rifle, he will raise his left arm in like manner. On the word *March*, the squad will step off, the whole turning their eyes to the left (the wheeling or outward flank), except the left-hand man, who will look inwards, and step the usual pace of 30 inches, the other men regulating their length of pace according to their distance from the pivot flank round which they wheel. During the wheel, each man must touch lightly towards the pivot, or standing flank, keeping his shoulders square in line; crowding must be carefully avoided; to this end each man must yield to any pressure that may come from the pivot flank, and resist all pressure that comes from the outward flank.

Squad-Halt. Dress.

On the word *Halt*, the men will halt and turn their eyes to the front; on the word *Dress*, they will take up their dressing by the right, as already described.

Eyes-Front.

A squad will wh
Nothing will so
the length of step
pivot, than contin
revolutions of the

On the Right, backwards-Wheel.

Slow-March.

Squad-Halt. Dress. Eyes-Front.

A squad will
No rank of
backwards; the
forwards, excep
which will be h
Wheeling to
wheeling backw
slow time.

L,

radually, and on no
ould make him un-
t of the squad.

from the Halt.

rds.—On the word
nd man, called the
to the right, and if
armed with the long
right arm from the
s to his body; if in a
e short rifle, he will
like manner. On the
uad will step off, the
r eyes to the left
itward flank), except
who will look inwards,
pace of 30 inches, the
g their length of pace
istance from the pivot
they wheel. During
n must touch lightly
, or standing flank,
ders square in line;
carefully avoided; to
n must yield to any
r come from the pivot
ll pressure that comes
flank.
Halt, the men will halt
s to the front; on the
will take up their dress-
as already described.

Eyes–Front. — On the word *Front*, the men will turn their heads and eyes to the front, and the pivot man will drop his arm.

A squad will wheel to the left in like manner.

Nothing will sooner tend to enable the recruit to acquire the length of step proportioned to his distance from the pivot, than continuing the wheel without halting for several revolutions of the circle.

On the Right, backwards–Wheel. — 2. *Wheeling backwards.*—On the word *Wheel*, the right-hand or pivot man will face to his left. On the word *March*, the whole will step back, turning their eyes towards the left or wheeling flank, except the left-hand man, who will look inwards and step a full pace of 30 inches; the other men regulating their length of pace according to their distance from the pivot flank, round which they wheel, and to which they keep a light touch as in wheeling forward.

Slow–March.

Squad–Halt. Dress. Eyes–Front. — On the word *Halt*, the men will halt and turn their eyes to the front; on the word *Dress*, they will look to the pivot flank and dress.

A squad will wheel backwards on the left in like manner.

No rank of more than 12 men should be wheeled backwards; they should be faced about and then wheeled forwards, except when required to wheel a few paces only, which will be hereafter explained in Part II.

Wheeling to the right and left, on a halted pivot, and wheeling backwards, must be practised in quick as well as in slow time.

S. 28. *Changing Direction by the Wheel of a Single Rank on a Moveable Pivot.*

Right-wheel. When a squad marching to the front is required to change direction to the right, it will receive the word *Right-wheel;* on which the men will wheel to the right on the principles explained in Section 27, the pivot man bringing his shoulders gradually round with the squad, at the same time circling round the wheeling point with very short paces.

Forward. On the word *Forward*, the whole will turn their eyes to the front and step off at the full pace of 30 inches.

The instructor will give his word *Forward* when he sees that the men are commencing the pace that will bring the front of the squad perpendicular to the direction in which he intends it to move: this may be done at any degree of the circle.

In like manner, the squad will be taught to change direction to the left.

After the wheels on a moveable pivot have been taught in slow, they will be practised in quick and double time.

S. 29. *The Diagonal March.*—PLATE III., Fig. 1.

This march will first be taught commencing from the halt, after which the soldiers when marching in line will be practised in taking ground diagonally to either flank, by making a half turn in the direction required.

1. *From the Halt.*—On the word *Face*, the men will make a half face to the right, and on the word *March*, each man

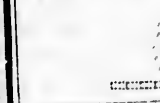


Fig. 1
RIGHT HALF-F

FILL

Fig. 2.—FRONT FOR

Fig. 4.—ON THE LE
RIGHT FORM-

L,

of a Single Rank

marching to the
change direction
receive the word
ich the men will
on the principles
27, the pivot man
rs gradually round
e same time circling
oint with very short

ward, the whole will
e front and step off
inches.
rward when he sees
e that will bring the
he direction in which
done at any degree

e taught to change

ou have been taught
k and double time.

ATE III., Fig. 1.
ommencing from the
arching in line will be
lly to either flank, by
equired.
t.—On the word *Face*,
ke a half face to the
word *March*, each man

PLATE III.

Fig. 1.—THE DIAGONAL MARCH.

RIGHT HALF-FACE, QUICK-MARCH. HALF-FRONT.

FILES FORMING SQUAD.

Fig. 2.—FRONT FORM-SQUAD.

Fig. 3.—IN DOUBLE TIME, FRONT FORM-SQUAD.

Fig. 4.—ON THE LEADING MAN, RIGHT FORM-SQUAD.

Fig. 5.—ON THE LEADING MAN, RIGHT ABOUT FORM-SQUAD.

Right half-Face. Slow March.	wil dis lon in wil rig lat sh of ca hi ra
Halt–Front.	ar

If the diagonal m
squad when halted
line parallel to its or

Right half-Turn.	m m th u o n t s
Front–Turn.	*I* r v

In like manner t
the left, from the
march will also be
During the diag
for the time being

Right half-Face.
Slow March.

will step off and move correctly in the diagonal direction; the men will no longer keep the touch, but will march in echellon with each other. Each man will give a glance of the eye towards the right flank of the squad, and will regulate his pace so as to keep his right shoulder always behind the left shoulder of his neighbour on that side, taking care that his neighbour's head hides from him the heads of the remainder of the rank.

Halt-Front.

Upon this word the squad will halt, and face to its original front.

If the diagonal march has been properly performed, the squad when halted and fronted will be found to be in a line parallel to its original position.

Right half-Turn.
Front-Turn.

2. *On the March.*—When the squad is marching to the front, and is required to move in a diagonal direction to the right, the word *Right half-Turn*, will be given, upon which the men will turn the eighth of a circle to the right and move diagonally in that direction as described from the halt; when it is intended to resume the original direction, the word *Front-Turn* will be given, on which every man will turn to his front and move forward without checking the pace.

In like manner the diagonal march will be practised to the left, from the halt and on the march. The diagonal march will also be practised in quick and double time.

During the diagonal march the leading flank will direct for the time being; for instance, when a squad or company

is moving diagonally to the right, the right-hand man will direct, and must pay particular attention to his pace and direction, as the accuracy of the movement will depend much upon him.

S. 30. *Marching as in File.*

Soldiers will first be taught to commence marching as in file, from the halt, after which they must be taught when marching in line to turn to either flank as in file.

To the Right (or *Left*)*—Face.*

1. *From the Halt.*—Soldiers when faced must be instructed how to cover each other exactly. The head of the man immediately before each soldier, when he is correctly covered, will conceal the heads of all the others in his front.

The strictest observance of all the rules for marching is particularly necessary when marching as in file.

Slow-March.

On the word *March*, the whole are immediately to step off together, gaining at the very first step 30 inches, and will so continue to step without increasing or diminishing the distance between each other, every man placing his foot on the ground, in advance of the spot from which his preceding man has taken up his foot. No looking down nor leaning backwards is to be allowed. The leader is to be directed to march straight forward on some distant objects, the remainder of the men covering correctly in rear of him during the march.

Halt—Front.

C will and per be

To the Right—Turn.

2 the mo

Front—Turn.

giv the mo

In like manner sol from line and march file to turn again to The rules laid dow of command and the must be strictly obse Marching as in fil but never in double

S. 3

Right (or *Left*)*—Wheel.*

m w le o s l w c c

right-hand man
attention to his
he movement will

le.

nce marching as in
t be taught when
as in file.

t.—Soldiers when
cted how to cover
he head of the man
ch soldier, when he
ill conceal the heads
s front.
vance of all the rules
rticularly necessary
file.
rch, the whole are
off together, gaining
30 inches, and will
without increasing or
tance between each
cing his foot on the
f the spot from which
as taken up his foot.
or leaning backwards
The leader is to be
straight forward on
, the remainder of the
ectly in rear of him

Halt-Front. — On the words *Halt-Front*, the soldiers will halt and face to their original front, and if the marching has been properly performed, their dressing and touch will be found correct.

To the Right-Turn. — 2. *On the March.*—On the word *Turn*, the soldier will turn to the right, and move on as in file.

Front-Turn. — The original direction is resumed by giving the word *Front-Turn*, on which the soldier will turn to the front, and then move on steadily in line.

In like manner soldiers will be taught to turn to the left from line and march as in file, and when marching as in file to turn again to the original front.

The rules laid down in Section 22, regarding the words of command and the foot on which the soldier is to turn, must be strictly observed in a squad without intervals.

Marching as in file must also be practised in quick time, but never in double time.

S. 31. *Wheeling as in File.*

Right (or *Left*)-*Wheel.* — The squad, when marching as in file, must be taught to change its direction, by wheeling to the right or to the left. The leading man will move round a quarter of the circumference of a circle about the size of a cart wheel, the other men following on his footsteps in succession, without increasing or diminishing their distances from each other or altering the cadence of the march, but lengthening the pace a little with the outward foot.

S. 32, *Men marching as in File forming Squad.*—PLATE III., Figs. 2, 3, 4, and 5.

When a squad is marching as in file, with the original right-hand man leading, it is called Right in Front, the left is then the pivot; when the original left-hand man is leading, the squad is called Left in Front, and the right is the pivot; hence the expression, "When Right in Front, left is the pivot;" "When Left in Front, right is the pivot."

Front Form-Squad. — 1. *To the Front in Slow or Quick Time.*—When the squad marching as in file is ordered to form to the front, the leading man will mark time; the remainder, when right is in front, will turn to the left, and wheel to the right, looking to the outward flank and feeling inwards, as described in Section 27 of this Part.

Forward or *Halt-Dress.* — As soon as the quarter circle is completed, the word *Forward* will be given if the march is to be continued, or *Halt-Dress* if the squad is to be halted.

In Double Time, Front Form-Squad. — 2. *To the Front in Double Time.*—When a squad marching as in file, right in front, is required to form to the front, in double time, the leading man will move on steadily in quick time, the remainder will make a half turn to the left, double up to their places, and take up the quick time successively as they arrive in line with the leading man.

3. *To the Pivot Flank.*—A squad is formed to the pivot flank simply by the words *Halt-Front*, as described in Section 30.

On the Leading Man, Right Form-Squad. — ing of the hal of

On the Leading Man, Right about Form-Squad. — th ab af m ri hr su

When marching formed to the front, as it is formed to t right is in front.

S. 33

The side or clos judging their ow in Section 21, bu only as the foot o taken that the sh made in a direct li right the touch wi

On the Leading Man, Right Form-Squad.

4. *To the Reverse Flank.*—When marching as in file, right in front, on this word of command, the leading man will turn to the right, take two paces to his front and halt; the remainder will form on the left of the right-hand man in succession.

On the Leading Man, Right about Form-Squad.

5. *To the Right-about.*—On this word the leading man will wheel to the right about, and take two paces to the front after wheeling; the remainder will march on as in file, wheeling to the right on the spot where the leading man has wheeled, and forming to the right successively, as already described.

When marching as in file, left in front, a squad will be formed to the front, left, or left about, on the same principle as it is formed to the front, right, or right about, when the right is in front.

S. 33. The Side or Closing Step.

The side or closing step will now be practised, the men judging their own time, on the principles laid down in Section 21, but each man will carry his foot as far only as the foot of the man next to him. Care must be taken that the shoulders are kept square, and the paces made in a direct line to the flank. When closing to the right the touch will be kept to the right, and *vice versâ.*

SQUAD DRILL, WITH ARMS, IN SINGLE RANK.

S. 34. *Manual and Platoon Exercises and Modes of Firing.*

Recruits having been thoroughly instructed in the preliminary drills explained in the foregoing Sections, will next be taught the rifle exercises and modes of firing, as detailed in Part III.; but in order that they may not forget what they have already learned, a part of each drill with arms will be devoted to the practice of the different marches, as directed in the following Section.

S. 35. *Marching with Arms, in Single Rank.*

Squads with arms must be practised in the slow, the quick, and the double marches, and in all the variations of step described in the foregoing Sections; when marching in double time the arm that does not carry the rifle will be raised as directed in Section 20. During these practices great attention must be paid to the position of the recruit.

Care must be taken, while marching, that the rifle does not partake in the slightest degree of the motion of the leg; the hand that carries the rifle must therefore, when marching with shouldered arms, be slightly separated from the thigh.

When marching with sloped arms the touch is kept with the elbow.

In battalion setting-up drill the men may now be practised in *Marching Past* at slow and quick time, by companies or half companies in single rank. The time must be beaten on a drum before the words *Slow* (or *Quick*) *March* are given, but no music or drums must be used during this practice.

All the instructions relating to the position and movements of the rifle when marching will be found in Part III.

SQUAD DRILL,

S. 36. *For*

The squad will n
will fall in with shou
with ordered arms i
places in succession
they are ordered to
one pace of 30 inch
from heel to heel, a
the middle of his n
"a File." When
of men, the odd n
of the front rank,

The front rank
The rear-rank m
and will cover and
men take up their

S. 38.

A squad in two
and varieties of
in single rank.

1. The front
and 24.

The following
to the rear rank.

Squad Drill, with Arms, in Two Ranks.

S. 36. *Formation of Squad in Two Ranks.*

The squad will now be formed in two ranks. The men will fall in with shouldered arms if armed with the long rifle, with ordered arms if armed with the short rifle; taking their places in succession, commencing from the flank on which they are ordered to form; each rear-rank man will be placed one pace of 30 inches from his front-rank man, measuring from heel to heel, and will cover him correctly, looking at the middle of his neck; the two men thus placed forming "a File." When the squad consists of an uneven number of men, the odd man will be placed the third from the left of the front rank, and will be called "a Blank File."

S. 37. *Dressing.*

The front rank will dress as described in Section 25. The rear-rank men will continue looking to their front, and will cover and correct their distances as the front-rank men take up their dressing.

S. 38. *Marching to the Front and Rear.*

A squad in two ranks will be practised in all the marches and varieties of step which have been taught to the soldiers in single rank.

1. The front rank will touch as directed in Sections 23 and 24.

The following additional instructions are applicable only to the rear rank.

2. *Covering and Distance.*—The rear-rank men, while marching to the front in line, must be careful to preserve accurately their distances and covering. When retiring the same directions apply to the proper front rank.

3. *Blank File while retiring.*—When retiring in line a soldier being a blank file, after facing or turning about, will step up and occupy the vacant space in the proper rear rank. After halting and fronting, or turning to the front, he will resume his original place.

4. *Marching with Trailed Arms.*—When a squad in two ranks standing with ordered arms is required to step off without shouldering, the rear-rank men will make their first pace a short one, to give sufficient room for their rifles when trailed, as described in Part III. When ordered to trail on the march, the rear rank will step short one pace. When the squad is halted, the rear rank will regain its distance by taking a long pace as it comes to the halt. When ordered to advance arms or shoulder arms from the trail on the march, the rear rank will lengthen its pace to regain its distance.

S. 39. *Taking Open Order.*

Rear Rank take Open-Order.	1. *From the Halt.*—On the word *Order*, the flank men on the right and left of the rear rank will step back two paces, and face to the right.
March.	On the word *March*, the flank men will front and raise their right hands (or left hands if armed with the short rifle) from the elbow at right angles to the body, and the rear rank will step back two paces.

Rear Rank—Dress.	
Eyes—Front.	
Rear Rank take Close Order—March.	
Rear Rank take Open-Order.	
Rear Rank take Close-Order.	

The squad will
and shoulder ar

S. 40. *Manua. and*

These exercises
by the squad in tw

Rear Rank—Dress. — On the word *Dress*, the rear rank will dress by the right. Care must be taken not to move the flank men when dressing the rear rank.

Eyes—Front. — On the word *Front*, the rear-rank men will turn their eyes to the front, and the pivot men will drop their hands.

Rear Rank take Close Order—March. — On the word *March*, the rear rank will step forward two paces, resuming the regular distance of close order from the front rank.

Rear Rank take Open-Order. — 2. *On the March.*—Open order is taken only when marching in slow time. On the word *Order*, the rear rank will mark time *one* pace, and then move on steadily.

Rear Rank take Close-Order. — On the word *Order*, the rear-rank men will lengthen their pace until they regain their proper distance from the front rank.

The squad will always be ordered to march by the right and to shoulder arms before taking open order.

---

§. 40. *Manual and Platoon Exercises, and the different Modes of Firing.*

These exercises and modes of firing will now be practised by the squad in two ranks, on the principles already taught.

S. 41. *Wheeling.*

Right-Wheel.

1. *Wheeling Forward from the Halt.*—On the word *Wheel*, the right-hand man of the front rank, called the pivot man, as in single rank, will face to the right and raise his arm as directed in Section 27, his rear-rank man uncovering by taking a short pace to his rear with his right foot, and a pace of 21 inches to his left with his left foot.

Slow or *Quick-March.*

On the word *March*, the front rank of the squad will wheel according to the instructions laid down in Section 27, the rear-rank man of the pivot file regaining his place during the wheel; the remaining men of the rear rank will follow their front-rank men, keeping their proper distances, and covering.

Squad-Halt.
Dress.
Eyes-Front.

On the word *Halt*, the squad will halt, and on the word *Dress* the squad will dress by the pivot flank, according to the principle already laid down.

A squad will wheel to the left in like manner.

2. *Wheeling Backwards from the Halt.*—The squad will be practised in wheeling backwards as directed in Section 27; in this wheel the rear-rank man of the pivot file will not uncover, nor will the pivot man raise his arm.

3. *Wheeling on a Moveable Pivot.*—A squad will be practised in wheeling on a moveable pivot on the principles laid down in the first part of this Section, and in Section 28.

S. 42.

The diagonal marc
the principles laid d
ground to a flank in t
tions already given, t
to preserve their rela
men, in order that th
when they are halted

S. 43. *File Marching*

1. *File Marching.*—
principles laid down
the rear-rank men dr
rank men.

2. *Wheeling in File*
on the principles lai
rank stepping rather
with the outward foo

3. *Files forming t*
files will form to the
Section 32, the rear
men; the front-rank
time, the rear-rank r
round into his place

4. *Files forming t*
Left About, or to the
in files is required t
right or left about,
Section 32. The fro
spective rear-rank r
them. A squad wil
halting and fronting

S. 42. *The Diagonal March.*

The diagonal march will be practised in two ranks on the principles laid down in Section 29. When taking ground to a flank in this manner, in addition to the instructions already given, the rear-rank men must be cautioned to preserve their relative positions with their front-rank men, in order that they may be found to cover correctly when they are halted and fronted.

S. 43. *File Marching, Wheeling in Files, and Files forming Squad.*

1. *File Marching.*—File marching will be practised on the principles laid down in Section 30, care being taken that the rear-rank men dress correctly by their respective front-rank men.

2. *Wheeling in Files.*—Wheeling in files will be performed on the principles laid down in Section 31; the outward rank stepping rather longer during the wheel, especially with the outward foot.

3. *Files forming to the Front.*—A squad marching in files will form to the front on the principles laid down in Section 32, the rear-rank men following their front-rank men; the front-rank man only of the leading file will mark time, the rear-rank man will turn with the rest, and move round into his place during the wheel.

4. *Files forming to the Reverse Flank, or to the Right or Left About, or to the Pivot Flank.*—When a squad marching in files is required to form to the reverse flank, or to the right or left about, the rear rank will form as described in Section 32. The front-rank men will move round their respective rear-rank men, and form successively in front of them. A squad will form to the pivot flank simply by halting and fronting.

S. 44. *The Formation of Fours.*—PLATE IV., Figs. 1, 2, and 3.

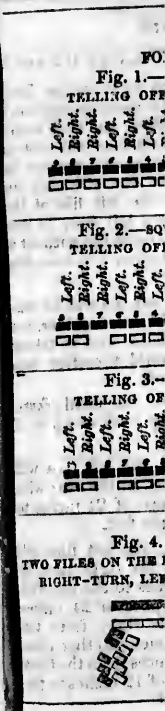
The squad should now be made up to eight or nine files, and numbered off from right to left; and it must be explained to the men that odd numbers are right files, and even numbers left files. But in order that the left four may always be complete, when there happens to be an odd number on the left of the squad, the left file but one, although an even number, will be a right file, and the left file of the squad, though an odd number, will be a left file; in this case the third file from the left, being a right file without a left file, will be called an "Odd File," whether it is complete or blank.

The four men composing a right and left file will be considered as comrades in the field, and will act together, not only in forming fours, but on other occasions, such as taking off and putting on knapsacks; they should therefore take notice of each other when they are told off.

Form Fours— 1. *On the Halt.*—On the word *Fours*, the rear rank will step back one pace of 12 inches.

Deep. On the word *Deep*, the left files will take a pace of 21 inches to the rear with their left feet, and a pace of 21 inches to the right with their right feet.

Squad-Front. On the word *Front*, the left files will move up in line with the right files, by taking a pace of 21 inches to the left with their left feet, and a pace of 21 inches to the front with their right feet; the whole of the rear-rank men will then close up to their proper distances from the front rank by taking a pace of 12 inches to the front with their left feet.



L.

V., Figs. 1, 2, and 3.

eight or nine files,
t must be explained
iles, and even num-
eft four may always
an odd number on
t one, although an
the left file of the
a left file; in this
right file without a
nether it is complete

left file will be con-
ill act together, not
sions, such as taking
hould therefore take
off.

On the word *Fours*,
tep back one pace of

p, the left files will
hes to the rear with
pace of 21 inches to
right feet.

nt, the left files will
th the right files, by
nches to the left with
a pace of 21 inches
heir right feet; the
k men will then close
stances from the front
ce of 12 inches to the
feet.

PLATE IV.

FORMATION OF FOURS.

Fig. 1.—SQUAD WITH AN ODD FILE.

TELLING OFF. FORM FOURS-DEEP.

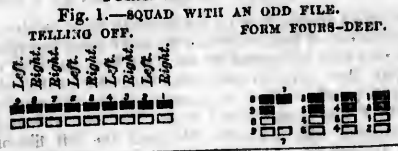


Fig. 2.—SQUAD WITH A BLANK ODD FILE.

TELLING OFF. FORM FOURS-DEEP.

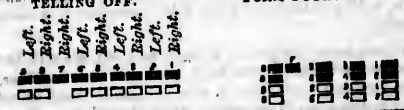
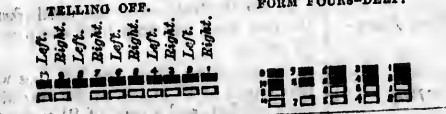


Fig. 3.—SQUAD WITH A BLANK FILE.

TELLING OFF. FORM FOURS-DEEP.



BREAKING OFF FILES.

Fig. 4.

TWO FILES ON THE LEFT, TO THE RIGHT-TURN, LEFT-WHEEL.

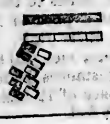


Fig. 5.

FILES TO THE-FRONT.

Form Fours— A

About. { wi fil ri to of

Squad—Front. { w tw

Form Fours— A

Right. { t o o t t

Squad—Front. { f s

Form Fours— A

Left. { t

Squad—Front. { t

2. *On the Marc*
to form fours on t
Right, and *Form*

Form Fours–	As already described.
About.	On the word *About*, the whole squad will face to the right about, and the left files will double in the proper rear of the right files, by taking a pace of 21 inches to the front with the right feet, and a pace of 21 inches to the left with their left feet.
Squad–Front.	On the word *Front*, the whole squad will face to the right about, and re-form two deep as already described.
Form Fours–	As already described.
Right.	On the word *Right*, the squad will face to the right, and the left files will form on the right of the right files, by taking one pace of 21 inches to the right with the right feet, and one pace of 21 inches to the front with their left feet.
Squad–Front.	On the word *Front*, the squad will face to the left, and re-form two deep as already described.
Form Fours–	As already described.
Left.	On the word *Left*, the squad will face to the left, and the left files will form on the left of the right files by taking one pace of 21 inches to the left with their left feet, and one pace of 21 inches to the rear with their right feet.
Squad–Front.	On the word *Front*, the squad will face to the right, and re-form two deep as already described.

2. *On the March.*—A squad on the march will be taught to form fours on the words *Form Fours–Deep*, *Form Fours–Right*, and *Form Fours–Left*; in those formations the left

files will move precisely in the same manner as they do when forming from the halt, the right files marking time two paces to enable them to do so.

On the word *Fours*, the rear rank if the squad is advancing, or the proper front rank if it is retiring, will step short one pace; if the word *Deep* follows, the right files will mark time two paces while the left files move to their places; if the word *Right*, or *Left*, follows, the squad will first turn in the direction ordered, after which the right files will mark time two paces while the left files move to their places.

When moving to a flank in fours, on the words *Front* (or *Rear*) *Turn*, the men will turn as ordered, and then form two deep without further word of command; the right files marking time two paces while the left files get into their places, and the rear rank, or proper front rank if retiring, regains its distance.

A squad moving to the front or rear, or to a flank in fours, may be ordered to *Form Two Deep*, on which the left files will fall back or step up to their places in file, and the rear rank will close on the front rank, the right files marking time two paces.

A squad moving to a flank in file may be ordered to *Form four-deep*. On the word *Four*, the rear rank will incline from the front rank by a lengthened step in the diagonal direction, and on the word *Deep*, the left files will move to their places in fours, the right files marking time two paces.

Men can never be required to form fours about on the march, nor can they be required to form fours deep from the halt while facing to the rear, as it is a rule that men are never to be allowed to stand facing to the rear. If men are required to form fours while marking time, the rear rank, or the proper front rank, if they are rear rank in front, will take a short pace to the rear, on the word *Fours*.

S. 45. Fours Wheeling

1. *Wheeling.*—A squad taki will wheel to the right or le wheels in files, each four wh same point.

2. *Forming to the Front.*— to a flank by fours is order front rank man of the leadin mainder will turn, if right is i front, to the right, form two in Sections 43 and 32 of this

3. *Forming to the Reverse About, or to the Pivot Flank.*— orm to the reverse flank, or t t once form two deep, and Sections 43 and 32 of this P ivot flank simply by halting

S. 46. A Squad formed in F the Centre, and Re

For the following practice gether.

On *the Right* (*Left* or *Centre*) *Close.* *Quick-March.*	A squ must be ta or centre flank or in mainder cl
	In re-fo *March*, the

S. 45. *Fours Wheeling and Forming Squad.*

1. *Wheeling.*—A squad taking ground to a flank by fours, will wheel to the right or left, in the same manner as it wheels in files, each four wheeling successively round the same point.

2. *Forming to the Front.*—When a squad taking ground to a flank by fours is ordered to form to the front, the front rank man of the leading file will mark time, the remainder will turn, if right is in front, to the left, if left is in front, to the right, form two deep, and proceed as described in Sections 43 and 32 of this Part.

3. *Forming to the Reverse Flank, or to the Right or Left About, or to the Pivot Flank.*—When a squad is ordered to form to the reverse flank, or to the right or left about, it will at once form two deep, and then proceed as described in Sections 43 and 32 of this Part; a squad will form to the pivot flank simply by halting and fronting.

S. 46. *A Squad formed in Fours closing on a Flank, or on the Centre, and Re-forming Two Deep.*

For the following practices 10 or 12 files should be put together.

On the Right (Left or Centre) Close. Quick-March.	A squad having formed four deep must be taught to close on the right, left, or centre; the four men on the named flank or in the centre standing fast, the remainder closing on them by the side step.
	In re-forming two deep, on the word *March*, the four men on the named flank,

From the Right (Left, or Centre) Re-form Two Deep. Quick-March. — or in the centre, will stand fast, the remainder will open out from them by the side step, and the left files will move up to their places in line in succession as the intervals are opened for them; the rear-rank men will step up to their proper distances at the same time.

These formations must also be practised during the march; on the words *On the Right* (*Left* or *Centre*) *Close*, the files on the named flank, or in the centre, will continue to march straight to their front, with a short pace, the remainder will close on them by the diagonal march; when all are closed, on the word *Forward*, the squad will move on with a full pace.

On the words *From the Right* (*Left* or *Centre*) *Re-form Two Deep*, the four men on the named flank or in the centre will continue to march to the front with a short pace, the remainder will incline outwards by the diagonal march, and the left files will move up into the intervals, in succession, as they are opened for them, the rear-rank men regaining their proper distances at the same time; when completely formed in two deep, on the word *Forward*, the squad will move on with a full pace.

S. 47. *Breaking off Files.*

A squad must be taught to reduce the breadth of its front by breaking off files; files will always be broken off from the pivot flank. A certain number of files (suppose three) will be broken off, when left is the pivot, as follows:

Three Files on the Left, to the Right-Turn. Left-Wheel. — On the word *Turn*, the named files will turn to the right, and on the word *Wheel*, they will wheel to the left, following the left flank of the remainder of the squad.

The front of the squad number of files, suppose t

Two Files on the Left, to the Right-Turn. Left-Wheel. — On t two mo on the left, fo mainde already incline march, files la

Any number of files t again ordered to the fro

Three Files to the-Front. — On will n flank, line, t inclin with two f

Two Files to the-Front. — O files will

All the files may be words *Files to the front*

Files that are broke not interfere with othe

The front of the squad may be further reduced by any number of files, suppose two.

Two Files on the Left, to the Right–Turn. Left–Wheel. — On the word *Turn*, (Plate IV., Fig. 4) two more files will turn to the right, and on the word *Wheel*, will wheel to the left, following the left flank of the remainder of the squad; the three files already in rear will mark time, and then incline to their right, by the diagonal march, and follow close in rear of the two files last broken off.

Any number of files that have been broken off may be again ordered to the front, suppose three.

Three Files to the–Front. — On the word *Front*, the named files will make a half turn towards the pivot flank, and double up into their places in line, the remaining files in the rear will incline to the left by the diagonal march, with a lengthened pace till they cover the two files on the pivot flank.

Two Files to the–Front. — On the word *Front*, the two remaining files will make a half turn to the left, and will double up into line.

All the files may be brought to the front at once by the words *Files to the front.* Plate IV., Fig. 5.

Files that are broken off must lock up well, that they may not interfere with others who may be following them.

S. 48. Dismissing a Squad.

To the Right-Face. — 1. *Without Arms.*—On the word *Face*, the men will face as directed in Section 6.

Break-off. — On the words *Break-off*, the front rank will take a side pace to the left, and the rear rank will take a side pace to the right; at the same time the men will strike their hands together in front of their thighs, and after a pause the squad will break off.

To the Right-Face. — 2. *With Arms.*—On the word *Face*, the men will face as directed in Section 6.

Lodge-Arms. — On the word *Arms*, the men will port arms, at the same time taking a side pace outwards by ranks, and after a pause they will break off.

When there is only one rank, either with or without arms, it will take a pace to the left as a front rank.

After breaking off, the men must leave the parade in a quiet and orderly manner, carrying their rifles (if armed) at the advance, or shoulder with the short rifle.

PA

OF THE

GENERA

Soldiers to be formed in
been thoroughly grounde
drill, is now to be instruc
pany, as a more immedia
battalion; for this purp
formed and told off as a

1. *Sizing a Company.*
flanks to centre, the fr
nearly as possible the s
first sized, the following
the men in single rank
on the right, shortest on
man to take three paces
self three paces in front
a left-hand man, the thi
the inner side of the ri
inner side of the left-h
they meet in the centre.
right, caution the left-h
fast, then direct the left
the right files of the le

word *Face*,
Section 6.
front rank
t, and the
ace to the
will strike
nt of their
squad will

d *Face*, the
ection 6.
n will port
a side pace
pause they
thout arms,

parade in a
if armed) at

PART II.

OF THE COMPANY.

GENERAL PRINCIPLES.

I.

Soldiers to be formed in a Company.—The soldier having been thoroughly grounded in all the preceding parts of the drill, is now to be instructed in the movements of the company, as a more immediate preparation for his joining the battalion; for this purpose from 18 to 20 files will be formed and told off as a company.

II.

1. *Sizing a Company.*—A company will be sized from flanks to centre, the front and rear rank men being as nearly as possible the same height. When a company is first sized, the following method will be adopted:—Place the men in single rank according to their heights, tallest on the right, shortest on the left; then direct the right hand man to take three paces to the front, the next to place himself three paces in front of the left-hand man of the rank, as a left-hand man, the third tallest man to place himself on the inner side of the right-hand man, the fourth on the inner side of the left-hand man, and so on alternately till they meet in the centre. After which, number off from the right, caution the left-hand man if he be a right file to stand fast, then direct the left files of the right sub-division and the right files of the left sub-division to take one pace to

the rear; lastly, cause the whole to close on the centre file and then to dress by the right, the rear rank covering correctly, leaving the blank file, if there is one, the third from the left.

III.

2. *Soldiers to know their Places.*—After the men of a company have once been sized in this manner, they should remember their relative heights, and be able to fall in, in their proper places; any defect in sizing that may be occasioned by men being absent from parade can easily be remedied by the eye of the instructor.

IV.

Formation and Telling-off of a Company.—The company will fall in in two ranks at close order, files lightly touching, and will be told off from right to left, as already described in Part I., Section 44; it will then be divided into two sub-divisions and four sections. The companies of a battalion are told off right and left alternately, as are the files of a company. When a company cannot be divided into sub-divisions of equal strength, in a *right* company the right sub-division will be the stronger, in a *left* company the left sub-division will be the stronger. When a sub-division is divided into sections of unequal strength, the outward section, on whichever flank of the company it may be placed, will be the stronger. Before a company, formed singly, is told off for drill, the instructor will give the caution, TELL OFF AS A RIGHT (or LEFT) COMPANY.

V.

Supernumerary Rank.—The subaltern officers and serjeants will be formed in a third or supernumerary rank, as will hereafter be described. Their principal duty in this situation is to keep the other ranks closed up to the front

during the attack, and
the rear; also to corr
during the movements
much attention cannot b

Establishment of a Co
of officers and serjeant
subaltern officers, and
will perform the duti
following explanations,
will always be termed
numerary, "the lieute
ensign;" but in the a
places will be taken by
serjeants, who will perfo
tion as herein describe
no serjeants will ever n
retain the posts they h
corporals from the ran

Relative Proportion
pies a space of about
number of paces of 30
of files, multiply the n
product by 30; or use
that is, multiply by 7
being accomplished b
multiplied by 3 will d
useful to remember, th
and so on—100 files 7

Application of Squa
for the instruction o

on the centre
rank covering
one, the third

the men of a
er, they should
o fall in, in their
y be occasioned
be remedied by

—The company
s lightly touch-
left, as already
then be divided
The companies
nately, as are the
annot be divided
a *right* company
r, in a *left* com-
onger. When a
nequal strength,
f the company it
fore a company,
tructor will give
EFT) COMPANY.

officers and ser-
ernumerary rank,
ncipal duty in this
d up to the front

during the attack, and to prevent any break beginning in the rear; also to correct any mistakes that may occur during the movements of a company or battalion. Too much attention cannot be paid to these important points.

VI.

Establishment of a Company.—The ordinary establishment of officers and serjeants in a company, is one captain, two subaltern officers, and four or five serjeants, one of whom will perform the duties of covering serjeant. In the following explanations, the commander of the company will always be termed "the captain," the senior supernumerary, "the lieutenant," and the second senior "the ensign;" but in the absence of any of these officers, their places will be taken by the next in rank, whether officers or serjeants, who will perform all the duties of the superior position as herein described, except that in taking open order, no serjeants will ever move out in front of the line, but will retain the posts they hold in close order. When required, corporals from the ranks will supply the places of serjeants.

VII.

Relative Proportion of Paces to Files.—Each man occupies a space of about 21 inches; therefore, to ascertain the number of paces of 30 inches required for a given number of files, multiply the number of files by 21, and divide the product by 30; or use the sub-multiples of these numbers, that is, multiply by 7 and divide by 10, the latter operation being accomplished by cutting off the last figure, which multiplied by 3 will designate the odd inches. It will be useful to remember, that 10 files require 7 paces, 20 files 14, and so on—100 files 70 paces, 1,000 files 700.

VIII.

Application of Squad Drill.—All the principles laid down for the instruction of a squad in two ranks, are equally

applicable to the movements of a company; it is therefore only necessary here to describe the positions of the officers and serjeants during these movements, and to add the different movements and formations of the sub-divisions and sections of a company that have not hitherto been explained.

IX.

Companies to be drilled as if with the Battalion.—When a company falls in alone, it will be formed as a company in line, but in order to teach officers and non-commissioned officers the different positions they will occupy in battalion drill, a company will be drilled as though it were with a battalion. The instructor must state previous to each movement the supposed formation of the battalion, upon which the officers and serjeants must be taught to move at once to their proper places.

X.

Companies to be exercised by their own Officers.—Every company of a battalion must be frequently exercised by its own officers, the captain acting as drill instructor, and one of the subalterns taking his place.

XI.

Companies to be exercised on Rough Ground.—A company must be exercised on rough and broken ground, as well as on smooth and level ground, and the rank which is in front during one drill should be in rear during the next, in order that every man may be equally well drilled.

XII.

Derangements to be quickly remedied.—Great pains should be taken to accustom the men to remedy quickly, of their own accord, any derangement that may take place in the telling off of companies. For example, the officer will order the pivot files of sections to fall out, when the files next to them in their respective sections will become, as

a matter of course, without re-telling off, the new pivots of the sections. Soldiers trained in this way are not liable to fall into confusion, whatever casualties may occur on service; and it is especially desirable that companies should be so exercised as to ensure on all occasions, and under all circumstances, the ready wheel of sections, upon which most of the formations against cavalry so completely depend.

XIII.

Assembling on Coverers.—Men should frequently be practised in assembling, and forming company; for this purpose, the company should be dispersed, and when the men are scattered over the exercise-ground the bugle will sound *The Assemble*, or the word *Assemble* will be given, on which they will run in and form company (as in column right in front) on the covering serjeant or the left-hand man, who will previously be placed for that purpose; they will order their arms and remain at attention.

XIV.

Marching on Points and judging Distance.—In order that officers and serjeants may be thoroughly trained in these important parts of their duty, they should frequently be practised separately, in marching on points, and judging distances. In the former exercise, the instructor must remain standing in rear of the officer or serjeant to see that he marches perfectly straight to his front; in the latter exercise, the instructor must make use of a measuring line to prove the distances, which may be taken by a number of officers or serjeants, on the same alignment one beyond another, the number of files for which the distance is to be taken being previously named.

XV.

Officers to be drilled as Privates.—All officers on joining the army must go through the course of squad and company drill prescribed for private soldiers, and learn the duties of

covering serjeants before they are allowed to do duty in the ranks as officers.

XVI.

Officers to be perfectly instructed in their Duty.—An officer ought to know the post which he should occupy in all changes of situation, the commands which he should give, and the general intention of every movement. He should be master of the principles on which each formation is founded, and be aware of the faults that are likely to be committed, in order to avoid them himself, and be able to correct others. These principles are in themselves so simple, that with moderate attention, he will soon fix them in his mind. All the officers, from time to time, when qualified, must be ordered to exercise the battalion.

XVII.

Examination of Young Officers.—Commanding officers of regiments must examine their young officers before they are dismissed drill, to ascertain that they fully comprehend, and are able practically to apply, all they have been taught.

XVIII.

Squad Drill for Officers.—Officers who have been dismissed drill must be exercised periodically in squads under the superintendence of a field officer, and must go through a complete course of squad and company drill annually, previous to the commencement of the spring or setting up drill of a battalion.

XIX.

General Rules.—The following general rules will be observed in the movements of a company, whether alone, or with the battalion; although they may not be repeated in the description of each manœuvre.

1. At all times, when a company, sub-division, or section wheels forward on a halted pivot, the pivot man, as soon as

he has faced, will r
rifle, and his rear-ra
pace to his rear, a
to cover the rear-ra

2. When a comp
whether it is faced
been given, or not
nor will his rear-ra

3. Serjeants ma
upon, when deploy
recovered arms fac
be placed at arm
when the men app
arms at right ang
on which the line
at arm's length in
marking a point
opposite to his fis

4. When a capt
his company be in
or on the march,
When, however,
closing to the rig
of paces not bein
pivot, from a colu
and in forming c
captain will mov
22, 10, and 17 o
exceptions to the

5. When the
coverer, if not
reverse flank of
lieutenant will
moving in doub

6. When the

he has faced, will raise that arm which does not carry the rifle, and his rear-rank man will uncover by taking a short pace to his rear, and a pace of 21 inches to his side, so as to cover the rear-rank man of the file next to him.

2. When a company, sub-division, or section wheels back, whether it is faced about to wheel, after the caution has been given, or not, the pivot man will not raise his arm, nor will his rear-rank man uncover.

3. Serjeants marking points for their companies to dress upon, when deploying into or forming line, will stand with recovered arms facing towards the point of appui; they will be placed at arm's length in front of the alignment, and when the men approach them they will hold out their inner arms at right angles to their bodies with their fists clenched, on which the line will dress. Thus all lines will be dressed at arm's length in rear of the line of coverers. A serjeant marking a point may drop his arm as soon as the man opposite to his fist has dressed up to it.

4. When a captain is required to change his flank, whether his company be in column or in line, or whether it be halted or on the march, he will pass by the rear in double time. When, however, the change of flank is preparatory to closing to the right or to the left when in line, the number of paces not being mentioned; in wheeling on a moveable pivot, from a column right in front into line, and *vice versâ*; and in forming company to the front from files or fours; the captain will move across the front, as explained in Sections 22, 10, and 17 of this Part; these cases may be considered exceptions to the above rule.

5. When the captain of a company changes his flank, the coverer, if not required to take a point or fall in on the reverse flank of his company, will change with him; the lieutenant will also make a corresponding change, both moving in double time.

6. When the leader of a company, sub-division, or section

changes his flank on the march, he will give the words *By the right*, or *By the left*, as he falls in, in his new place; if he changes during a wheel, the above words will immediately follow the word *Forward*.

7. Commanders of companies, previously to giving a word of command, should call out the number of their companies thus, *No. 1—Halt*. When in motion, executive words must be completed as the men are commencing the pace which will bring them to the spot on which the command has to be executed. The cautionary part of the word must, therefore, be commenced accordingly.

8. In order to avoid the constant shifting of officers from one flank to the other, when a company in column takes ground to the reverse flank, or is ordered to move by that flank during field manœuvres, the lieutenant will move up and lead, the captain remaining on the proper pivot flank, except in a few movements where it is necessary that the captain should change, as will hereafter be described.

9. Soldiers will fall in on parade with unfixed bayonets or swords; troops armed with the long rifle, with shouldered arms; troops armed with the short rifle, with ordered arms: the former will be ordered to fix bayonets before commencing company or battalion movements, unless they are to move as light infantry; the latter will remain with their swords unfixed.

10. After halting, soldiers will remain perfectly still unless ordered to dress.

11. The left file of the right sub-division is always considered the centre of a company.

N.B.—In Parts II. and IV., words of command given by the instructor of the drill or the commander of the battalion are in capital letters, those given by the commander of the company or its sub-divisions or sections in italic.

---

give the words *By*
his new place; if
words will imme-

sly to giving a word
er of their compa-
on, executive words
nmencing the pace
gh the command has
of the word must,

ting of officers from
ny in column takes
red to move by that
tenant will move up
e proper pivot flank,
s necessary that the
be described.
th unfixed bayonets
rifle, with shouldered
, with ordered arms:
s before commencing
less they are to move
ain with their swords

n perfectly still unless

ivision is always con-

of command given by
nmander of the bat-
n by the commander
sections in italic.

PLATE V.

Fig. 1.—A COMPANY IN LINE.

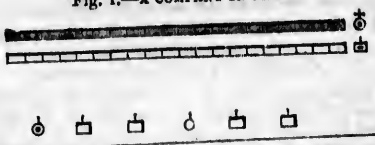


Fig. 2.—REAR RANK TAKE OPEN ORDER.

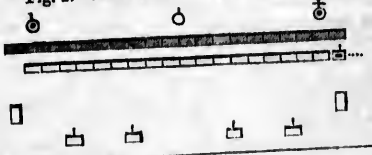


Fig. 3.—MARCH.

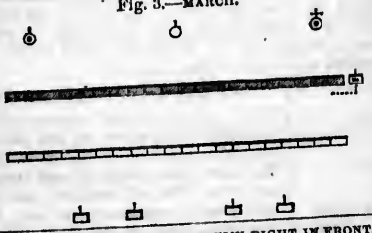
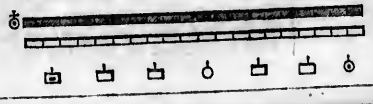


Fig. 4.—A COMPANY IN COLUMN RIGHT IN FRONT.



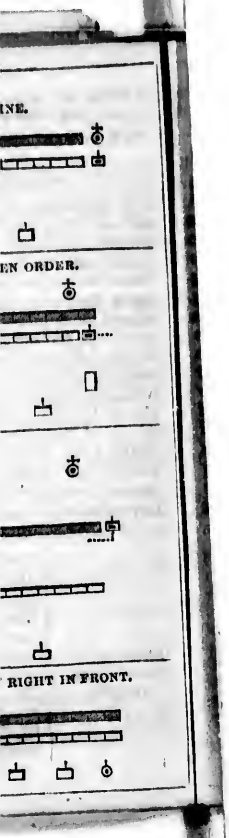
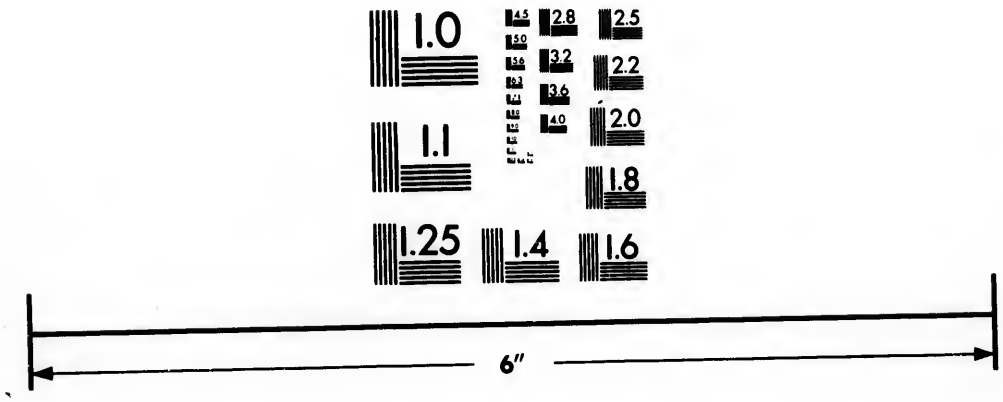

INE.
EN ORDER.
RIGHT IN FRONT.

IMAGE EVALUATION
TEST TARGET (MT-3)



Photographic
Sciences
Corporation

23 WEST MAIN STREET
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580
(716) 872-4503

S.

1. *F*
captai
covere
of the
place
paces
second
compa
divisio
the le
when
ing to
in rea
sectio
place
super
respe

REA
TAK
O

A Company in Line and Column.

S. 1. *Formation of a Company in Line.*—Plate V., Figs. 1, 2, and 3.

Caution,—as a company in line.

1. *Formation in Close Order.*—On the above caution, the captain will place himself on the right of the front rank, covered by his covering serjeant, who will be on the right of the rear rank; the remaining officers and serjeants will place themselves in a third or supernumerary rank, three paces from the rear rank; the lieutenant in rear of the second file from the left, the ensign in rear of the centre of the company, the third supernumerary in rear of the left sub-division, the fourth in rear of the right, the fifth in rear of the left, and so on. When a company is formed singly or when it is manœuvring, the drummers and pioneers belonging to it will also be in the supernumerary rank, the former in rear of the second section, the latter in rear of the third section; the lieutenant and ensign will always retain their places; the serjeants and men composing the rest of the supernumerary rank will divide the space in rear of their respective sub-divisions and sections.

REAR RANK TAKE OPEN-ORDER.

2. *Taking Open Order.*—On the word *Order*, the officers will recover their swords, the captain will move out and place himself one pace in front of the second file from the right; the lieutenant and ensign, passing round the left flank of the company, will place themselves one pace from the front rank, the former in front of the second file from the left, and the latter in front of the centre of the company. The flank men of the rear rank will move as directed in Part I., Section 39, and the covering ser-

jeant will take one pace of 21 inches to his left, thus occupying the space vacated by the right-hand man of the rear rank.

MARCH. — On the word MARCH, the officers will take two paces to the front, look to their right and dress, the covering serjeant will take one pace to his right with his right foot, and one pace to his front with his left foot, thus filling up the place vacated by the captain; the rear and supernumerary ranks will step back two paces, the flank men of the rear rank moving as directed in Part I., Section 39.

Rear Rank—Dress. Eyes—Front. Supernumerary Rank—Dress. Eyes—Front. — On the word *Dress*, the rear and supernumerary ranks will look to their right and dress. On the words *Eyes—Front*, they will turn their eyes to the front, and the flank men of the rear rank will drop their arms, as described in Part I., Section 39.

Steady. — On the word *Steady*, the officers will port their swords and look to their front.

When a company is formed singly the captain will dress the officers and give the word *Steady;* the serjeant on the right of the supernumerary rank will dress the rear and supernumerary ranks, and will give the words *Eyes—Front*, as the dressing of each is completed. Two or more companies should also be practised together, as described in Part IV., Section 4.

REAR RANK TAKE CLOSE ORDER. — 3. *Resuming Close Order.*—On the word ORDER, the officers will recover their swords and face to the right.

take one pace of 21 inches to
ıs occupying the space vacated
ıt-hand man of the rear rank.

word MARCH, the officers will
aces to the front, look to their
lress, the covering serjeant will
pace to his right with his right
ne pace to his front with his
ıus filling up the place vacated
ptain; the rear and supernu-
nks will step back two paces,
nen of the rear rank moving as
Part I., Section 39.

word *Dress*, the rear and
rary ranks will look to their
dress. On the words *Eyes-*
y will turn their eyes to the
the flank men of the rear
drop their arms, as described
Section 39.

word *Steady*, the officers will
words and look to their front.

d singly the captain will dress
ord *Steady;* the serjeant on
rary rank will dress the rear
nd will give the words *Eyes-*
ı is completed. Two or more
actised together, as described

sing Close Order.—On the
ER, the officers will recover
s and face to the right.

MARCH. On the word MARCH, the rear and supernumerary ranks will take two paces to their front, the covering serjeant will take two paces to his rear and one to his left, to make room for the officers to pass; the lieutenant and ensign will move to their places in the supernumerary rank, round the left flank of the company; the captain will then resume his place on the right of the front rank, all the officers carrying their swords as they take post; lastly, the covering serjeant will move up to his place on the right of the rear rank.

S. 2. Formation of a Company in Column.—PLATE V., Fig. 4.

When the column is right in front, that is, when the company that stands on the right, when in line, is in front, the left will be the pivot flank of each company; when the column is left in front, the right will be the pivot flank of each company, on the principles explained in Part I., Section 32.

Caution.—AS A COMPANY IN COLUMN RIGHT (OR LEFT) IN FRONT.

On the caution, the captain will place himself on the pivot flank of the front rank to lead his company, the lieutenant will place himself one pace in rear of the second file from the reverse flank, and the covering serjeant one pace in rear of the second file from the pivot flank. The places of the remaining supernumeraries will be the same as in line, but at one pace distance from the rear rank. When manœuvring, the drummers and pioneers will also be in the supernumerary rank.

S. 3. Marching to the Front and Rear.

1. *Marching to the Front.*—The instructor, having stated the supposed order of the battalion, will proceed as follows.

THE LINE (or COLUMN) WILL—ADVANCE.	On the word ADVANCE, the captain will carefully select points to march upon.
SLOW (QUICK or DOUBLE)—MARCH.	As described in Part I.

2. *Marching to the Rear.*—When the company is to retire, the caution THE LINE (or COLUMN) WILL RETIRE, will be given; the men will then be faced about. The captain, if the company is in column, will step up in line with the proper rear rank and select points to march on; but if the company is in line, will remain on the flank of the proper front rank.

WHEELING FROM THE HALT.

A company, sub-division, or section will wheel from column into line, and line into column, on the principles laid down in Part I., Section 41, the pivot files moving as directed in that Section, and in the general rules 1 and 2 of this part: these instructions will not be repeated. The officers and serjeants will move as follows.

S. 4. Company Wheeling, from the Halt, from Column into Line.

Caution,—AS A COMPANY IN COLUMN RIGHT IN FRONT.

On the word LINE, the captain will place himself one pace in front of the second file from the pivot flank; the covering serjeant will run to the front,

the Front and Rear.

—The instructor, having stated
ttalion, will proceed as follows.

word ADVANCE, the captain
ully select points to march

ed in Part I.

.—When the company is to
E (OR COLUMN) WILL RETIRE,
ill then be faced about. The
in column, will step up in line
and select points to march on;
line, will remain on the flank

FROM THE HALT.

n, or section will wheel from
into column, on the principles
on 41, the pivot files moving as
d in the general rules 1 and 2
ions will not be repeated. The
ove as follows.

*ng, from the Halt, from Column
to Line.*

IN COLUMN RIGHT IN FRONT.

e word LINE, the captain will
inself one pace in front of the
file from the pivot flank; the
serjeant will run to the front,

LEFT WHEEL INTO-LINE. — and mark the spot on which the right of the company will rest when the wheel is completed; he will stand with shouldered arms, facing in the direction of the new front and will raise his left arm from his elbow, looking to his left, and aligning himself with the pivot man, who will face on this caution.

QUICK-MARCH. — On the word MARCH, the company will commence its wheel, the captain turning towards his men and moving back round the pivot man to be ready to dress his company from the left; the lieutenant moving across to his place in line, and the supernumerary rank gaining its distance from the rear rank, during the wheel.

Company-Halt Dress. — The captain will give his word *Halt*, when the wheeling flank of his company is two paces from the covering serjeant, and immediately follow it by the word *Dress*, on which he will dress his men from the pivot flank.

Eyes-Front. — Having completed the dressing, the captain will give the words *Eyes-Front*, and fall in on the right of his company, the covering serjeant falling back to his place on the right of the rear rank.

A company in column, left in front, will be taught to wheel into line in a similar manner, on the commands RIGHT WHEEL INTO LINE, &c.

S. 5. A Company Wheeling, from the Halt, from Line into Column.

Caution,—AS A COMPANY IN LINE.

OPEN COLUMN, RIGHT IN-FRONT.	On the word FRONT, the captain will move out and place himself one pace in front of the centre of his company, facing to the front, and the covering serjeant will run to the rear, and mark the spot on which the right of the company will rest when the wheel is completed; he will stand with shouldered arms, facing in the direction that the column will face, and raise his left arm. The pivot man will face to the right on this caution.
RIGHT ABOUT-FACE.	On the word FACE, the company will face about; the pivot man and covering serjeant remaining steady.
RIGHT WHEEL, QUICK-MARCH.	On the word MARCH, the company will commence its wheel, the captain moving to the pivot flank, and the lieutenant moving across to his place in column during the wheel.
Company, Halt-Front-Dress.	The captain having given the words *Halt, Front, Dress,* will fall in at once on the left flank of his company looking to his front, and leaving the company to dress itself; the covering serjeant will at the same time move to his proper place in column, and the supernumerary rank will step up to its proper distance from the rear rank. Having completed their dressing, the men will turn their eyes to the front without further word of command.

from the Halt, from Line into umn.

COMPANY IN LINE.

word FRONT, the captain will and place himself one pace in e centre of his company, facing nt, and the covering serjeant the rear, and mark the spot the right of the company will the wheel is completed; he will shouldered arms, facing in the that the column will face, and eft arm. The pivot man will right on this caution.

word FACE, the company will ; the pivot man and covering maining steady.

word MARCH, the company mence its wheel, the captain the pivot flank, and the lieu- oving across to his place in aring the wheel.

ptain having given the words *nt, Dress*, will fall in at once t flank of his company looking nt, and leaving the company to f; the covering serjeant will at time move to his proper place , and the supernumerary rank up to its proper distance from ank. Having completed their the men will turn their eyes to without further word of com-

A company in line will also be taught to wheel into an open column left in front in like manner, in which case the company, having been faced about, will wheel to the left.

S. 6. A Company Wheeling any given Number of Paces, on either Flank from the Halt.—PLATE VI., Fig. 1.

A company in line or in column may be required to wheel backward or forward any named number of paces on either flank, which flank for the time being will be considered the pivot.

— — PACES RIGHT (or LEFT)-WHEEL, OR — — PACES ON THE RIGHT (or LEFT) BACKWARDS-WHEEL.	On the word WHEEL, the covering serjeant will place himself with his back to the eighth file from the pivot, either in front or rear of it, according to the direction in which the wheel is to be made, and will take the number of paces named, on the circumference of the circle of which the pivot is the centre, and then halt, if the paces are taken to the rear he will halt and front; the pivot man will face in the direction that the company is to face when the wheel is completed; the captain will place himself on the pivot flank facing inwards, and will correct the position of the pivot man.
QUICK-MARCH.	On the word MARCH, the company will wheel forwards or backwards as directed.
Halt-Dress.	The captain will halt his company, as the eighth file reaches the covering serjeant, and then dress it from the pivot flank, taking care not to move either the eighth or the pivot file.

Eyes-Front. { On the words *Eyes-Front*, the captain will take post on the pivot flank and the covering serjeant on the reverse flank of the front rank.

The further movements of a company in echellon will be hereafter explained in Part IV. On the caution, AS A COMPANY IN COLUMN (or IN LINE) the captain and covering serjeant will return to their usual posts.

The eighth file wheeling eight paces will complete the quarter circle, four paces the eighth of a circle, and two paces the sixteenth of a circle. *See* Plate VI., Fig. 2.

1. No company, nor any sub-division or section of more than 12 files, should be wheeled backwards more than, at most, the eighth of a circle, but in any greater degree of wheel, should be faced about and wheeled forwards; the caution — PACES ON THE RIGHT (OR LEFT) BACKWARDS-WHEEL should however be first given, on which the pivot man will face, and the covering serjeant will take his paces, halt, and face about; the company will then be faced about, and the words QUICK-MARCH will be given.

2. When a company is faced about before the caution to wheel is given, and that caution is given while it is standing faced to the rear, the rear-rank man of the pivot file will act as the pivot man, and the proper front-rank man (if the wheel is forwards) will uncover, as though the company were standing front rank in front. (See Part IV., Section 33, Nos. 3 and 4, Sections 57 and 58.)

-COMPANY.

words *Eyes-Front*, the cap-
ake post on the pivot flank
vering serjeant on the reverse
e front rank.

of a company in schellon will
rt IV. On the caution, AS A
N LINE) the captain and cover-
eir usual posts.

eight paces will complete the
e eighth of a circle, and two
le. *See* Plate VI., Fig. 2.

sub-division or section of more
eeled backwards more than, at
le, but in any greater degree
about and wheeled forwards;
THE RIGHT (OR LEFT) BACK-
wever be first given, on which
l the covering serjeant will take
out; the company will then be
QUICK-MARCH will be given.

aced about before the caution to
tion is given while it is standing
rank man of the pivot file will
the proper front-rank man (if
uncover, as though the company
front. (See Part IV., Section 33,
nd 58.)

PLATE VI.

Fig. 1.—COMPANY FOUR PACES TO THE LEFT WHEEL.

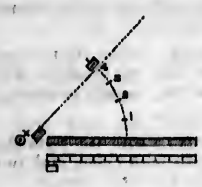


Fig. 2.—Number of paces in $\frac{1}{12}$, $\frac{1}{8}$, and $\frac{1}{4}$ of the circle.

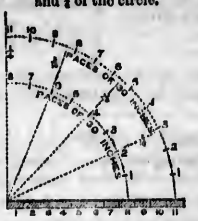
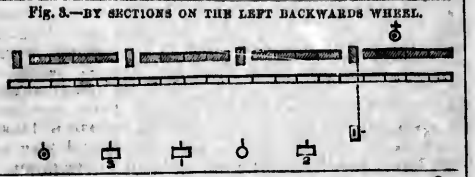


Fig. 3.—BY SECTIONS ON THE LEFT BACKWARDS WHEEL.



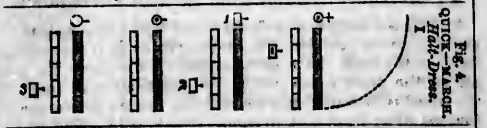
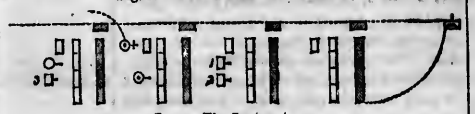


Fig. 4. QUICK-MARCH. *Half-Dress.*

Fig. 5.—LEFT WHEEL INTO LINE.



L. . . . The Instructor.

S. 7. A

A comp
ised in w
he other
ank of
orward, w

Caution
WHEEL
— PACI

On the C
Right
(or *Left*
or
on the C
— Pac
to the R
(or *Left*
Wheel

Quick-M

S. 7. A Company Wheeling on the Centre from the Halt.

A company, formed as a company in line, must be practised in wheeling upon its centre, one sub-division forward, the other backward. In this wheel, the man on the inner flank of the front rank of the sub-division that wheels forward, will be the pivot man.

Caution from the Instructor,—THE COMPANY WILL WHEEL ON THE CENTRE TO THE RIGHT (OR LEFT, OR — PACES TO THE RIGHT OR LEFT).

On the Centre, Right (or *Left*)— or *on the Centre — Paces to the Right* (or *Left*)— *Wheel.*	On the caution from the instructor, the captain will step out three paces in front of the centre of his company, face towards the men, and give the command required, on which the pivot man will face to the direction named, and his rear-rank man will uncover; the covering serjeant, if the company is to wheel a quarter circle, will move out and align himself with the pivot man, with shouldered arms, marking the place on which the outer flank of the sub-division that wheels forward is to rest. If the paces are named, he will, with shouldered arms, step them from the eighth file from the centre, counting towards the flank that wheels forward.
Quick-March.	On the word *March*, the company will wheel half forward, half backward, on the principles laid down in Part I., S. 41, the man on the outward flank of the sub-division that wheels forward, will look inwards and regulate his pace so as to keep the company in line; the outward man of

the sub-division that wheels backward, will look inwards and step a full pace of 30 inches; the captain will move to the flank that wheels forward, during the wheel.

Company, Halt, Dress. — The wheel being completed, on the word *Halt* from the captain, the coverer and supernumerary serjeant will give base points at arm's length from the front of the company, facing inwards, with recovered arms, holding out their inner arms with the fist clenched, the former being on the flank that wheels forward, the latter on the opposite flank. The captain will then give the word *Dress*, dress the company up to the hands of the base points, and after giving the words *Eyes-Front*, will take his place on its right flank. Lastly, the instructor will give the word STEADY, on which the covering serjeant and supernumerary take post.

Eyes-Front.

STEADY.

When the sub-division that is to wheel back is faced about, according to the rule laid down in the preceding Section, the word *Front* must follow the word *Halt*.

This movement is used only when a battalion in line is required to change front on a central company, in which case that company will wheel on its centre as above directed. *See* Part IV., Section 58.

Should a company as in line be required to wheel into column on the centre, or *vice versâ*, the instructor will give the commands, and the captain, on the caution, will place himself in front of the centre of the sub-division that wheels forwards. On the word MARCH, he will turn towards his men, and move to the flank marked by the covering serjeant

ision that wheels backward, will
rds and step a full pace of 30
e captain will move to the flank
s forward, during the wheel.
eel being completed, on the
from the captain, the coverer
rnumerary serjeant will give
its at arm's length from the
the company, facing inwards,
vered arms, holding out their
ns with the fist clenched, the
eing on the flank that wheels
he latter on the opposite flank.
ain will then give the word
ress the company up to the
the base points, and after
e words *Eyes-Front*, will take
e on its right flank. Lastly,
ructor will give the word
on which the covering serjeant
rnumerary take post.
that is to wheel back is faced
ile laid down in the preceding
st follow the word *Halt*.
only when a battalion in line is
on a central company, in which
el on its centre as above directed.

line be required to wheel into
ice versâ, the instructor will give
ptain, on the caution, will place
re of the sub-division that wheels
ARCH, he will turn towards his
marked by the covering serjeant.

S. 8. *Wheeling backward by Sub-divisions or Sections, from Line.*—PLATE VI., Figs. 3 and 4.

BY SUB-DIVISIONS ON THE LEFT BACKWARD-WHEEL.

1. *Wheeling back by Sub-divisions on the Left.*—On the word WHEEL, the captain will place himself one pace in front of the centre of the right sub-division; the covering serjeant will move back, and mark, with shouldered arms, the spot on which the right of the leading sub-division will rest, raising his left arm; the pivot men facing as usual.

QUICK-MARCH.

On the word MARCH, the sub-divisions will wheel backwards, the captain inclining to the left.

Halt-Dress.

As the leading sub-division is taking the last step that completes the wheel of a quarter of a circle, the captain will give the words *Halt-Dress*, to the whole company, and post himself on the left, the proper pivot flank of the right sub-division, the covering serjeant will take his place in column, one pace in rear of the second file from the pivot flank of the same sub-division; and the lieutenant will take his post on the pivot flank of the rear sub-division, the ensign in rear of the second file from the reverse flank of the rear sub-division.

2. *Wheeling back by Sub-divisions on the Right.*—A company will wheel by sub-divisions backwards on the right in like manner, the captain placing himself one pace in front of the centre of the left sub-division in the first instance, and falling in on its right flank when the wheel is completed; the lieutenant taking post on the right, and the ensign in rear of the second file from the left, of the rear sub-division.

3. *Wheeling backwards by Sections.*—A company in line will wheel backwards by sections in the same manner that it wheels backwards by sub-divisions; the captain in the first instance will place himself one pace in front of the centre of the right or left section; and on the words *Halt–Dress*, he will post himself on the pivot flank of the leading section; the lieutenant will place himself on the pivot flank of the third section from the front, the ensign on the pivot flank of the fourth section from the front, the senior serjeant, if no other officer is present, on the pivot flank of the second section from the front, and the covering serjeant one pace in rear of the second file from the pivot flank of the leading section, unless there are only two other supernumeraries, counting subalterns and serjeants, in which case he will lead the second section from the front.

When the sub-divisions or sections exceed twelve files, they should always be faced about and wheeled rear rank in front. The word of command will then be, OPEN COLUMN OF SUB-DIVISIONS OR SECTIONS RIGHT (OR LEFT) IN FRONT, RIGHT ABOUT–FACE, &c., and they will wheel in the same manner as companies wheel.

S. 9. An Open Column of Sub-divisions or Sections Wheeling into Line. PLATE VI., Fig. 5.

LEFT WHEEL INTO–LINE.

1. *A Column Right in Front wheeling to the Left into Line.*—On the word LINE, the captain will fall back and place himself one pace in front of the second file from the left of the rear sub-division (or section), the pivot files moving according to rule. The leaders of the rear sub-division (or sections) will fall back into the supernumerary rank, and the covering serjeant will move out and mark the spot on which the right of the company will rest, with shouldered arms, and will raise his left arm.

Sections.—A company in line
ons in the same manner that it
isions; the captain in the first
ne pace in front of the centre
and on the words *Halt-Dress,*
pivot flank of the leading sec-
e himself on the pivot flank of
front, the ensign on the pivot
m the front, the senior serjeant,
on the pivot flank of the second
he covering serjeant one pace
n the pivot flank of the leading
ly two other supernumeraries,
rjeants, in which case he will
the front.

or sections exceed twelve files,
about and wheeled rear rank
ommand will then be, OPEN
OR SECTIONS RIGHT (or LEFT)
FACE, &c., and they will wheel
panies wheel.

of Sub-divisions or Sections
PLATE VI., Fig. 5.
olumn Right in Front wheeling
t into Line.—On the word LINE,
n will fall back and place him-
ace in front of the second file
left of the rear sub-division (or
the pivot files moving according
The leaders of the rear sub-
(or sections) will fall back into
numerary rank, and the covering
will move out and mark the spot
the right of the company will
shouldered arms, and will raise
rm.

QUICK-MARCH. On the word MARCH, the sub-divisions or sections will commence their wheel, the captain turning towards his men and moving back round the pivot man to be ready to dress his company from the left. The supernumeraries will move to their places during the wheel.

Halt-Dress. On the words *Halt-Dress,* the men will halt, and the captain will dress them from the left, the whole feeling in to that flank, and the pivot men, except the pivot man of the company, dropping their arms.

Eyes-Front. On the words *Eyes-Front,* the whole will turn their eyes to the front, and the captain and covering serjeant will take their places in the line, the former passing by the rear.

2. *A Column Left in Front wheeling to the Right into Line.*—In like manner a company in column of sub-divisions or sections left in front, will wheel into line.

WHEELING ON A MOVEABLE PIVOT.

S. 10. *Wheeling from Column into Line, and from Line into Column.*

1. *From Column into Line.*—While on the march, companies, sub-divisions, or sections in open column, may be wheeled into line on moveable pivots by the words RIGHT (or LEFT) WHEEL INTO LINE. When a company in column right in front wheels into line, the captain will move on straight to his front at a short pace during the wheel, so as to meet the right of his company as it completes the quarter circle, taking post on the word FORWARD; the lieutenant and covering serjeant at the same time moving to their places by the rear; but when a company in column left in front wheels into line, the captain will remain on the right,

the covering serjeant, during the wheel, moving up to his post in rear of him.

When sub-divisions or sections in open column right in front, wheel into line, the captain and covering serjeant will move as described in the preceding paragraph; but when sub-divisions or sections in open column left in front wheel into line, the captain will turn to the right-about on the command, and move straight back to the right of the company, the coverer moving to his place round the reverse flank or flanks of the rear sub-division or sections; in both cases, the rear sub-division leader or rear section leaders will fall back on the command, and will move, during the wheel, to their places in the supernumerary rank.

2. *From Line into Column.*—A line may be wheeled on moveable pivots, either from the halt or while on the march, into column of companies, sub-divisions, or sections, by the words, BY COMPANIES (SUB-DIVISIONS OF SECTIONS) RIGHT (OR LEFT) WHEEL, or if from the halt ON THE MOVE, BY COMPANIES, SUB-DIVISIONS, &c. When the wheel is by companies to the right, the captain will move across to the left of his company, as explained in the preceding number, the lieutenant and coverer changing their flanks; when the wheel is to the left, the captain will remain on the right flank and wheel with the company, the coverer falling back, during the wheel, to his place in column.

When the wheel is to the right by sub-divisions or sections, the captain and coverer will move to their places on the left of the leading sub-division or section, as in wheeling by companies; when the wheel is to the left, the captain will wheel with the right sub-division or section, and on the word FORWARD, will double up to the pivot flank of the leading sub-division or section; in both cases the leader of the rear sub-division, or leaders of the rear sections, will take post on the word FORWARD.

In all these movements the supernumerary rank will gain its proper distance from the rear rank during the wheel.

the wheel, moving up to his

tions in open column right in
tain and covering serjeant will
eceding paragraph; but when
pen column left in front wheel
rn to the right-about on the
ht back to the right of the
to his place round the reverse
ub-division or sections; in both
leader or rear section leaders
nd, and will move, during the
upernumerary rank.

an.—A line may be wheeled on
the halt or while on the march,
ub-divisions, or sections, by the
DIVISIONS OR SECTIONS) RIGHT
m the halt ON THE MOVE, BY
s, &c. When the wheel is by
captain will move across to the
ined in the preceding number,
hanging their flanks; when the
ptain will remain on the right
mpany, the coverer falling back,
ace in column.

he right by sub-divisions or sec-
er will move to their places on
ivision or section, as in wheeling
heel is to the left, the captain
b-division or section, and on the
le up to the pivot flank of the
ion; in both cases the leader of
aders of the rear sections, will
WARD.

he supernumerary rank will gain
rear rank during the wheel.

S. 11. Columns changing Direction.

A column of sub-divisions or sections, on the caution CHANGE DIRECTION TO THE RIGHT (OR LEFT) from the instructor, will change its direction, each sub-division or section wheeling in succession, by command of its leader, on a moveable pivot. The word FORWARD will be given to the leading sub-division or section by the instructor, but the sub-division or each section that follows will receive the word *Forward* from its leader as its front becomes perpendicular to the new direction. The officers do not change their positions.

It may here be remarked, that if a company wheels the same number of paces that it contains files, it will complete the quarter circle; if half that number of paces, the eighth of a circle; and if a quarter of the number, the sixteenth of a circle. *See* Plate VI., Fig. 2.

S. 12. A Company in Line advancing from a Flank in Open Column of Sub-divisions or Sections.

RIGHT SUB-DIVISION TO THE FRONT; REMAINING SUB-DIVISIONS ON THE MOVE. RIGHT-WHEEL, QUICK-MARCH; FORWARD.

Left-Wheel. Forward.

1. *By Sub-divisions from the Right.*—On the caution the captain will place himself one pace in front of the right file of the left sub-division; on the word MARCH, the right sub-division will move straight to the front at a short pace, the captain leading on its left, and the left sub-division will wheel to the right; when the latter is square, the instructor will give the word FORWARD, on which the lieutenant, who will have moved to his place in column during the wheel, will give the command *Left-Wheel* to his sub-division. The captain will give the word *Forward* to the leading sub-division when it has stepped short a sufficient length of time

Forward. — to prevent a loss of distance that would otherwise be caused by the two wheels of the following sub-division. When the second wheel of the rear sub-division is completed, it will, on the word *Forward* from the lieutenant, move on in column.

2. *By Sub-divisions from the Left or Sections from either Flank.*—A company will advance by sub-divisions from the left in like manner, or by sections from either flank, the rear sections changing direction as already explained.

Miscellaneous Movements and Formations.

S. 13. *Marching Past in Slow and Quick Time.*

Plate VII.

For this practice the company will be formed as a company in open column, right in front.

Four points will be placed marking the angles of an oblong, of which the long sides will be 80 paces in length, and the short sides 30, or more if the company is strong. The left of the company will rest on the centre of one of the long sides of the oblong, the opposite side will be called the saluting base; a fifth point, called the saluting point, will be placed four paces outside of the centre of the saluting base, and facing towards the flank of the company. The men marking the angles will face in the same direction as the company. If more convenient, the points may be marked with camp colours.

SLOPE-ARMS. MARCH PAST IN SLOW TIME, SLOW-MARCH. *Left-Wheel. Forward.* — The company will step off as usual, by command of the instructor, and will wheel to the left by command of the captain at the four corners of the oblong. It will wheel round the first point, and at wheeling distance from the second, the captain changing his flank across the

PLATE VII.

a loss of distance that would be caused by the two wheels llowing sub-division. When l wheel of the rear sub-division ed, it will, on the word *Forward* lieutenant, move on in column. *the Left or Sections from either* vance by sub-divisions from the sections from either flank, the tion as already explained.

MENTS AND FORMATIONS.

in Slow and Quick Time.

TE VII.

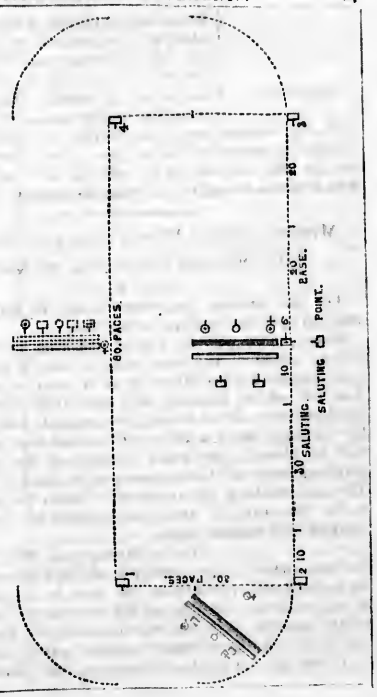
npany will be formed as a com- in front.

ed marking the angles of an ides will be 80 paces in length, nore if the company is strong. ill rest on the centre of one of , the opposite side will be called oint, called the saluting point, outside of the centre of the wards the flank of the company. s will face in the same direction convenient, the points may be

mpany will step off as usual, and of the instructor, and will the left by command of the the four corners of the oblong. eel round the first point, and g distance from the second, the hanging his flank across the

PLATE VII.

MARCHING PAST IN SLOW TIME.



Left-W
Forwa
by the I

Rear I
take O
Orde

Rear
take
Or

Left-Wheel. Forward, by the Right.

front during the wheel, and falling in on the right as it is completed, the men coming to the shoulder on the word *Forward.*

Rear Rank take Open-Order.

When at 30 paces from the saluting point the captain will give the word *Rear Rank take Open Order*, on which the men will move as directed in Part I., Section 39. The officers will recover their swords, and move out in double time to the front of the company, each taking up the slow time and porting his sword as he arrives at his place. The officers' places will be the same as at open order on the halt; the covering serjeant will move up to the place vacated by the captain, and will lead the company; the supernumerary rank will mark time three paces. When at ten paces from the saluting point the officers will salute as detailed in the "Sword Exercise," taking time from the captain, who will give a preparatory signal to his subalterns by a slight turn of the left hand, two paces before he commences his salute. When at six paces beyond the saluting point, the officers will return again to the port, at 20 paces beyond it the captain will give the words *Rear Rank take Close Order*, on which the men will move as directed in Part I., Section 39, and the officers will recover their swords and return to their places at close order, the captain turning to the right, the lieutenant and ensign to the left, each

Rear Rank take Close Order.

carrying his sword as he arrives at his post, the ensign moving in double time; the covering serjeant will also return to his post, and the supernumerary rank will regain its distance by stepping out.

Left Wheel.
Forward,
by the Left.

Left Wheel.
Forward.
COMPANY—
HALT.

The captain will give the command for the third wheel as his right arm touches the third point, and will then change by the rear to the left of his company, the men sloping arms (or trailing arms with the short rifle) on the word *Forward;* the company will wheel round the fourth point, and return to its original ground.

The captain, as he gives the word *Forward* at each corner of the ground, must at once observe some object in the straight line between himself and the next point to guide him in marching. When the covering serjeant takes his place at open order he must do likewise.

MARCH PAST IN
QUICK TIME,
QUICK-MARCH.
Left Wheel.
Forward.
Left Wheel.
Forward,
By the Right.
Left Wheel.
Forward,
By the Left.
Left Wheel.
Forward.
COMPANY-HALT.

On the word MARCH, the whole will step off in quick time, sloping arms (or trailing with the short rifle) on the first pace, as usual; they will move in the same manner as in slow time, except that the company will not take open order.

After marching past in slow time the company may be ordered to break into quick time without halting, by the command from the instructor, BREAK INTO QUICK TIME-QUICK.

his sword as he arrives at his
ensign moving in double time;
ng serjeant will also return to
and the supernumerary rank
its distance by stepping out.
tain will give the command for
wheel as his right arm touches
point, and will then change
ar to the left of his company,
sloping arms (or trailing arms
hort rifle) on the word *Forward;*
ny will wheel round the fourth
return to its original ground.
he word *Forward* at each corner
ce observe some object in the
f and the next point to guide
the covering serjeant takes his
do likewise.

the word MARCH, the whole will
f in quick time, sloping arms
iling with the short rifle) on the
ace, as usual; they will move
same manner as in slow time,
that the company will not take
rder.

slow time the company may
uick time without halting, by
structor, BREAK INTO QUICK

Respecting the rear and supernumerary ranks locking up, *see* Part VII., Section 1.

S. 14. *The Echellon March of Sub-divisions or Sections.*

TAKE GROUND TO THE RIGHT (OR LEFT) IN ECHELLON. ON THE MOVE, BY SUB-DIVISIONS (OR SECTIONS) RIGHT (OR LEFT) WHEEL. QUICK—MARCH.	On the word MARCH, the sub-divisions (or sections) will wheel towards the named flank.
FORWARD.	Having completed the eighth of a circle, on the word FORWARD, the sub-divisions (or sections) will move to their front in echellon. If the movement is to the right, each sub-division or section will march by the right; if to the left, they will march by the left.

In this movement, the officers and serjeants will retain the places they occupied previously to the company being wheeled into echellon, except when a company in column takes ground to the reverse flank in echellon, when the lieutenant will move up and lead the leading section, unless the captain is ordered to change his flank; thus, when a company in open column right in front is ordered to take ground to the right in echellon of sections, the captain will remain on the left of the left section, the lieutenant will lead the right or leading section, by the right, and the remaining sections will be led by their respective pivot men, each keeping his distance from the pivot flank of the section next to him, in the direction towards which the company is inclining. The leaders of sections must also keep their dressing in a line parallel to their original

position. When a company in line takes ground to the left in echellon of sections, all the sections will be led by their pivot men, the captain remaining on the right of the right section. This rule applies equally to sub-divisions.

A company on the march will take ground to a flank in echellon in the same manner, the command being by SUB-DIVISIONS (OR SECTIONS) RIGHT (OR LEFT) WHEEL, FORWARD.

RE-FORM-COMPANY. { On the word COMPANY, the sub-divisions or sections will wheel back into line on the pivot flanks.

FORWARD. { On the word FORWARD, the company will advance by the proper pivot flank.

On even ground, where the sub-divisions or sections are not broken, they may, if required, wheel up into line on the reverse flanks, by the words, BY SUB-DIVISIONS (OR SECTIONS), RIGHT (OR LEFT) WHEEL.

S. 15. Marching on an Alignment in Open Column of Sub-divisions.

An alignment is the imaginary straight line that lies between any two given points, on which a line may be formed, or the pivot flanks of a column dressed.

The company having wheeled backwards by sub-divisions from line, as directed in Section 8 of this Part, and a distant object in the prolongation of the two pivot flanks having been selected as a point; the commander of the company, who will be on the pivot flank of the leading sub-division, will immediately fix on some intermediate point between himself and the distant point to march on.

On the word MARCH, given by the instructor of the drill, both sub-divisions will step off at the same instant; the leader of the first sub-division will march with the utmost steadiness and equality of pace on the points he has taken; and the commander of the second sub-division will preserve the leader of the first in the exact line with the distant object;

y in line takes ground to the
, all the sections will be led by
remaining on the right of the
plies equally to sub-divisions.
will take ground to a flank in
r, the command being by SUB-
RIGHT (OR LEFT) WHEEL,

word COMPANY, the sub-divi-
ections will wheel back into line
ot flanks.
word FORWARD, the company
ce by the proper pivot flank.
he sub-divisions or sections are
quired, wheel up into line on
words, BY SUB-DIVISIONS (or
) WHEEL.

lignment in Open Column of
ivisions.

ginary straight line that lies
nts, on which a line may be
f a column dressed.
led backwards by sub-divisions
Section 8 of this Part, and a
longation of the two pivot
s a point; the commander of
the pivot flank of the leading
ely fix on some intermediate
e distant point to march on.
by the instructor of the drill,
off at the same instant; the
n will march with the utmost
e on the points he has taken;
cond sub-division will preserve
act line with the distant object;

t the same time keeping the distance necessary for wheeling into line, from the preceding sub-division, which distance must of course be taken from front rank to front rank.

The same principle applies to companies and sections marching in column, on an alignment.

S. 16. *A Company in Column of Sub-divisions or Sections forming to the Reverse Flank.*

A company in column of sub-divisions right in front, will form to the right, which is the reverse flank, as follows:—

RIGHT FORM—COMPANY.

Leading Sub-division Right-Wheel, Double, Forward, Halt-Dress.

By the Right.

Left Sub-division Right-Wheel, Double, Forward, Halt-Dress up.

On the word COMPANY, the leaders of sub-divisions will change to the right flanks; the captain commanding his sub-division to wheel to the right at the double, as he changes, and when it has wheeled the quarter circle, giving the word *Forward:* the sub-division having gained three paces, the captain will halt and dress it from the right, the covering serjeant running out to mark the left of the company, facing towards the pivot flank with his rifle recovered and his inner arm extended for the company to dress upon, the supernumerary serjeant giving a base point on the right of the company in like manner. When the second sub-division arrives at the left of the first, its leader will fall to the rear and give the word, *Left Sub-division Right Wheel, Double,* and when square, *Forward,* then *Halt-Dress up,* taking care to halt his sub-division when its front rank is in line with the rear rank of the right sub-division, so that the men may dress up into line.

Eyes-Front.

STEADY.

The captain having dressed the whole company, will give the words *Eyes-Front*, and fall in; the coverer and supernumerary serjeant will take post on the word STEADY from the instructor.

A column of sub-divisions left in front will form company to the left in like manner. A column of sections will form company to the reverse flank on similar principles.

When not required to form at right angles to the direction in which the column is marching, the leading section or sub-division will be ordered to change its direction till it is at right angles with the future alignment, and then the order will be given, RIGHT (OR LEFT) FORM COMPANY; the remaining sub-division or sections will change direction, as they arrive at the spot where the leading sub-division or section changed direction, and then form in succession, as already described.

S. 17. A Company marching in Files or Fours, forming to the Front, to either Flank, or to the Right or Left About. —PLATE VIII., Fig. 1.

These formations will be made as described in Part I., Sections 43 and 45, the word COMPANY being substituted for the word *Squad*, in the command. When forming to the front, the captain will move across the front, turning towards his company during the formation, and take his place on the pivot flank when it is completed: the covering serjeant passing by the rear. The lieutenant will also move to his place during the formation.

When forming to the reverse flank or to the right or left about, the covering serjeant will mark the outward flank of the company, facing towards the pivot flank with his rifle recovered and his inner arm extended for the company to dress upon; the supernumerary serjeant will give a base point at the inner flank in like manner. The captain will

ptain having dressed the whole
, will give the words *Eyes-Front*,
in; the coverer and supernu-
erjeant will take post on the
EADY from the instructor.
s left in front will form company
A column of sections will form
k on similar principles.
m at right angles to the direction
arching, the leading section or
l to change its direction till it is
future alignment, and then the
IT (OR LEFT) FORM COMPANY;
or sections will change direction,
where the leading sub-division or
and then form in succession, as

---

g in Files or Fours, forming to
nk, or to the Right or Left About.
l.
e made as described in Part I.,
ord COMPANY being substituted
command. When forming to
l move across the front, turning
ng the formation, and take his
en it is completed: the covering
. The lieutenant will also move
nation.
verse flank or to the right or left
t will mark the outward flank of
ds the pivot flank with his rifle
n extended for the company to
nerary serjeant will give a base
like manner. The captain will

PLATE VIII.

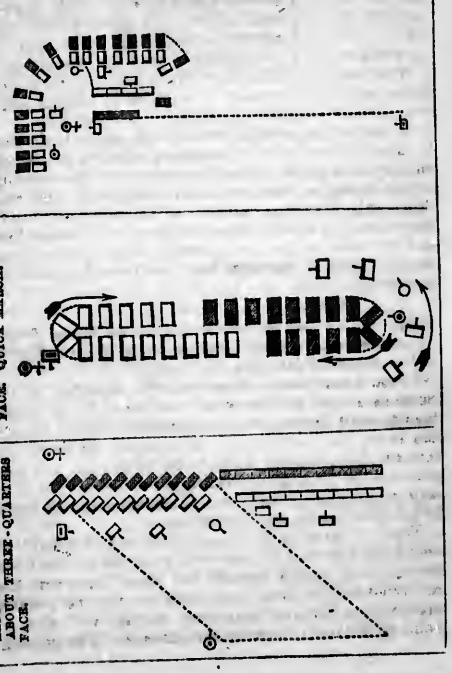


Fig. 1. ON THE LEADING FILE RIGHT ABOUT FORM COMPANY.

Fig. 2. COUNTER-MARCH BY RANKS. RIGHT AND LEFT-FACE. QUICK MARCH.

Fig. 3. FORM SUB-DIVISIONS. LEFT SUB-DIVISION RIGHT ABOUT THREE-QUARTERS FACE.

dress his
company
fall in in
taking po
supernum
their dist
by the re

As in
In col
flank, the
the senio
captain i

As in
For th
If a co
only part
the rema
rear by t
the word
need not
on the w

In for
Part I.,
word *Fo*
and the
company
the lead
himself
be on th

dress his men file by file as they come up; and when the company is formed, will give the words *Eyes-Front*, and fall in in his place; the coverer and supernumerary serjeant taking post on the word STEADY from the instructor. The supernumerary rank will form with the company, correcting their distances from the rear rank, if necessary, when cleared by the rest of the company.

S. 18. *The Diagonal March.*

As in Part I., Sections 29 and 42.

In column, when a company inclines towards the pivot flank, the captain will lead; when towards the reverse flank, the senior supernumerary will move up and lead, unless the captain is ordered to change his flank.

S. 19. *File Marching and Wheeling in File.*

As in Part I., Sections 30, 31, and 43.

For the positions of the officers, see the next Section.

If a company is halted or ordered to mark time when only part of the files have wheeled into the new direction, the remainder should be taught, if required, to cover off in rear by the side step, on the words, *Rear files cover;* if the word *Front* is to follow the word *Halt*, the rear files need not be ordered to cover, but will move to their places on the word *Dress*.

S. 20. *The Formation of Fours.*

In forming fours the men will move as explained in Part I., Section 44, and the supernumerary rank on the word *Fours*, will step back one pace. Both in file marching and the flank march by fours, the captain will lead the company, placing himself next to the front-rank man of the leading file or four; the covering serjeant will place himself at the head of the front rank, the lieutenant will be on the reverse flank of the second file or four from the

rear, the other supernumeraries will simply face with the company, and retain their positions.

When a company in close column takes ground to a flank by fours, the leader will place himself in front of the front-rank man of the leading four. When the captain leads, the covering serjeant will be next to him in front of the second rank. When the lieutenant leads on the proper reverse flank of the company, the covering serjeant will remain in his proper place in column.

S. 21. *Company formed in Fours closing on the Flank, or on the Centre, and re-forming Two Deep.*

A company having formed four deep will be practised in closing on the flanks and centre, and re-forming two deep, both at the halt and on march as described in Part I., Section 46. The officers will close and open out with the company.

S. 22. *The Side or Closing Step.*

A company will be practised in the side step, as it is explained in Part I., Section 33. When a company in line is ordered to close a given number of paces, the captain will remain in his place and close with the company; but if no number of paces is named, the captain, on the caution, will place himself three paces in front of the flank of his company nearest to the centre of the line, facing towards his men; should that flank be the left, he will cross by the front, and having given his word *Halt*, will return by the rear to his post. In column the captain will always remain on the flank of his company, and close with it, unless he has previously taken up fresh covering, in which case he will stand fast, and his company will close to him.

Before a company, drilling singly, is ordered to close as in line, no number of paces being named, a point will be placed to show where it is to be halted.

aries will simply face with the
ositions.

column takes ground to a flank
e himself in front of the front-
r. When the captain leads, the
rt to him in front of the second
nt leads on the proper reverse
covering serjeant will remain in

Fours closing on the Flank, or
re-forming Two Deep.

d four deep will be practised in
entre, and re-forming two deep,
march as described in Part I.,
will close and open out with the

de or Closing Step.

ctised in the side step, as it is
n 33. When a company in line
number of paces, the captain will
se with the company; but if ne
the captain, on the caution, will
in front of the flank of his
ntre of the line, facing towards
k be the left, he will cross by the
is word *Halt*, will return by the
nn the captain will always remain
ny, and close with it, unless he has
covering, in which case he will
ny will close to him.

ng singly, is ordered to close as
es being named, a point will be
to be halted.

S. 23. *Counter-marching.*—PLATE VIII., Fig. 2.

A company in column right or left in front, will be taught to counter-march as follows:—

COUNTER-MARCH BY RANKS.

1. *By Ranks.*—On the word RANKS, the covering serjeant will step up, and cover his captain.

RIGHT AND LEFT-FACE.

On the word FACE, whether right or left is in front, the front rank will face to the right, the rear rank to the left; the covering serjeant will face to the right about, the captain will take one pace outwards and face inwards, and then take one long side pace in the direction in which the covering serjeant is facing; the lieutenant will move up and place himself one pace from the reverse flank of the front rank, facing inwards.

QUICK-MARCH.

On the word MARCH, the whole will step off together, each rank wheeling close round to its right, till the pivot man of the front rank comes to the covering serjeant.

Company—Halt—Front, Dress.

On the words *Halt—Front, Dress*, from the captain, the company will halt, front and dress, the covering serjeant will drop back to his place, and the captain and lieutenant will fall in, the former looking to his covering.

COUNTER-MARCH BY FILES.

2. *By Files.*—On the word FILES, the covering serjeant will move as directed in No. 1 of this Section.

TO THE RIGHT (OR LEFT)—FACE.

On the word FACE, the company will face as ordered, the captain, lieutenant, and covering serjeant moving as directed in No. 1 of this Section.

LEFT (OR RIGHT) COUNTER-MARCH, QUICK-MARCH.

Halt-Front, Dress.

On the word MARCH, the company will step off, the leading file wheeling short round on the front-rank man, the remainder of the company following in file till it reaches the covering serjeant, when on the words *Halt-Front, Dress*, from the captain, it will halt, front, and dress in the new direction.

In both counter-marches the files must be careful to move up to the lieutenant as they wheel at the reverse flank, and to lengthen their pace during the wheel, in order not to check the rest of the company.

In both cases, the supernumerary rank will face towards the reverse flank, and will counter-march round that flank, each man marking time successively as he arrives at his place and halting and fronting with the company.

A company in line may also be counter-marched by files or ranks.

When a company is to counter-march by files, it will always be faced from the pivot flank, and will be marched up to it.

When a company is to counter-march and continue its march it may move in fours.

INCREASING AND DIMINISHING THE FRONT OF COLUMNS.

S. 24. *A Company diminishing Front by forming Sub-divisions from the Halt.*—PLATE VIII., Fig. 3.

Caution,—AS A COMPANY IN COLUMN RIGHT (OR LEFT) IN FRONT.

If right is in front, on the command FORM SUB-DIVISIONS from the instructor.

-COMPANY.

word FACE, the company will
rdered, the captain, lieutenant,
ing serjeant moving as directed
f this Section.

word MARCH, the company will
the leading file wheeling short
the front-rank man, the re-
of the company following in
t reaches the covering serjeant,
the words *Halt–Front, Dress,*
captain, it will halt, front, and
he new direction.

the files must be careful to move
wheel at the reverse flank, and
ing the wheel, in order not to
ny.

numerary rank will face towards
counter-march round that flank,
successively as he arrives at his
ing with the company.

also be counter-marched by files

counter-march by files, it will
pivot flank, and will be marched

counter-march and continue its
s.

SHING THE FRONT OF COLUMNS.

inishing Front by forming Sub-
lalt.—PLATE VIII., Fig. 3.

Y IN COLUMN RIGHT (OR LEFT)
N FRONT.

ght is in front, on the command
UB-DIVISIONS from the instructor.

FORM SUB-DIVISIONS.

the lieutenant will fall back to mark the spot where the pivot flank of the left sub-division will rest.

LEFT SUB-DIVISION, RIGHT ABOUT THREE-QUARTERS-FACE.

On the word FACE, from the instructor, the left sub-division will face as ordered, the captain will face to the right, the covering serjeant will take a side pace of 21 inches to the left and face to his right, and the rear-rank man of the left file of the right sub-division will fall back and cover the third file from the left of his sub-division, in order to leave room for the flank of the left sub-division to pass.

QUICK-MARCH.

On the words QUICK-MARCH, from the instructor, the left sub-division will march diagonally to the rear until its left file reaches the lieutenant, who will give the word *Halt—Front, Dress,* remaining steady on the left of his sub-division.

Halt—Front, Dress.

During this movement the captain and covering serjeant will move across to their places on the left of the leading sub-division, and the rear-rank man of the pivot file of that sub-division, as soon as the other sub-division has passed him, will resume his place.

If left is in front, sub-divisions will be formed in a similar manner, the right sub-division moving to the rear of the left.

The captain may occasionally have to give the words, *Left* (or *Right*) *Sub-division, Right* (or *Left*) *about three-quarters-Face,* in which case he will first face inwards.

S. 25. A Company diminishing Front by forming Sub-divisions on the March.

Caution,—AS A COMPANY IN COLUMN RIGHT (OR LEFT) IN FRONT.

FORM—SUB-DIVISIONS.

Left Sub-division Mark-Time.
Right Half-Turn.
Front-Turn.

If the company is marching as a company in column right in front, on the cautionary command from the instructor, FORM SUB-DIVISIONS, the captain will give the words, *Left Sub-division Mark-Time*, and when the reverse flank of that sub-division is clear of the other, *Right half-Turn*, on which it will make a half-turn to the right and move on at once in the diagonal direction, without the word *Forward*. The left sub-division having moved completely behind the right, the lieutenant will give the words, *Front-turn*, and place himself on its pivot flank.

During the movement, the captain and covering serjeant will move across to their places on the left of the right sub-division, and the lieutenant will move across between the sub-divisions, so as to meet the pivot flank of the left sub-division as it arrives in column.

If left is in front, sub-divisions will be formed in a similar manner, the right sub-division moving to the rear of the left.

S. 26. Sub-divisions diminishing Front by forming Sections.

The directions that apply to the formation of sub-divisions from a company, apply equally to the formation of sections from sub-divisions; if the company is halted the

hing Front by forming Sub-
s the March.

IN COLUMN RIGHT (OR LEFT)
FRONT.

ompany is marching as a com-
column right in front, on the
command from the instructor,
B-DIVISIONS, the captain will
words, *Left Sub-division Mark-*
d when the reverse flank of
division is clear of the other,
f-Turn, on which it will make
rn to the right and move on
n the diagonal direction, with-
word *Forward*. The left sub-
aving moved completely behind
, the lieutenant will give the
ont-turn, and place himself on
lank.

the movement, the captain and
serjeant will move across to their
the left of the right sub-division,
ieutenant will move across be-
sub-divisions, so as to meet the
k of the left sub-division as it
column.

isions will be formed in a similar
ion moving to the rear of the left.

shing Front by forming Sections.

y to the formation of sub-divi-
pply equally to the formation of
; if the company is halted the

drill instructor will give the words, LEFT (OR RIGHT) SECTIONS, RIGHT (OR LEFT) ABOUT THREE-QUARTERS FACE, QUICK-MARCH; but if on the march the captain will give the words, *Left* (or *Right*) *Sections, Mark-time, Right* (or *Left*) *half-Turn*, to both sections. The section leaders giving the words *Halt—Front-Dress*, or *Front-turn*. The lieutenant will move in the same manner as the captain; the ensign will take the command of the rear section, moving to his place in the same manner as the lieutenant moves when forming sub-divisions, and the senior serjeant will take command of the second section from the front.

S. 27. Sections increasing Front by forming Sub-divisions from the Halt.

FORM SUB-DIVISIONS.

A company standing in open column of sections right in front will receive from the instructor of the drill the cautionary word of command, FORM SUB-DIVISIONS, on which the covering serjeant will move out to mark the left of the leading sub-division, the lieutenant will move out to mark the left of the rear sub-division, and the leaders of the second and fourth sections will take their places in the supernumerary rank.

LEFT SECTIONS, LEFT HALF-FACE.

On the words LEFT SECTIONS, LEFT HALF-FACE, from the instructor, the captain will face to the right, the sections will face as ordered, and the rear-rank men of the pivot files of the right sections will fall back and cover the third files from the left of their sections.

On the words QUICK-MARCH, the left sections will step off in the diagonal direction, the captain moving across to

QUICK-MARCH.

Halt-Front, Dress.

the covering serjeant. As the front ranks of the left sections come up in line with the rear ranks of the right, the captain and lieutenant will give the words, *Halt-Front, Dress*, to their respective sub-divisions, and fall in at once on their pivot flanks, the covering serjeant and the rear-rank men of the pivot files of the right sections taking their places at the same time.

A company standing in open column of sections left in front, will form sub-divisions in a similar manner.

When the captain has to give the words *Left* (or *Right*) *Sections, Left* (or *Right*) *Half-face*, he will first face inwards.

S. 28. Sections increasing Front by forming Sub-divisions on the March.

FORM SUB-DIVISIONS.

Left Sections, Left Half-Turn, Double. Front-Turn, Quick.

A company marching in quick time in open column of sections right in front will receive from the instructor of the drill the cautionary word of command, FORM SUB-DIVISIONS, on which the captain will turn inwards, give the words, *Left Sections, Left Half-Turn, Double*, and then move outwards, (the lieutenant inclining outwards at the same time). As soon as the right flanks of the left sections are clear of the left flanks of the right sections, the captain and lieutenant will give the words *Front-Turn*, and when they are in line, *Quick*, falling in on the pivot flanks of their respective sub-divisions; the leaders of the second and fourth sections will take their places in the supernumerary rank on the caution.

---

ng serjeant. As the front ranks
sections come up in line with
ranks of the right, the captain
nant will give the words, *Halt-*
ess, to their respective sub-divi-
l fall in at once on their pivot
e covering serjeant and the rear-
of the pivot files of the right sec-
ng their places at the same time.
pen column of sections left in
s in a similar manner.
give the words *Left* (or *Right*)
f-face, he will first face inwards.

Front by forming Sub-divisions on
March.

mpany marching in quick time
n column of sections right in
vill receive from the instructor
drill the cautionary word of com-
FORM SUB-DIVISIONS, on which
tain will turn inwards, give the
Left Sections, Left Half-Turn,
and then move outwards, (the
nt inclining outwards at the same
As soon as the right flanks of the
tions are clear of the left flanks of
ht sections, the captain and lieu-
will give the words *Front-Turn,*
en they are in line, *Quick*, falling
he pivot flanks of their respective
isions; the leaders of the second
rth sections will take their places
upernumerary rank on the caution.

A column of sections marching in quick time left in front, will form sub-divisions in like manner.

S. 29. Sub-divisions and Sections increasing Front by forming Company.

The directions that apply to the formation of sub-divisions from sections, apply equally to the formation of a company from sub-divisions.

A company may be formed at once from sections, either on the halt or on the march. If the column is halted, on the caution the leaders of the rear sections will take their places in the supernumerary rank, and the covering serjeant will mark the pivot flank of the company; the command from the instructor will then be, REAR SECTIONS LEFT (OR RIGHT) HALF-FACE, QUICK-MARCH; the captain will move as directed in Section 27 of this Part, and will halt his sections in succession, the rear-rank men of the outer file of each uncovering as he halts to make room for the next section to move up.

If the column is on the march the leaders of the rear sections will take their places in the supernumerary rank on the caution, and all the rear sections, on the command of the captain, will move together as in forming sub-divisions; the captain moving to the pivot flank of the company and giving the word *Front turn, Quick*, to each of his sections in succession.

S. 30. Diminishing and increasing Front by breaking off Files, and bringing them again to the Front.

Files will be broken off as described in Part I., Section 47. The captain will move to the flank of the remainder of his front rank, as the files drop to the rear; the covering serjeant will move up and remain covering the captain, as

long as there is a file in rear. The instructor will give the caution, BREAK OFF — FILES, and the captain or sub-division leaders will give the executive words.

S. 31. *Diminishing and increasing Front by breaking into Fours, or Files, and re-forming Sections, Sub-divisions, or Company.*

A company or open column of sub-divisions or sections right in front, may advance from the right in files or fours, by the words TO THE RIGHT-FACE (OF FORM FOURS-RIGHT), LEFT-WHEEL, QUICK-MARCH; if the column is left in front, the fours or files will advance from the left in like manner. These movements may also be done when the column is on the march, the commands then being TO THE RIGHT (or LEFT)—TURN, LEFT (OF RIGHT)-WHEEL; OF FORM FOURS-RIGHT—LEFT-WHEEL, OF FORM FOURS-LEFT, RIGHT-WHEEL. When the leaders of companies, sub-divisions, or sections are required to give the foregoing words of command, a caution must first be given by the instructor. If standing as in close or quarter-distance column, the caution would be *Advance* (or *Retire*) *by Fours* (or *Files*) *from the Right* (or *Left*). If on the move, *Break into Fours* (or *Files*) *from the Right* (or *Left*), &c.

A company marching in files or fours will form sections, sub-divisions, or company to the front, as explained in Part I., Sections 43 and 45, the captain moving across the leading sub-division or section to his place, and the leaders of the remaining sub-divisions or sections taking their places on the word FORWARD.

SQUARES.

S. 32. *Forming Close Column of Sections and Company Square.*—PLATE IX., Figs. 1 and 2.

The following directions are intended more especially for rifle corps and troops acting as light infantry, who stand

The instructor will give the
LES, and the captain or sub-
executive words.

reasing Front by breaking into
forming Sections, Sub-divisions,

n of sub-divisions or sections
rom the right in files or fours, by
ACE (OR FORM FOURS-RIGHT),
CH; if the column is left in front,
e from the left in like manner.
be done when the column is
s then being TO THE RIGHT (or
HT)-WHEEL; OR FORM FOURS-
FORM FOURS-LEFT, RIGHT-
of companies, sub-divisions, or
e the foregoing words of com-
be given by the instructor. If
ter-distance column, the caution
re) *by Fours* (or *Files*) *from the*
ne move, *Break into Fours* (or
ft), &c.
lles or fours will form sections,
to the front, as explained in
the captain moving across the
tion to his place, and the leaders
sions or sections taking their
RD.

UARES.
umn of Sections and Company
e IX., Figs. 1 and 2.
are intended more especially for
ng as light infantry, who stand

PLATE IX.

FORM COMPANY SQUARE.

Fig. 1.

Form Close Column of Sections. Quick-March.

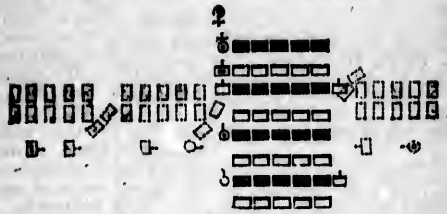
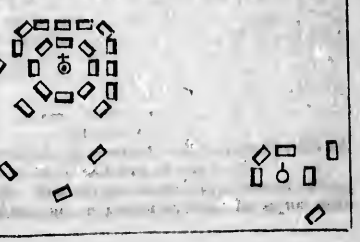


Fig. 2.

Prepare for Cavalry-Ready.

Fig. 3.

FORM RALLYING SQUARES.



with on
same in
cable t
with th
and fix
of bayo
The
SQUAR

Form
Colus
Sec

Q
M

with ordered arms and unfixed bayonets or swords. The same instructions will, however, be found equally applicable to the formation of company square by men armed with the long rifle while standing with shouldered arms and fixed bayonets, if the directions relating to the fixing of bayonets are omitted.

The instructor will give the caution—FORM COMPANY SQUARE.

Form Close Column of Sections.

On the word *Sections* from the captain, the right section will face to the left, and disengage to the front by the leading file closing two paces to the right, the front-rank man inclining rather back; the third and fourth sections will face to the right and disengage to the rear, in the same manner.

Quick-March.

On the word *March*, the second section will fix bayonets or swords, the remaining sections will step off, advancing arms or shouldering with the short rifle, and will form close column on the second section, halting, fronting, ordering arms, and fixing bayonets or swords without word of command as they arrive in column: the distance between the sections will be one pace of 21 inches; the captain will place himself on the left of the front rank of the leading section, covered by his covering serjeant; the remaining section leaders will be in their proper places in column, and the supernumeraries will be on the reverse flank of their respective sections.

The captain will next give the words *Prepare for Cavalry*, and together with

Prepare for Cavalry.	the other officers and non-commissioned officers will move into the centre of the column; the men will then face outwards, so as to show a front of equal strength in every direction, the men in the centre filling up any intervals that may occur.
Ready.	On the word *Ready*, the men will move as described in Part III., Section 29, the front rank only kneeling if the sides of the square are two or three deep, the two front ranks kneeling if they are four deep. The men will fire and load as directed in Part III., Section 9, No. 3.
Order-Arms, or *Shoulder-Arms.*	After the kneeling ranks have fired and loaded, they will order by word of command, from the capping position; when they have not been required to fire they will come to the order from the kneeling position, the standing ranks in either case if armed with the long rifle coming to the order from the shoulder at the same time. If the square is about to be moved the command to shoulder will be given, instead of to order. As soon as the men have come to the order, or shoulder, they will front into column, and the officers and non-commissioned officers will resume their posts on the flanks.
RE-FORM COMPANY. *Unfix Bayonets* (or *Swords*).	On this caution from the instructor, the captain will order the men to unfix bayonets or swords, and will then re-form the company as follows:—

officers and non-commissioned
ll move into the centre of the
he men will then face outwards,
ow a front of equal strength
irection, the men in the centre
any intervals that may occur.

word *Ready*, the men will
escribed in Part III., Section 29,
rank only kneeling if the sides
are are two or three deep, the
ranks kneeling if they are four
e men will fire and load as
Part III., Section 9, No. 3.

he kneeling ranks have fired
d, they will order by word of
from the capping position;
have not been required to fire
come to the order from the
position, the standing ranks in
e if armed with the long rifle
the order from the shoulder
ne time. If the square is about
ved the command to shoulder
ven, instead of to order.

as the men have come to the
shoulder, they will front into
nd the officers and non-commis-
cers will resume their posts on
.

e caution from the instructor,
n will order the men to unfix
or swords, and will then re-
company as follows:—

Re-form-Company. On the word *Company*, the leading section will face to the right, the third and fourth to the left.

Quick-March. On the word *March*, the sections that have faced will move out, advancing arms, or shouldering with the short rifle, the right section will turn to the rear when clear of the second section, and will halt, front, and dress upon it; the third and fourth sections will turn to the front in succession, when clear, and dress up into line with the second section, all without word of command, each section ordering arms as it halts and fronts.

If the men count the number of paces that take them into column, by taking the same number when re-forming company, they will be able to turn to the front and rear together.

S. 33. Forming Rallying Squares. PLATE IX., Fig. 3.

FORM RALLYING SQUARE. The instructor having caused the company to disperse to a certain distance, will give the word FORM RALLYING SQUARE, at the same time placing an officer as a rallying point, who will hold up his sword and face the supposed enemy; the men will hasten to the person so posted, fixing swords or bayonets and ordering arms as they reach him. The two first who join him will form on his right and left, facing outwards. The three next will place themselves in front of those posted, facing to the front, and three others in rear, facing to the rear, thus

forming a square. The instructor will cause the next four men to take post at the several angles, and three other men to come up between them on every face.

A square thus composed of twenty-four men (besides the rallying point), and formed two deep, may be augmented to a square three deep, by four more men taking post at the angles, and five others coming up between them on every side to complete the faces as before; the square will then consist of forty-eight men. It may again be augmented in the same manner to a square four deep, by the angles being occupied by four more men, and the faces filled up as before by seven more men between them on every side; and the square will then be composed of eighty men; the square may be thus increased to any number.

A company may be formed into several rallying squares on different points.

Caution,—THE SQUARE WILL ADVANCE (RETIRE, or MOVE TO THE RIGHT or LEFT).

The Square will Advance (Retire, or Move to the Right or Left). Inwards-Face, Quick-March.

When the square is required to march, the instructor will first give the above caution, which will be repeated by the officer on whom the square is formed; the latter will then give the executive words, (*Shoulder-Arms* if the men are armed with the long rifle,) *Inwards-Face*, on which the square will face in the direction named, and the leading face will be ordered by its commander to dress, that it may move with greater regularity. On the word *March*, the square will step off and march by the left of the leading face if advancing or moving to the right, by the right if retiring or moving to the left.

square. The instructor will next four men to take post at angles, and three other men to etween them on every face. f twenty-four men (besides the two deep, may be augmented r more men taking post at the ng up between them on every s before; the square will then It may again be augmented in four deep, by the angles being , and the faces filled up as between them on every side; e composed of eighty men; sed to any number.

l into several rallying squares

ILL ADVANCE (RETIRE, or RIGHT or LEFT).

e square is required to march, ctor will first give the above hich will be repeated by the whom the square is formed; will then give the executive *oulder-Arms* if the men are the long rifle,) *Inwards-Face*, the square will face in the med, and the leading face will by its commander to dress, move with greater regularity. d *March*, the square will step off by the left of the leading face if or moving to the right, by the ring or moving to the left.

THE SQUARE WILL HALT. *Halt.* *Prepare for Cavalry-Ready.* *Order Arms.*	*Preparing for Cavalry.*—On this caution from the instructor, the captain will give the word *Halt*, on which the square will halt and face outwards. The men will then proceed as directed in Section 32 of this Part.
RE-FORM COMPANY. *Unfix Swords* (or *Bayonets*).	On this caution from the instructor, the officer or officers on whom the square or squares are formed will order the men to unfix bayonets (or swords), and the covering serjeant will mark the spot on which the pivot flank of the company is to rest, facing the supposed enemy.
Re-form-Company.	On this command from the captain, the men will form company upon the covering serjeant.

In this manner dispersed parties may be formed, to resist an attack of cavalry in an open country, either in one or more squares, according as they may be more or less dispersed; each square consisting of any number of men. Every man will run to the nearest rallying point.

PROVING AND DISMISSING.

S. 34. *Proving a Company.*

After a company has been told off on parade, it will be proved with unfixed bayonets, or swords, as follows:—

Troops armed with the long rifle will shoulder before they commence proving, those armed with the short rifle will commence proving from the order.

Mark time-Quick. By Sub-divisions right-Wheel (when in echellon), *Mark Time. Re-form-Company.*

By Sub-divisions left-Wheel (when in echellon), *Mark-Time. Re-form-Company.*

By Sections right-Wheel (when in echellon), *Mark-Time Re-form-Company.*

By Sections, left-Wheel (when in echellon), *Mark-Time. Re-form-Company.*

Right about-Turn.—The company having been turned to the right about, will be wheeled, rear rank in front, by subdivisions and sections to the right and to the left, by the above words of command without alteration.

Halt-Front.
Form Fours-Deep, Front.
Form Fours-Right, Front.
Form Fours-Left, Front.
Form Fours-About, Front.

The company will also be proved, rear rank in front, in forming fours deep and fours to the right and left on the march, as follows:—

Mark Time—Quick.
Right-About—Turn.
Form Fours-Deep.
Form Two-Deep.
Form Fours-Right.
Rear-Turn.
Form Fours-Left.
Rear-Turn.
Halt-Front.

On the leading Company form Square, Quick-March. Sections —Outwards. Re-form Column, Quick-March, Halt-Dress, or according to the position it is to take in column. See Part IV., Sect. 44.

Right Sections, first and third, Order-Arms. Left Sections, second and fourth, Order-Arms; these commands apply only to troops armed with the long rifle.

Form close column of Sections, Quick-March. Unfix Bayonets or Swords. Re-form-Company, Quick-March.

when in echellon), *Mark–Time*

when in echellon), *Mark–Time.*

company having been turned to
eled, rear rank in front, by sub-
e right and to the left, by the
ithout alteration.

.

.

e proved, rear rank in front, in
irs to the right and left on the

Form Square, Quick–March. Sec-
n Column, Quick–March, Halt-
position it is to take in column.

d third, Order–Arms. Left Sec-
Order–Arms; these commands
d with the long rifle.
Sections, Quick–March. Unfix-
Form–Company, Quick–March.

Right Sub-division, Stand at–Ease. Left Sub-division Stand at–Ease.

S. 35. *Dismissing a Company.*

A company, either with or without arms, will be dismissed as described in Part I., Section 48.

In turning in a guard or piquet the same mode is to be observed.

PART III.

RIFLE EXERCISES.

General Directions.

I.

Names of Parts of the Rifle.—Recruits, before they commence to learn the Manual and Platoon exercises, must be taught the names of the different parts of the rifle, as shown in Plate X.

II.

Formation of Squad.—Soldiers will be formed in squads of single rank to learn the Manual and Platoon exercises, after which they will practise in two ranks what they have learned in one rank, as directed in Part I., Section 40.

III.

Instructor to have Rifle.—The instructor should always be provided with a rifle when at drill, in order that he may be able, practically, to show the recruit the required positions and movements.

IV.

The Rifle to be used with care.—The rifle must be carefully handled, as any rough usage might loosen the cock, rendering its direct fall on the nipple uncertain, and thereby causing the rifle to miss fire.

V.

How to carry the Rifle.—Rifles when unloaded are to be carried with the cock down on the nipple; but when loaded they are to be carried at half-cock, except by men on sentry, who are permitted to place the cock down, in order to secure the cap in its place.

III.

ERCISES.

DIRECTIONS.

..

e.—Recruits, before they com-
nd Platoon exercises, must be
fferent parts of the rifle, as

II.

iers will be formed in squads of
ual and Platoon exercises, after
o ranks what they have learned
art I., Section 40.

III.

-The instructor should always
n at drill, in order that he may
the recruit the required posi-

IV.

ure.—The rifle must be carefully
e might loosen the cock, render-
nipple uncertain, and thereby
e.

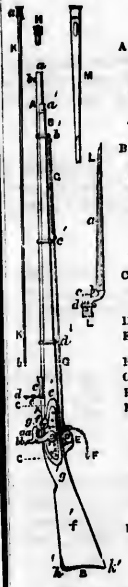
V.

-Rifles when unloaded are to be
on the nipple; but when loaded
f-cock, except by men on sentry,
the cock down, in order to secure

PLATE X.

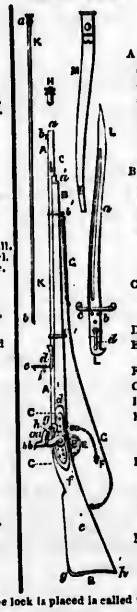
NAMES OF PARTS OF THE RIFLE.

LONG RIFLE.



A A. Barrel.
a. Muzzle.
b. Fore sight.
c. Back sight. } d. Flap. e. Slide.
f. Nipple.
g. Breech.
B B. Stock.
a'. Nose cap.
b'. Upper band.
c'. Middle band.
d'. Lower band.
e'. Projection.
f'. Butt. { f'. Small. g'. Heel. h'. Toe.
C C. Lock.
a a. Cock.
b b. Comb of cock.
D. Trigger.
E. Trigger-guard or guard.
F. Snap cap.
G G. Sling.
H. Stopper.
K K. Ramrod.
a. Head or jag.
b. Point.
L L. Bayonet.
a. Blade.
b. Bend.
c. Socket.
d. Locking ring.
M. Scabbard.

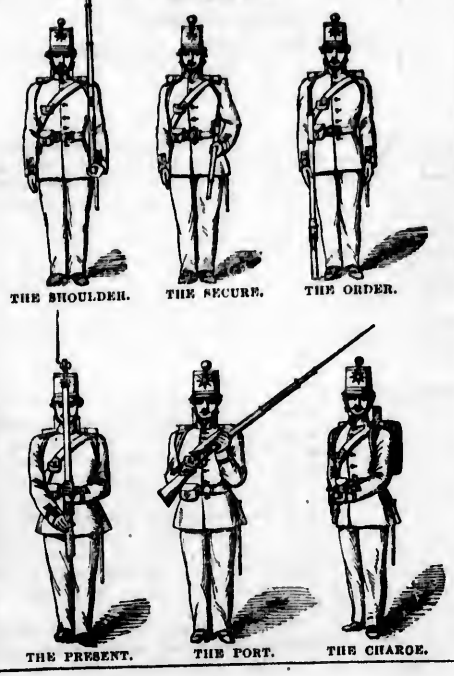
SHORT RIFLE.



A A. Barrel.
a. Muzzle.
b. Fore sight.
c. Catch.
d. Back sight. } e. Flap. f. Slide.
g. Nipple.
h. Breech.
B B. Stock.
a'. Nose cap.
b'. Upper band.
c'. Lower band.
d'. Projection.
e'. Butt. { f'. Small. g'. Heel. h'. Toe.
C C. Lock.
a a. Cock.
b b. Comb of cock.
D. Trigger.
E. Trigger-guard or guard.
F. Snap cap.
G G. Sling.
H. Stopper.
K K. Ramrod.
a. Head or jag.
b Point.
L L. Sword.
a. Blade.
b. Hilt.
c. Guard and ring.
d. Spring.
M. Scabbard.

The side of the rifle on which the lock is placed is called the lock side.

PLATE XI.



S. 1.

The S
Part I.,
hand, w
two joi
from th
slightly
the thig
shoulde
front of
Whe
Shoulde
on para

Secure

TE XI.

ECURE. THE ORDER.

E FORT. THE CHARGE.

Manual Exercises.

S. 1. *Manual Exercise with the Long Rifle, in Single Rank.*

1. *By Numbers.*

I.

The Shoulder.—The recruit will first fall in as directed in Part I., Section 24; the rifle will then be placed in his left hand, which will grasp the inside of the butt with the first two joints of the fingers, the forefinger being half an inch from the heel, the thumb in front of the heel, the wrist slightly turned out, and the fingers resting lightly against the thigh. The rifle will rest against the hollow of the left shoulder, the fore part of the butt nearly even with the front of the thigh.

When the rifle has been properly placed at "The Shoulder," the recruit will be instructed always to fall in on parade or for drill with it in that position.

II.

Secure-Arms. *The Secure.*—Turn the lock to the front, and seize the rifle with the right hand under the guard, without moving it from the shoulder; thumb and fingers round the stock, arm close to the body.

Two. Without moving the rifle from the shoulder, turn it, with the right hand, so as to bring the sling to the front, and the cock close to the body, at the same time seize it with the left hand, little finger as high as the shoulder, the left arm to be close to the rifle.

Three. With the fingers of the right hand, give the butt a cant under the left arm,

then drop the right hand to the side; the cock to be close up under the armpit, the barrel slanting downwards, and inclining to the right front; the rifle to be firmly grasped with the left hand, which is to be in front of, but rather lower than, the hip, left elbow a little to the rear.

When standing at ease with arms at "The Secure," the right hand is to grasp the rifle above the lower band, the sling or stock to rest on the left arm, and the left hand to lay hold of the right arm close above the wrist.

III.

Shoulder-Arms. *The Shoulder from the Secure.*—Raise the rifle to a perpendicular position with the left hand, bringing the sling to the front, and seize it with the right hand under the guard, the left arm to be close to the rifle, the right arm close to the body.

Two. Without moving the rifle from the shoulder, turn it, with the right hand, so as to bring the lock plate to the front; and, dropping the left hand, seize the butt as directed in "The Shoulder" (No. I.), but with the knuckles turned to the front.

Three. Bring the right hand to the side, and turn the rifle with the left hand without moving it from the shoulder, so as to bring the barrel to the front.

IV.

Order-Arms. *The Order.*—Seize the rifle with the right hand close above the lower band,

he right hand to the side; be close up under the armpit, lanting downwards, and in- e right front; the rifle to be ed with the left hand, which ont of, but rather lower than, elbow a little to the rear.

arms at "The Secure," the e above the lower band, the eft arm, and the left hand to above the wrist.

I.

lder from the Secure.—Raise a perpendicular position with nd, bringing the sling to the seize it with the right hand guard, the left arm to be close , the right arm close to the

moving the rifle from the urn it, with the right hand, so the lock plate to the front; ing the left hand, seize the butt in "The Shoulder" (No. I.), e knuckles turned to the front. he right hand to the side, and fle with the left hand without from the shoulder, so as to barrel to the front.

V.

der.—Seize the rifle with the d close above the lower band,

keeping the elbow as close to the body as possible.

Two. Bring the rifle down to the right side, allowing the little finger to slip behind the barrel as it descends, and place the butt quietly on the ground; the toe of the butt to be in a line with the toe of the right foot.

Three. Place the right hand flat on the outside of the stock, thumb on the sling, and press the rifle to the hollow of the shoulder.

V

Fix— *Fixing Bayonets.*—On the word *Fix*, by a sharp turn of the wrist bring the thumb of the right hand round the rear of the barrel, and grasp the rifle, thumb between the stock and the thigh; at the same time seize the socket of the bayonet with the left hand, knuckles to the front, thumb to the rear, fingers pointing to the ground, and elbow to the rear.

Bayonets. On the word *Bayonets*, push the muzzle of the rifle a little forward; at the same time draw the bayonet; and as soon as the point clears the scabbard turn it up, keeping the elbow down and the upper part of the arm close to the body. Place the socket of the bayonet on the muzzle (the flat part of the blade to the front), and when it falls on the block of the foresight, turn it with the thumb from left to right,

and press it home; then, with the thumb, turn the locking ring in the same direction under the block of the foresight. Lastly, drop the left hand to the side, and bring the rifle to "The Order."

VI.

Shoulder–

The Shoulder from the Order.—On the word *Shoulder*, grasp the rifle as in the first motion of "Fixing Bayonets" (No. V.).

Arms.

On the word *Arms*, give the rifle a smart jerk upwards with the right hand, and seize it below the lower band, keeping the barrel close to the shoulder.

Two.

Bring the rifle with the right hand to the left side, and seize it with the left hand as described in "The Shoulder" (No. I.), dropping the right hand at once to the side.

VII.

Present–Arms.

The Present.—Seize the rifle, as in the first motion of "The Secure" (No. II.).

Two.

Raise the rifle with the right hand perpendicularly in front of the centre of the body, and place the left hand smartly on the sling, the fingers pointing upwards, the thumb close to the forefinger (its point in a line with the mouth), the wrist on the trigger guard, the left elbow close to the butt, the right elbow and butt close to the body.

Three.

Bring the rifle down close in front of the centre of the body, sling to the front,

home; then, with the thumb,
ing ring in the same direction
ock of the foresight. Lastly,
t hand to the side, and bring
"The Order."

I.

der from the Order.—On the
der, grasp the rifle as in the
n of "Fixing Bayonets"

word *Arms*, give the rifle a
upwards with the right hand,
below the lower band, keep-
el close to the shoulder.
e rifle with the right hand to
le, and seize it with the left
scribed in "The Shoulder"
opping the right hand at once

II.

ent.—Seize the rifle, as in the
n of "The Secure" (No. II.).
e rifle with the right hand
larly in front of the centre of
nd place the left hand smartly
g, the fingers pointing up-
thumb close to the forefinger
n a line with the mouth), the
e trigger guard, the left elbow
e butt, the right elbow and
to the body.
he rifle down close in front of
of the body, sling to the front,

PLATE XII.

THE SLOPE.

UPPORT.

STAND AT EASE.

as low as the right hand will admit without constraint, and grasp it with the left hand, the little finger touching the projection above the lock plate, thumb between stock and ba[illegible]; the right hand lightly holding the small of the butt, fingers slanting downwards; at the same time place the hollow of the right foot against the left heel, both knees straight. The weight of the rifle to be supported by the left hand.

VIII.

Shoulder-Arms. *The Shoulder from the Present.*—By a turn of the right wrist, bring the rifle to the left side, and seize it with the left hand as directed in "The Shoulder" (No. I.); fingers of the right hand remaining under the cock (first two joints round the stock), thumb between the stock and barrel, arm close to the body; at the same time bring the right foot to its origin[illegible] position.

Two. Drop the right hand to the side.

IX.

Port-Arms. *The Port.*—Seize the small of the butt with the right hand, arm close to the body.

Two. Bring the rifle to a slanting position in front of the body, lock to the front, the barrel crossing opposite the point of

the left shoulder; and meet it at the same time with the left hand immediately below the lower band, thumb and fingers round the piece; the left wrist to be opposite the left breast, both elbows close to the body.

X

As a front rank, Charge-Bayonets. — *The Charge.*—Turning on the heels, point the right foot to the right, the left full to the front, and bring the rifle down to nearly a horizontal position at the right side, with the muzzle inclining a little upward; the right wrist to rest against the hollow of the thigh below the hip, the right hand to grasp the small of the butt, and the thumb and fingers of the left hand to be round the piece.

As a rear rank, Charge-Bayonets. — Remain steady at "The Port."

XI.

Shoulder-Arms. — *The Shoulder from the Charge, as a Front Rank.*—Bring the rifle up to the left side, and seize it with the left hand, as directed in "The Shoulder" (No. I.), facing at the same time to the front; the right hand remaining as described in the "Shoulder from the Present" (No. VIII.).

Two. Shoulder-Arms. — Drop the right hand to the side.

The Shoulder from the Port, as a Rear Rank.—Bring the rifle with the right hand to the left side, and seize it

ulder; and meet it at the
ith the left hand immediately
wer band, thumb and fingers
piece; the left wrist to be
e left breast, both elbows
body.

rge.—Turning on the heels,
ight foot to the right, the
he front, and bring the rifle
early a horizontal position at
de, with the muzzle inclining
ward; the right wrist to rest
hollow of the thigh below the
ht hand to grasp the small of
nd the thumb and fingers of
d to be round the piece.

teady at "The Port."

oulder from the Charge, as a
k.—Bring the rifle up to the
nd seize it with the left hand,
in "The Shoulder" (No. I.),
the same time to the front;
hand remaining as described
Shoulder from the Present"
.).
e right hand to the side.
oulder from the Port, as a
nk.—Bring the rifle with the
d to the left side, and seize it

with the left hand, as directed in "The Shoulder" (No. I.), the right hand remaining as described in the "Shoulder from the Present" (No. VIII.).

Two. Drop the right hand to the side.

XII.

Advance-Arms. *The Advance.*—Seize the rifle as in the first motion of "The Secure" (No. II.).

Two. Bring the rifle to the right side with the right hand, and seize it with the left hand close above the lower band, at the same time shift the right hand and lay hold of the rifle with it at the full extent of the arm, the thumb and forefinger round the guard, remaining fingers under the cock.

Three. Drop the left hand to the side.

XIII.

Order-Arms. *The Order from the Advance.*—Seize the rifle with the left hand (little finger in line with the point of the right shoulder), arm close to the body.

Two. Extend the fingers and thumb of the right hand, and lower the rifle with the left hand until the butt touches the ground, left arm and rifle kept close to the body.

Three. Drop the left hand to the side.

XIV.

Advance- *The Advance from the Order.*—On the word *Advance,* grasp the rifle as in the

first motion of "Fixing Bayonets" (No. V.).

Arms. On the word *Arms*, raise the rifle by a jerk of the right hand, and lay hold of it as in the second motion of "The Advance" (No. XII.).

Two. Drop the left hand to the side.

XV.

Shoulder-Arms. *The Shoulder from the Advance.*—Seize the rifle with the left hand (little finger in line with the right elbow), and raise it about one inch, without moving the barrel from the shoulder; at the same time slip the thumb of the right hand under the cock, bringing the fingers under the guard, both arms to be close to the body.

Two. By a turn of the right wrist, bring the rifle up to the left side, seizing it with the left hand as in "The Shoulder" (No. I.), the right hand remaining as described in "The Shoulder from the Present" (No. VIII.).

Three. Drop the right hand to the side.

XVI.

Support-Arms. *The Support.*—Raise the rifle about one inch, and seize the small of the butt with the right hand, fingers and thumb round the stock, arm close to the body.

n of "Fixing Bayonets"

word *Arms*, raise the rifle by a right hand, and lay hold of it second motion of "The Ad- o. XII.).

e left hand to the side.

XV.

ulder from the Advance.—Seize ith the left hand (little finger th the right elbow), and raise ne inch, without moving the n the shoulder; at the same the thumb of the right hand cock, bringing the fingers guard, both arms to be close y.

rn of the right wrist, bring the o the left side, seizing it with hand as in "The Shoulder" the right hand remaining as in "The Shoulder from the (No. VIII.).

e right hand to the side.

XVI.

upport.—Raise the rifle about , and seize the small of the h the right hand, fingers and ound the stock, arm close to

Two. Bring the left arm under the cock, fingers of the left hand extended, with the thumb close to the forefinger; the cock to rest on the arm midway between the wrist and elbow; the elbow to be kept close to the body.

Three. Drop the right hand to the side.

XVII.

Shoulder-Arms. *The Shoulder from the Support.*—Seize the small of the butt as directed in the first motion of "The Support" (No. XVI.).

Two. Drop the left hand and grasp the butt, as in "The Shoulder" (No. I.), but with the elbow a little bent.

Three. Drop the right hand smartly to the side, at the same time allowing the left arm to sink to its full extent.

XVIII.

Slope-Arms. *The Slope.*—Without moving the upper part of the arm, raise the rifle until the guard is pressed gently against the hollow of the shoulder, and the lower part of the arm becomes horizontal, the toe of the butt to be opposite the centre of the left thigh.

XIX.

Shoulder-Arms. *The Shoulder from the Slope.*—Drop the left arm to the full extent, and at the same time bring the right hand across the body, placing the fingers under the cock,

Two.	as in "The Shoulder from the Present" (No. VIII.). Drop the right hand to the side.

XX.

Order-Arms. *Two.* *Three.*	As detailed in No. IV.

The Order from the Slope.—Soldiers will also be taught to come to "The Order" from "The Slope" by combining the movements of "The Shoulder from the Slope" and "The Order Arms," as follows:—On the word *Order-Arms*, drop the left arm to the full extent, and seize the rifle with the right hand, and on the words *Two* and *Three* proceed as detailed in No. XIII.

XXI.

Unfix- *Bayonets.*	*Unfixing Bayonets.*—On the word *Unfix*, grasp the rifle, as in the first motion of "Fixing Bayonets" (No. V.). On the word *Bayonet*, push the muzzle a little forward, and lay hold of the rifle with the left hand immediately above the upper band, thumb and fingers round the stock and barrel, arm close to the body. Raise the right hand and seize the socket of the bayonet between the forefinger and thumb, fingers closed in the hand, knuckles to the front, arm close to the body. With the second joint of the forefinger of the right hand, turn the locking ring to the left, then extend the fingers under the bend, raise the bayonet, turn it to the left, and remove it from the muzzle. Drop the point of the bayonet towards the scabbard, inclining the palm of the hand to the front

Shoulder from the Present"

right hand to the side.

X.

ed in No. IV.

—Soldiers will also be taught
n "The Slope" by combining
oulder from the Slope" and
lows:—On the word *Order-*
he full extent, and seize the
on the words *Two* and *Three*

II.

XI.

Bayonets.—On the word *Unfix,*
rifle, as in the first motion
Bayonets" (No. V.).
word *Bayonet,* push the muzzle
ward, and lay hold of the rifle
ft hand immediately above the
l, thumb and fingers round the
barrel, arm close to the body.
right hand and seize the socket
yonet between the forefinger
b, fingers closed in the hand,
to the front, arm close to the
ith the second joint of the
of the right hand, turn the
ng to the left, then extend
s under the bend, raise the
urn it to the left, and remove
e muzzle. Drop the point of
et towards the scabbard, inclin-
alm of the hand to the front

as it falls, and place the little finger on the top of the socket; at the same time, force the muzzle of the rifle back to the hollow of the right shoulder with the left hand, which is immediately to be removed and placed on the top of the scabbard to guide the bayonet in, the elbow to the rear and as close to the body as possible. Lastly, drop the arms to their position at "The Order."

The foregoing motions, only, will be performed in the "Review Exercise."

XXII.

Trail-Arms. — *The Trail.*—On the word *Trail,* grasp the rifle as in the first motion of "Fixing Bayonets" (No. V.).

On the word *Arms,* give the rifle a smart jerk upwards with the right hand, seize it below the lower band, and bring it down to a horizontal position at the full extent of the arm, fingers and thumb round the piece.

XXIII.

Shoulder-Arms. — *The Shoulder from the Trail.*—By a turn of the right wrist bring the rifle to a perpendicular position, then carry it to the left shoulder, and seize it with the left hand as described in "The Shoulder" (No. I.), dropping the right hand at once to the side.

XXIV.

Trail-Arms. — *The Trail from the Shoulder.*—Seize the rifle with the right hand below the lower band, arm close to the body.

Two. Bring the rifle down with the right hand to the position described in "The Trail" (No. XXI.).

XXV.

Advance—Arms. *The Advance from the Trail.*—Bring the rifle to a perpendicular position, and seize it with the left hand close above the lower band, at the same time raising it slightly and seizing it with the right hand, as in "The Advance" (No. XII.).

Two. Drop the left hand to the side.

XXVI.

Trail—Arms. *The Trail from the Advance.*—Seize the rifle with the left hand, little finger in line with the right elbow, arm close to the body.

Two. Raise the right hand, and seize the rifle below the lower band; then bring it to the position described in "The Trail" (No. V.), at the same time dropping the left arm to the side.

XXVII.

Order—Arms. *The Order from the Trail.*—Bring the rifle to a perpendicular position at the right side, lower it gently to the ground, and come to the position described in "The Order" (No. IV.).

Arms must never be trailed with fixed bayonets, except by the front rank before charging.

Great care must be taken to preserve the squareness of the body and to avoid raising or sinking either shoulder in the foregoing exercises.

e rifle down with the right
position described in "The
. XXI.).

XV.

ance from the Trail.—Bring
a perpendicular position, and
h the left hand close above the
l, at the same time raising it
nd seizing it with the right
"The Advance" (No. XII.).
e left hand to the side.

XVI.

il from the Advance.—Seize the
the left hand, little finger in
the right elbow, arm close to

he right hand, and seize the
the lower band; then bring it
ition described in "The Trail"
at the same time dropping the
o the side.

XVII.

der from the Trail.—Bring the
perpendicular position at the
, lower it gently to the ground,
e to the position described in
der" (No. IV.).
iled with fixed bayonets, except
arging.
n to preserve the squareness of
ng or sinking either shoulder in

XXVIII.

Ground-Arms.

Ground Arms.—On the word *Ground*, turn the thumb and grasp the rifle as directed in the first motion of "The Trail" (No. V.), the wrist a little turned out.

On the word *Arms*, turn the rifle on the heel, lock to the rear, raise it off of the ground, and give the butt a cant to the rear; sink the body, bending both knees, and place the rifle flat on the ground, the lock up, muzzle inclined to the right front, cock in line with the heels; rise at once, and return to the position of attention.

XXIX.

Take up-Arms.

Sink the body as in grounding arms, take up the rifle, and come to "The Order."

Stand at-Ease.

As detailed in Part I. Section 2.

---

2. *Judging the Time.*

When the recruit has been thoroughly instructed in the manual exercise by numbers, he will be taught to judge his own time, the foregoing words of command being given without the numbers. The recruit in judging his own time must rest a pause of slow time between the motions; each motion, however, must in itself be performed smartly and quickly, except when bringing the rifle down to "The Order," which must be done gently and with great care, lest it be injured by striking on the ground. In fixing bayonets more time must be allowed.

3. *Motions of the Rifle performed on the March.*

The recruit will learn to perform the following motions of the rifle while marching; they may be taught at first while he is marking time; each motion should be done as the left foot comes to the ground, both in the slow and quick march; to this end the word of command should be completed as the right foot is coming to the ground.

When soldiers standing in line with ordered arms receive the command *Slow* (*quick* or *double*) *March*, they will come to the trail as they take the first step. When standing in file, they will come to the advance as they move off, and will return to the order as they halt and front; when marching in line or in fours with trailed arms, and ordered to turn into file, or form two deep, they will come to the advance as they turn, or form, and will trail again on turning into line or forming four deep. When ordered to mark time from the halt the same rules will apply.

Quick-March or *Mark Time-Quick.*	*From the Halt at Ordered Arms.*—On the word *Quick* (or *Mark time*) grasp the rifle as in the first motion of "Fixing Bayonets" (No. V.). On the word *March* (or *Quick*) step off and bring the rifle to the trail.
Advance-Arms.	*The Advance from the Trail.*—As on the halt.
Trail-Arms.	*The Trail from the Advance.*—As on the halt.
Shoulder-Arms.	*The Shoulder from the Trail.*—As on the halt, and when marching in quick or double time come at once to the slope without word of command, as the right hand is dropped to the side.
Trail-Arms.	*The Trail from the Slope, or Shoulder.*—Having, if at the slope, dropped the

erformed on the March.

form the following motions they may be taught at first h motion should be done as round, both in the slow and word of command should be coming to the ground.

ine with ordered arms receive *louble) March*, they will come rst step. When standing in rance as they move off, and they halt and front; when ith trailed arms, and ordered deep, they will come to the and will trail again on turning ep. When ordered to mark ules will apply.

Halt at Ordered Arms.—On *uick* (or *Mark time*) grasp the the first motion of "Fixing (No. V.). On the word *Quick*) step off and bring the trail,

ance from the Trail.—As on

il from the Advance.—As on

ulder from the Trail.—As on nd when marching in quick or e come at once to the slope ord of command, as the right pped to the side.

il from the Slope, or Shoulder. if at the slope, dropped the

left arm to the full extent, seize the rifle with the right hand as in the first motion of "The Trail from the Shoulder" (No. XXIV.), then bring it down to the trail as on the halt.

Change-

Changing Arms at the Trail.—On the word *Change*, raise the rifle to a perpendicular position at the right side.

Arms.

On the word *Arms*, carry the rifle with the right hand to the left side, pass it into the left hand and lower it to the trail, at the same time dropping the right hand to the side.

Change-Arms.

Change the rifle back to the right side in a similar manner.

Squad-Halt.

Halt and come at once to "The Order."

The Short Trail.—When men standing with ordered arms are directed to form fours, to close to the right or left, to step back, or to take any named number of paces to the front, they will merely grasp the rifle with the right hand and raise it from the ground, keeping the barrel close to the shoulder; this position is called *The Short Trail.*

Shoulder-Arms.—As already described.

When soldiers standing with shouldered arms receive the command, *Quick* (or *Double*)-*March*, or *Mark Time-Quick* (or *Double*), they will slope arms as they take the first step, except in the side step, and in stepping back. On the words *Slow-March*, they will step off, remaining at "The Shoulder." When soldiers marching in slow time with shouldered arms are ordered to break into quick time, they will slope arms as they take the first pace in that time. When soldiers marching in quick time with sloped arms are ordered to take up the slow time they will remain at the slope.

Quick-March, or Mark Time-Quick.	Step off (or commence marking time) and slope arms on the first pace.
Fix-Bayonets.	*Fixing Bayonets.*—Bring the rifle down as in trailing arms, but with the barrel slanting upwards in front of the right breast, fix bayonets as at the halt, then return at once to the shoulder and slope arms.
Shoulder-Arms.	*The Shoulder from the Slope.*—As on the halt.
Support-Arms.	*The Support.*—As on the halt.
Shoulder-Arms.	*The Shoulder from the Support.*—As on the halt.
Slope-Arms.	As on the halt.
Change-Arms.	*Changing Arms at the Slope.*—Pass the left hand up quickly and seize the small of the butt, fingers and thumb round the stock; at the same time seize the butt with the right hand, two first joints of the fingers round the stock, thumb in front of the heel; raise the rifle to a perpendicular position, carry it across the body and place it on the right shoulder, then drop the left hand to the left side.
Change-Arms.	Carry the rifle back to the left shoulder in a similar manner.

Charging.—Soldiers marching in quick time will be taught to charge as follows:—

As a Front Rank, Prepare to Charge.	Bring the rifle to the trail, without losing the square position of the body or the regularity of the step.

or commence marking time)
ms on the first pace.

ayonets.—Bring the rifle down
ng arms, but with the barrel
wards in front of the right
bayonets as at the halt, then
nce to the shoulder and slope

lder from the Slope.—As on the

ort.—As on the halt.

lder from the Support.—As on

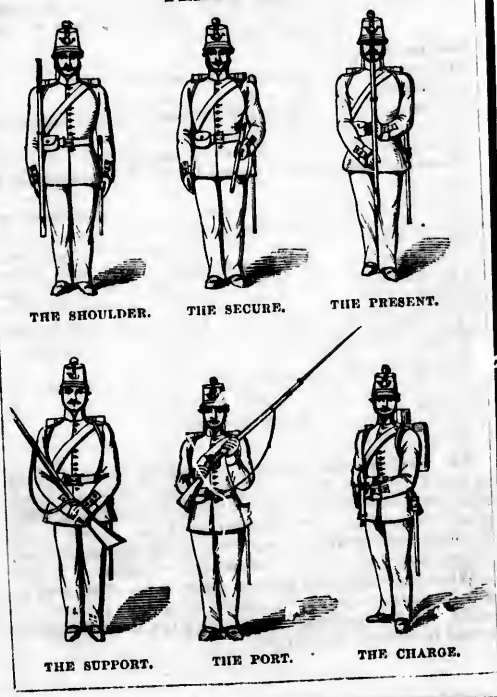
e halt.

g Arms at the Slope.—Pass the
up quickly and seize the small
t, fingers and thumb round
; at the same time seize the
the right hand, two first
the fingers round the stock,
front of the heel; raise the
perpendicular position, carry it
body and place it on the right
then drop the left hand to the

he rifle back to the left shoulder
ar manner.
ching in quick time will be
:—

the rifle to the trail, without
e square position of the body or
arity of the step.

PLATE XIII.



THE SHOULDER. THE SECURE. THE PRESENT.

THE SUPPORT. THE PORT. THE CHARGE.

MA

Char

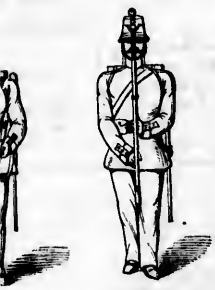
As a Rea
Prepa
Char
Char

Squad-
Soldie
to the sh
Turni
turn to
come to
having
on the fo
direction
to a perp
first pace

S. 2

The S
in Part
right ha
guard t
it, the r
of the b
When
will be
with ord
he will b

XIII.



CURE. THE PRESENT.

PORT. THE CHARGE.

Charge. — Bring the rifle to the position of charge bayonets, and increase the pace to the double march.

As a Rear Rank, Prepare to Charge. — Continue to move at the slope.

Charge. — Break into double time, still remaining at the slope.

Squad–Halt. — Halt, and come to the shoulder.

Soldiers marching with sloped arms will invariably come to the shoulder when they halt.

Turning on the March.—When a soldier is ordered to turn to the right (or left) about, with sloped arms, he will come to the shoulder on the first pace of the turn, and having completed his turn in three paces, will slope again on the fourth, the pace on which he steps off in his new direction; when with trailed arms, he will bring his rifle to a perpendicular position by a turn of the wrist on the first pace of the turn, and trail arms again on the fourth.

S. 2. The Manual Exercise with the Short Rifle, in Single Rank.

1. *By Numbers.*

I.

The Shoulder.—The recruit will first fall in as directed in Part I., Section 24: the rifle will then be placed in his right hand, at the full extent of the arm, close to the side; guard to the front, with the forefinger and thumb round it, the remaining fingers under the cock; the upper part of the barrel resting in the hollow of the shoulder.

When the recruit has learned the motions of the rifle he will be instructed always to fall in on parade, or for drill, with ordered arms; before commencing the Manual Exercise he will be ordered to shoulder.

II

Secure-Arms. — *The Secure.*—Seize the rifle with the left hand at the lower band, raising it a few inches by slightly bending the right arm, without moving the barrel from the shoulder; then slip the thumb of the right hand under the cock, and the fingers under the guard slanting downwards; both arms close to the body.

Two. — Pass the rifle with the right hand to the left side, cant the butt under the left arm to the rear, then drop the right hand to the side: the cock to be close up under the armpit, the barrel slanting downwards and inclining to the right front; the rifle to be firmly grasped with the left hand, which is to be in front of, but rather lower than, the hip; elbow a little to the rear.

When standing at ease with arms at "The Secure," the right hand is to grasp the rifle above the lower band, the sling or stock to rest on the left arm, and the left hand to lay hold of the right arm close above the wrist.

III.

Shoulder-Arms. — *The Shoulder from the Secure.*—Raise the muzzle and carry the rifle with the left hand to the right side, then seize it with the right hand, as directed in "The Shoulder" (No. I.), the left hand remaining to steady it in its place; arm close to the body.

Two. — Drop the left hand to the side.

I

re.—Seize the rifle with the
t the lower band, raising it
es by slightly bending the
without moving the barrel
oulder; then slip the thumb
hand under the cock, and the
ler the guard slanting down-
h arms close to the body.
rifle with the right hand to
le, cant the butt under the
the rear, then drop the right
e side: the cock to be close
he armpit, the barrel slanting
s and inclining to the right
e rifle to be firmly grasped
left hand, which is to be in
out rather lower than, the hip;
tle to the rear,
th arms at "The Secure," the
rifle above the lower band, the
eft arm, and the left hand to lay
above the wrist.

III.

houlder from the Secure.—Raise
zle and carry the rifle with the
to the right side, then seize it
e right hand, as directed in
oulder" (No. I.), the left hand
g to steady it in its place; arm
the body.
the left hand to the side.

IV.

Present-Arms.

Two. *The Present.*—Seize the rifle as in the first motion of "The Secure" (No. II.).

Raise the rifle with the right hand perpendicularly in front of the centre of the body, lock to the front; at the same time place the left hand smartly on the stock, fingers pointing upwards, thumb close to the forefinger (its point in line with the mouth), the wrist on the trigger guard, the left elbow close to the butt, the right elbow and butt close to the body.

Three. Bring the rifle down close in front of the centre of the body, guard to the front, as low as the right hand will admit without constraint, and grasp it with the left hand, the little finger touching the projection above the lock plate, thumb between stock and barrel, the right hand lightly holding the small of the butt, fingers slanting downwards; at the same time place the hollow of the right foot against the left heel, both knees straight. The weight of the rifle to be supported by the left hand.

V.

Shoulder-Arms. *The Shoulder from the Present.*—Bring the rifle to the right side, and seize it with the right hand, as directed in "The Shoulder" (No. I.), the left hand remaining to steady it to its place, arm close to the body; at the same time

bring the right foot to its original position.

Two. Drop the left hand to the side.

VI.

Support-Arms. *The Support.*—Bring the butt across, till the lock is in front of the centre of the body, back of the hand to the front, the barrel resting on the right arm; and place the left hand on the right.

VII.

Shoulder-Arms. *The Shoulder from the Support.*—Bring the rifle to "The Shoulder," and at the same time drop the left hand to the side.

VIII.

Order-Arms. *The Order.*—Seize the rifle with the left hand, little finger in line with the point of the right shoulder; arm close to the body.

Two. Bring the rifle down in the left hand nearly to the ground, keeping the arm and rifle close to the body; then seize it with the right hand between the bands, and place the butt quietly on the ground, dropping the left hand at the same time to the side. The right arm to be slightly bent, the thumb pressed against the thigh, fingers slanting towards the ground; toe of the butt in line with the toe of the right foot.

IX.

Fix-Swords. *Fixing Swords.*—Place the rifle with the right hand between the knees,

ght foot to its original posi-

left hand to the side.

I.

rt.—Bring the butt across, is in front of the centre of ck of the hand to the front, sting on the right arm; and hand on the right.

II.

der from the Support.—Bring "The Shoulder," and at the drop the left hand to the

VIII.

er.—Seize the rifle with the little finger in line with the e right shoulder; arm close to

e rifle down in the left hand the ground, keeping the arm close to the body; then seize he right hand between the l place the butt quietly on the dropping the left hand at the to the side. The right arm ghtly bent, the thumb pressed he thigh, fingers slanting to- ground; toe of the butt in the toe of the right foot.

IX.

Swords.—Place the rifle with t hand between the knees,

guard to the front, and seize the scabbard with the left hand, turning the handle of the sword towards the right front; then seize the handle with the right hand, knuckles downwards, and draw the sword to the front; turn the point upwards when it is well clear of the body, and seize the rifle with the left hand at the nose cap. Place the back part of the handle against the lock side of barrel, knuckles to the right, arm close to the body, and slide the spring on to the catch, and the ring on to the muzzle; lastly, seize the rifle with the right hand between the bands, drop the left hand to the side, and return to "The Order" (No. VIII.).

X.

Shoulder-Arms. — *The Shoulder from the Order.*—Give the rifle a jerk upwards with the right hand, catch it with the left hand in line with the elbow, and at the same time seize it with the right hand, as directed in "The Shoulder" (No. I.).

Two. — Drop the left hand to the side.

XI.

Port-Arms. — *The Port.*—Seize the rifle as in the first motion of "The Secure" (No. II.).

Two. — Bring the rifle to a slanting position in front of the body, lock to the front, the barrel crossing opposite the point of the left shoulder, seize it at the same time with the thumb and fingers of the right

hand round the small of the butt, the thumb and fingers of the left hand remaining round the piece; left wrist to be opposite the left breast, both elbows close to the body.

XII.

As a Front Rank, Charge-Swords. — *The Charge.*—Turning on the heels, point the right foot to the right, the left full to the front, and bring down the rifle to nearly a horizontal position at the right side, with the muzzle inclining a little upwards; the right wrist to rest against the hollow of the thigh below the hip, the right hand to grasp the small of the butt, the thumb and fingers of the left hand to be round the piece.

As a Rear Rank, Charge-Swords. — Remain steady at "The Port."

XIII.

Shoulder-Arms. — *The Shoulder from the Charge as a Front Rank.*—Raise the rifle to a perpendicular position at the right side, and seize it with the right hand as directed in "The Shoulder" (No. I.); at the same time face to the front, the left hand remaining as described in "The Shoulder from the Secure" (No. III.).

Two. Shoulder-Arms. — Drop the left hand to the side.

The Shoulder from the Port as a Rear Rank.—Bring the rifle with the left hand to the right side, seize it with the right hand, as directed in "The Shoulder" (No. I.), the left hand remaining as

nd the small of the butt, the
d fingers of the left hand
round the piece; left wrist
osite the left breast, both elbows
e body.

XII.

harge.—Turning on the heels,
right foot to the right, the
o the front, and bring down
o nearly a horizontal position
ght side, with the muzzle in-
little upwards; the right wrist
gainst the hollow of the thigh
hip, the right hand to grasp the
he butt, the thumb and fingers
hand to be round the piece.

steady at "The Port."

XIII.

houlder from the Charge as a
nk.—Raise the rifle to a per-
r position at the right side, and
ith the right hand as directed
Shoulder" (No. I.); at the same
to the front, the left hand
as described in "The Shoulder
Secure" (No. III.).
he left hand to the side.
oulder from the Port as a Rear
Bring the rifle with the left
he right side, seize it with the
nd, as directed in "The Shoul-
. I.), the left hand remaining as

PLATE XIV.

THE SLOPE.

THE TRAIL.

THE SLING.

THE ORDER.

STAND AT EASE.

E XIV.

THE TRAIL.

ORDER. STAND AT EASE.

described in "The Shoulder from the Secure" (No. III.).

Two. Drop the left hand to the side.

XIV.

Slope-Arms. *The Slope.*—Seize the rifle as in the first motion of "The Secure" (No. II.).

Two. Bring the rifle on to the left shoulder, and seize it with the left hand, the first two joints of the fingers grasping the inside of the butt, the forefinger half-an-inch from the heel, the thumb in front of the heel, the muzzle slanting to the rear, and the guard pressed gently against the hollow of the shoulder. The upper part of the left arm to be close to the side, the lower part of the arm to be horizontal, the toe of the butt opposite the centre of the left thigh; the right hand holding the small of the butt, thumb and fingers round the stock, arm close in to the body.

Three. Drop the right hand to the side.

XV.

Shoulder-Arms. *The Shoulder from the Slope.*—Seize the small of the butt with the right hand, fingers and thumb round the stock, arm close in to the body.

Two. Bring the rifle to the right side, and seize it as directed in "The Shoulder" (No. I.); the left hand to seize the rifle close above the lower band to steady it to the shoulder.

Three. Drop the left hand to the side.

XVI.

Order-Arms. Two. } As detailed in No. VIII.

XVII.

Unfix-Swords. { *Unfixing Swords.*—Bring the rifle with the right hand between the knees, guard to the front. Place the left hand on the guard of the sword, knuckles to the front, and seize the handle with the right hand, knuckles to the front, fingers pointing downwards, forefinger on the spring. Tighten the knees on the rifle, press the spring, and gently raise the sword upwards; when clear of the muzzle drop the point, with the edge to the front, towards the scabbard, raising the right elbow as it falls; at the same time seize the scabbard with the left hand and guide the sword into it. Lastly, seize the rifle with the right hand, and come to "The Order," taking the time from the right.

The foregoing motions, only, will be performed in the "Review Exercise."

XVIII.

Trail-Arms. { *The Trail.*—Give the rifle a jerk upwards with the right hand, seize it close behind the back sight, and bring it to a horizontal position at the full extent of the arm, fingers and thumb round the piece.

VI.

ed in No. VIII.

VII.

Swords.—Bring the rifle ight hand between the knees, he front. Place the left hand ard of the sword, knuckles to and seize the handle with the d, knuckles to the front, inting downwards, forefinger ring. Tighten the knees on press the spring, and gently sword upwards; when clear zzle drop the point, with the e front, towards the scabbard, e right elbow as it falls; at the seize the scabbard with the and guide the sword into it. ize the rifle with the right come to "The Order," taking om the right.

nly, will be performed in the

VIII.

il.—Give the rifle a jerk up- the right hand, seize it close back sight, and bring it to a position at the full extent , fingers and thumb round the

XIX.

Shoulder-Arms. — *The Shoulder from the Trail.*—Bring the rifle to a perpendicular position, and seize it with the left hand close above the lower band, at the same time raising it slightly, and seizing it as directed in "The Shoulder" (No. I.).

Two. — Drop the left hand to the side.

XX.

Trail-Arms. — *The Trail from the Shoulder.*—Seize the rifle with the left hand, little finger in line with the right elbow, arm close to the body.

Two. — Seize the rifle with the right hand below the lower band, then bring it down to "The Trail," at the same time dropping the left hand to the side.

XXI.

Order-Arms. — *The Order from the Trail.*—Bring the rifle to a perpendicular position at the right side, lower it gently to the ground, and come to "The Order."

Arms must never be trailed with fixed swords, except by the front rank before charging.

XXII.

Shoulder-Arms. — As detailed in No. X.

XXIII.

Sling-Arms. — *The Sling.*—Seize the rifle as in the first motion of "The Secure" (No. II.).

Two.

Three.

Bring the rifle across the body, turning the barrel to the front, so that the sling may pass over the left shoulder; then seize the sling with the right hand close over the left shoulder. Bring the rifle down under the left arm, left hand close to the upper band, and resting against the thigh, forefinger slanting downwards, between the stock and barrel; at the same time drop the right hand to the side.

XXIV.

Shoulder-Arms.

The Shoulder from the Sling.—Raise the muzzle and bring the rifle to the right side with the left hand, seizing it with the right hand at "The Shoulder."

Two.

Drop the left hand to the side.

XXV.

Order-Arms. As detailed in No. VIII.

Great care must be taken to preser the squareness of the body and to avoid raising or si ng the shoulder in the foregoing exercises.

XXVI.

Ground-Arms.

Ground Arms.—Turn the rifle on the heel, lock to the rear, sink the body, bending both knees; and place the rifle flat on the ground, the lock up, muzzle inclining to the right front, cock in line with the heels; rise at once, and return to the position of attention.

rifle across the body, turn-
rel to the front, so that the
ass over the left shoulder;
he sling with the right hand
he left shoulder. Bring the
nder the left arm, left hand
pper band, and resting against
orefinger slanting downwards,
e stock and barrel; at the
drop the right hand to the

IV.

lder from the Sling.—Raise
and bring the rifle to the
ith the left hand, seizing it
ht hand at "The Shoulder."
left hand to the side.

XV.

ed in No. VIII.
o preser the squareness of
g or si ng the shoulder in

XVI.

Arms.—Turn the rifle on the
to the rear, sink the body,
th knees; and place the rifle
ground, the lock up, muzzle
o the right front, cock in line
eels; rise at once, and return
ion of attention.

XXVII.

Take-up-Arms. { Sink the body as in grounding arms, take up the rifle, and come to "The Order."

XXVIII.

Stand at-Ease. { Push the muzzle of the rifle to the front with the right hand, arm close to the side; at the same time carry back the right foot as described in Part I., Section 2.

2. *Judging the Time.*

As described in No. 2 of the preceding Section.

3. *Motions of the Rifle performed on the March.*

The recruit will learn to perform the following motions of the rifle while marching; they may be taught at first while he is marking time; each motion to be done on the left foot, as described in No. 3 of the preceding Section.

When soldiers armed with the short rifle standing with shouldered arms and unfixed swords receive the command *quick*, or *double, march*, they will trail as they take the first step, except in the side step, in stepping back, and when in files, in either of which cases they will remain at the shoulder. When soldiers marching in line or to a flank in fours with trailed arms turn into file, or form two deep, they will come to the shoulder as they turn or form; when they turn from file into line, or form fours, they will trail; when they halt and front from file they will order.

When soldiers standing with shouldered arms and fixed swords receive the command *quick march*, they will step off, remaining at the shoulder; when the word is *double march* they will come to the slope.

When soldiers standing with ordered arms and unfixed swords receive the command *slow* (*quick* or *double*) *march*, they will come to the trail as they take the first step, unless they are in files, in which case they will come to the shoulder; when soldiers standing with ordered arms and fixed swords receive the command *quick-march*, they will come to the shoulder.

The above rules will equally apply when the soldier is ordered to mark time from the halt.

Quick-March or *Mark Time-Quick.*	*From the Halt with ordered Arms.*—Step off (or commence marking time), bringing the rifle to the trail as the first step is taken.
Shoulder-Arms.	*The Shoulder from the Trail.*—As on the halt.
Trail-Arms.	*The Trail from the Shoulder.*—As on the halt.
Change-Arms.	*Changing Arms at the Trail.*—Raise the rifle to a perpendicular position at the right side; carry it to the left side, and pass it into the left hand, then lower it to the trail, at the same time dropping the right hand to the side.
Change-Arms.	Change the rifle back to the right side in a similar manner.
Squad-Halt.	Halt and come at once to "The Order."

The Short Trail.—When men standing with ordered arms are directed to form fours, to close to the right or left, to step back, or to take any named number of paces to the front, they will merely raise the rifle from the ground, keeping the barrel close to the shoulder; this position is called "*The short trail.*"

with ordered arms and unfixed
d *slow* (*quick* or *double*) *march*,
s they take the first step, unless
n case they will come to the
anding with ordered arms and
ommand *quick-march*, they will

ually apply when the soldier is
the halt.

the Halt with ordered Arms.—
(or commence marking time),
the rifle to the trail as the
is taken.

houlder from the Trail.—As on

rail from the Shoulder.—As on

ing Arms at the Trail.—Raise
to a perpendicular position at
t side; carry it to the left side,
s it into the left hand, then
to the trail, at the same time
g the right hand to the side.

ge the rifle back to the right side
ilar manner.

d come at once to "The Order."

men standing with ordered arms
to close to the right or left, to step
ed number of paces to the front,
rifle from the ground, keeping
ulder; this position is called "*The*

Charging.—Soldiers will be taught to charge as follows:

Fix-Swords.	As already taught.
Shoulder-Arms.	As already taught.
Quick-March.	Step off at the shoulder.
As a Front Rank, Prepare to Charge.	Bring the rifle down to the trail without losing the square position of the body or the regularity of the step.
Charge.	Bring the rifle to the position of "The Charge," No. XII., and increase the pace to the double march.
As a Rear Rank, Prepare to Charge.	Bring the rifle to the slope as on the halt.
Charge.	Break into the double march, continuing at the slope.
Squad-Halt.	Halt and shoulder arms, both as a front and rear rank.

Fixing Swords on the March.—When soldiers armed with the short rifle are required to fix swords while marching with trailed arms, they will change the rifle into the left hand, then draw the sword with the right hand, bringing it out of the scabbard between the left arm and the body, inclining the barrel of the rifle upwards, muzzle opposite the left breast, and fix the sword as on the halt; this done, they will carry the rifle with the left hand to the right side, seize it at "The shoulder," and drop the left hand to the side, continuing to move on with shouldered arms.

Turning on the March.—When a soldier is ordered to turn to the right (or left) about, with trailed arms, he will bring his rifle to a perpendicular position by a turn of the wrist on the first pace of the turn, and trail arms again on the fourth.

S. 3. The Manual Exercise for the Long and Short Rifle in Two Ranks, and Piling Arms.

1. *Manual Exercise in Two Ranks.*—When recruits have been taught all the motions of the manual exercise, either singly or in squads in single rank, they will be practised in squads of two ranks.

2. *Movements performed at Open and Close Order.*—The manual exercise is performed with the ranks at open order; all the motions except "The Secure" can, however, be performed in close order. Before troops formed in line are required to salute by presenting arms, the rear rank will be ordered to take open order; but when they salute in quarter distance column, they will present in close order.

3. *Distance between Ranks with trailed Arms.*—For the instructions on this head, *see* Part I., Section 38.

4. *Motions of both Ranks the same.*—The motions of the rifle in the manual exercise are performed in the same manner by both ranks, excepting in "The Charge."

5. *Piling Arms.*—In addition to the motions of the rifle taught in single rank, the squad in two ranks will be taught to pile arms as follows; ranks standing at close order.

Pile—	On the word *Pile*, the rear rank will take a pace of nine inches to the rear, and the front-rank men will draw back the right foot ready to face to the right about.
Arms.	On the word *Arms*, the front rank will face about, bringing their rifles with them

r the Long and Short Rifle in
d Piling Arms.

wo Ranks.—When recruits
ions of the manual exercise,
n single rank, they will be
ks.

Open and Close Order.—The
d with the ranks at open
"The Secure" can, however,
. Before troops formed in
y presenting arms, the rear
ake open order; but when
column, they will present in

with trailed Arms.—For the
Part I., Section 38.

the same.—The motions of
se are performed in the same
ing in "The Charge."

n to the motions of the rifle
squad in two ranks will be
vs; ranks standing at close

word *Pile*, the rear rank will
of nine inches to the rear, and
ank men will draw back the
ready to face to the right

ord *Arms*, the front rank will
bringing their rifles with them

at the short trail; the whole will then place the butts of their rifles between their feet, locks from them; after which the right file rear rank and the left file front rank will incline their rifles towards each other, and cross ramrods. This done, the front-rank man of the right file will seize the rifle of the front-rank man of his left file by the muzzle, bearing it from him, and with his *right* hand lock ramrods by passing his own by the left of the ramrods and to the right of the muzzles of the other rifles; lastly, the left file rear rank will lodge his rifle between the muzzles of the rifles of the front rank, sling uppermost. When there is an odd file each man of the file will lodge his rifle against the pile nearest his right hand.

Stand-clear. Ranks take a pace of nine inches backwards and face towards the pivot flank.

Stand-to. Ranks facing towards the pivot flank will face inwards, and close on their arms by taking a pace of nine inches forward.

Unpile- On the word *Unpile*, seize the rifle with the right hand under the top band, the front-rank men at the same time drawing back their right feet in order to face to the right about.

Arms. On the word *Arms*, unlock the ramrods without hurry, by inclining the butts inwards, and come to "The Order." The front rank will then *front*, and the rear rank close on it by taking a pace of nine inches forward.

It is necessary to be careful in piling and unpiling arms to prevent damage being done to the ramrods and sights.

S. 4. *The Platoon Exercise, for the Long and Short Rifle.*

The recruit, having acquired a thorough knowledge of the several motions of the rifle as detailed in the MANUAL EXERCISE, will next be taught the PLATOON EXERCISE. For this purpose the squad will be formed in single rank, with knapsacks on.

The recruit will be instructed in the platoon exercise,

1stly. As a front rank.
2ndly. As a rear rank.

After which he will be taught to fire and re-load kneeling,

1stly. As a front rank.
2ndly. As a rear rank.

Each of these exercises will be taught,

1stly. By numbers.
2ndly. In slow time.
3rdly. In quick time.

The motions of the long and of the short rifle in the platoon exercise being, with few exceptions, alike, it has only been considered necessary to describe separately the parts where any difference exists.

1. *Platoon Exercise, by Numbers.*

The Platoon Exercise, both with the long and short rifle, will be commenced from "The Shoulder."

Caution,—*Platoon Exercise by Numbers as a Front* (or *Rear*) *Rank.*

Prepare to—Load. { *With the Long Rifle.*—Seize the rifle with the right hand as in the first

eful in piling and unpiling
g done to the ramrods and

---

e, for the Long and Short
e.
a thorough knowledge of the
as detailed in the MANUAL
nt the PLATOON EXERCISE.
ill be formed in single rank,

d in the platoon exercise,

taught to fire and re-load

be taught,

nd of the short rifle in the
few exceptions, alike, it has
ry to describe separately the
ts.

ise, by Numbers.
with the long and short rifle,
e Shoulder."
e by Numbers as a Front (or

Long Rifle.—Seize the rifle
ight hand as in the first

PLATE XV.

AS A FRONT RANK, PREPARE TO LOAD.

AS A REAR RANK, ROD.

AS A FRONT RANK STANDING, READY.

AS A REAR RANK STANDING, PRESENT (1st Motion).

Tw

Prepa
Lo

motion of "The Order," turning on the heels, point the right foot to the right, the left full to the front; eyes to look to the front.

Two.

As a front rank, carry the left foot 10 inches to the left front, (viz., 6 to the front and 8 to the left,) moving the body with it, toes pointing to the front:

As a rear rank, carry the left foot six inches to the front, moving the body with it, toes pointing to the front:

at the same time square the shoulders to the front from the hip, bring the rifle down perpendicularly in the right hand opposite the left breast, to the full extent of the arm, and seizing it with the left hand at the nose cap, (thumb and fingers round the stock and barrel,) place the butt without noise on the ground, close against the inside of the left foot, with the heel of it in a line with the ball of the big toe, the barrel to the front and perpendicular, keeping the left arm close to the side; carry the right hand at once to the pouch (elbow to the rear), and take up a cartridge, which will be held with the forefinger and thumb close to the top, the bullet resting in the palm of the hand.

Prepare to-Load.

With the Short Rifle.—Seize the rifle with the left hand, as in the first motion of "The Order;" at the same time turn-

ing on the heels, point the right foot to the right, the left full to the front; eyes to look to the front.

Two.

As a front rank, carry the left foot 10 inches to the left front, (viz., 6 to the front and 8 to the left,) moving the body with it, toes pointing to the front:

As a rear rank, carry the left foot six inches to the front, moving the body with it, toes pointing to the front:

at the same time square the shoulders to the front from the hip, bring the rifle down in the left hand, and place the butt without noise on the ground close against the inside of the left foot, with the heel of it in a line with the ball of the big toe, the barrel to the front and perpendicular; then slip the left hand smartly to the nose cap, thumb and fingers round the piece, left arm close to the side; carry the right hand at once to the pouch (elbow to the rear), and take up a cartridge, which will be held with the forefinger and thumb close to the top, the bullet resting in the palm of the hand.

When the feet are at right angles, as above detailed, care must be taken not to increase the angle by turning the right toes to the rear, which would tend to alter the proper position of the right shoulder in loading and firing.

Load.

Bring the cartridge to the forefinger and thumb of the left hand, and, with the

e heels, point the right foot to the left full to the front; eyes the front.

ront rank, left foot to the left ., 6 to the 8 to the oving the h it, toes to the

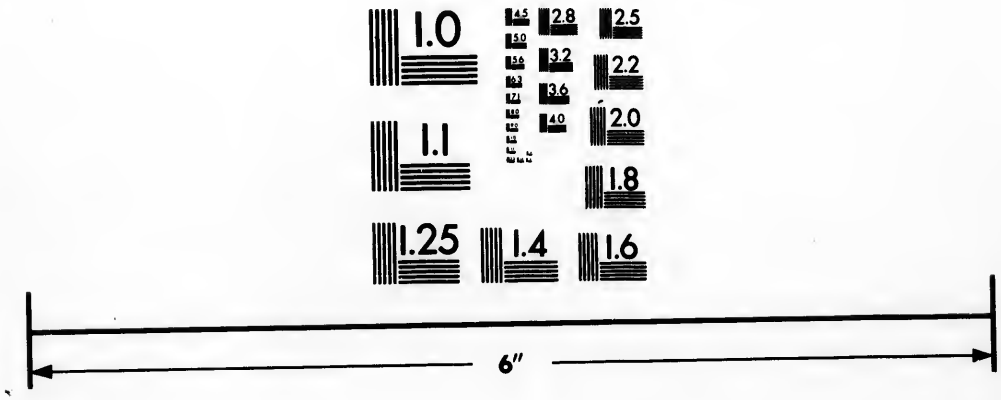
As a rear rank, carry the left foot six inches to the front, moving the body with it, toes pointing to the front:

me time square the shoulders to t from the hip, bring the rifle the left hand, and place the hout noise on the ground close the inside of the left foot, with of it in a line with the ball of toe, the barrel to the front and cular; then slip the left hand to the nose cap, thumb and round the piece, left arm close de; carry the right hand at once pouch (elbow to the rear), and a cartridge, which will be held e forefinger and thumb close to the bullet resting in the palm of d.

ght angles, as above detailed, care crease the angle by turning the h would tend to alter the proper der in loading and firing.

the cartridge to the forefinger mb of the left hand, and, with the

IMAGE EVALUATION
TEST TARGET (MT-3)



Photographic Sciences Corporation

23 WEST MAIN STREET
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580
(716) 872-4503

arm close in to the body, tear off the end of it with care, so as not to lose any of the powder; any motion which may be necessary should be from the wrist only.

Two. Bring the cartridge to the muzzle of the rifle, and pour the powder into the barrel, inclining the palm of the hand to the front, and bringing the right elbow square with the wrist in so doing.

Three. Reverse the cartridge by dropping the hand over the muzzle, bringing the fingers round the barrel, and the knuckles to the front, and put the bullet nearly its whole length into the barrel, holding the paper above the point of the bullet between the forefinger and thumb, still keeping the right elbow square with the wrist.

Four. By a turn of the wrist from left to right, pressing the little finger against the barrel, and dropping the right elbow to the side, tear off the paper which is held between the forefinger and thumb; —when this motion is completed, the little finger must rest against the side of the barrel, the knuckles inclined towards the ground.

Five. Seize the head of the ramrod between the second joint of the forefinger and thumb, knuckles towards the body.

Rod. Force the ramrod up, and seize it in the middle between the first two fingers and thumb of the right hand, the forefinger to be in a line with the muzzle of the rifle, the knuckles towards the body,

the remaining fingers closed in the hand, the elbow square with the wrist; the thumb of left hand to point to the muzzle.

Two. Draw the ramrod entirely out by straightening the arm, turn it, dropping the head to the front, so that the point will pass close by the side of the left ear, and place it on the top of the bullet; the ramrod to be perpendicular and held in the middle between the first two fingers and thumb, the remaining fingers closed in the palm of the hand, the knuckles full to the front, the arm to be kept as close to the ramrod as possible without constraint, and without altering the squareness of the shoulders.

Home. Force the bullet straight down the barrel until the second finger touches the muzzle of the rifle, at the same time bringing the elbow down close to the body, and inclining the knuckles to the right.

Two. Move the right hand smartly to the point of the ramrod and seize it again there, as in the second motion of "Rod."

Three. Force the bullet steadily straight down to the bottom, at the same time bringing the elbow down close in to the body, and inclining the knuckles to the right.

Four. By two steady and firm pressures (raising the ramrod about one inch on each occasion) ascertain that the bullet is resting on the powder; all strokes which may indent the point of the bullet to be avoided.

ping fingers closed in the hand,
v square with the wrist; the
f left hand to point to the

the ramrod entirely out by
ning the arm, turn it, dropping
to the front, so that the point
close by the side of the left ear,
it on the top of the bullet; the
o be perpendicular and held in
ile between the first two fingers
nb, the remaining fingers closed
alm of the hand, the knuckles
he front, the arm to be kept as
the ramrod as possible without
t, and without altering the
ss of the shoulders.

the bullet straight down the
rtil the second finger touches
zle of the rifle, at the same time
the elbow down close to the
nd inclining the knuckles to the

the right hand smartly to the
f the ramrod and seize it again
in the second motion of "Rod."
the bullet steadily straight down
ottom, at the same time bringing
w down close in to the body, and
g the knuckles to the right.
wo steady and firm pressures
the ramrod about one inch on
casion) ascertain that the bullet
ng on the powder; all strokes
nay indent the point of the bullet
voided.

Return. Draw the ramrod halfway out of the barrel, and seize it in the middle, as in the first motion of "Rod."

Two. Draw the ramrod entirely out and turn it over as in the second motion of "Rod," and put it into its place at once, pressing it towards the body in so doing, to prevent the point catching the band or otherwise doing injury to the stock; move up the right hand smartly, and place the second joint of the forefinger (the remaining fingers to be closed in the hand) on the head of the ramrod and force it home; then seize it between the second joint of the forefinger and thumb, and dropping the left hand, at the same instant, to its full extent, seize the rifle; the arm to be close in to the body.

In performing the motions of "*Rod*" and "*Return*," care must be taken that the ramrod rubs as little as possible against the sides of the barrel or muzzle, that the shoulders are preserved square to the front, and that the body is kept perfectly steady.

Cap. Let the shoulders resume the half-face; bring the rifle to a horizontal position at the right side with the left hand, which is to grasp it firmly, little finger touching the projection in front of the lock-plate, the thumb between stock and barrel, the left arm close to the body as a support; at the same time meet the small of the butt with the right hand, elbow to the rear, hold it lightly with the fingers behind the trigger guard and half cock the rifle, the thumb to remain on the cock. *As a front rank*

the small of the butt to be pressed against the hip, *as a rear rank* four inches above it.

Two. Advance the fingers to the nipple, and with the forefinger throw off the old cap.

Three. Carry the hand to the cap pocket, and take up a cap between the forefinger and thumb, the remaining fingers to be closed in the hand, elbow to the rear.

Four. Put the cap upon the nipple, looking down while placing it, and then raising the eyes to the front.

Five. Press the cap home with the flat part of the thumb, with the fingers closed in the hand and against the lock-plate.

Six. Bring the hand to the small of the butt, and hold it lightly, with the fingers *behind the trigger guard*, thumb pointing to the muzzle.

At — yards. *Ready.* Having, if necessary, adjusted the sight and brought the right hand back to the small of the butt, full cock the rifle, holding it lightly, with the fingers behind the trigger guard, thumb pointing to the muzzle, and fix the eye steadfastly on some object in front.

The back-sight will be adjusted as follows:—Carry the right hand to the sight, and with the forefinger and thumb adjust the slide, placing the top even with the line, or to the place on the flanges which indicates the distance required; then, if the distance is indicated by one of the lines, raise the flap carefully, preventing it from springing up with a jerk, this done bring the hand back to the small of the butt.

Present. Without moving the left hand from its grasp of the stock, or stooping or

of the butt to be pressed
hip, *as a rear rank* four
e it.
the fingers to the nipple, and
efinger throw off the old cap.
hand to the cap pocket, and
ap between the forefinger and
remaining fingers to be closed
, elbow to the rear.
cap upon the nipple, looking
placing it, and then raising
the front.
e cap home with the flat part
mb, with the fingers closed in
nd against the lock-plate.
e hand to the small of the
old it lightly, with the fingers
rigger guard, thumb pointing
zle.
if necessary, adjusted the eight
it the right hand back to the
s butt, full cock the rifle, hold-
ly, with the fingers behind the
ard, thumb pointing to the
nd fix the eye steadfastly on
t in front.
justed as follows:—Carry the
with the forefinger and thumb
top even with the line, or to
ich indicates the distance re-
e is indicated by one of the
, preventing it from springing
ng the hand back to the small

t moving the left hand from
of the stock, or stooping or

raising the heels off the ground, bring the rifle to the shoulder, carrying it to the front (so as to clear the body) as it ascends: press the centre of the butt firmly to the shoulder with the left hand, bringing the elbow well under the rifle as a support, and raising the right elbow nearly square with, and bringing it well to the front of, the right shoulder, so as to form a bed for the butt, the right hand to hold lightly the small, with the thumb pointing to the muzzle, which is to be a few inches below the object the right eye is fixed upon; the forefinger to be along the outside of the trigger guard, and the left eye closed. The arm of the front-rank man is not to be raised too high, as he would thereby prevent his rear-rank man taking aim.

Two.

Three. Place the forefinger round the trigger like a hook, that part of it between the first and second joint to rest flat on the trigger, and restrain the breathing.

Four. Raise the muzzle steadily until the top of the fore-sight is brought in a line with the object through the bottom of the notch of the back-sight.

Five. Press the trigger, without the least jerk or motion of the hand, eye, or arm, until the cock falls upon the nipple, keeping the eye still firmly fixed upon the object.

Bring the rifle to the capping position, and having, if the flap has been raised, shut it down without moving the sliding bar, seize the rifle with the right hand close in front of the left, fore-arm close to the

barrel; after a pause of slow time, taking the time from the right, bring the rifle with the right hand to a perpendicular position opposite the right breast, turning the barrel to the front; then seize it with the left hand at the nose cap, and come to the position of "Prepare to load," 2nd motion.

Load. As before detailed, by numbers, and so continue exercising until the recruit has attained such a knowledge of the various motions as to be capable of combining them in regular order.

As the first position of the "Present" will not be learned without practice and much care, the instructor will frequently give the command "*as you were*," on which the recruit will bring down the rifle to the right side, without moving any part of his body but the arms, his eye still being kept on the object aimed at; the instructor will then point out the defects observed. By this means the recruit will soon be accustomed to get into the position readily, and will acquire a full command of his rifle with the left hand.

When giving the command *Ready* some distance must always be named; should, however, the distance be omitted, the soldier must judge for himself the distance he is from the object he is going to aim at, and adjust his sight accordingly.

Too much pains cannot be taken to insure that the soldier takes a deliberate aim at some object whenever he brings the rifle to the "Present;" for this purpose, small bull's eyes are to be marked on the barrack wall for the men to aim at.

Particular attention is to be given to the following points in the "Present." The body is to be firm and upright, the

r a pause of slow time, taking
om the right, bring the rifle
ght hand to a perpendicular
posite the right breast, turn-
el to the front; then seize it
ft hand at the nose cap, and
he position of "Prepare to
motion.

e detailed, by numbers, and so
xercising until the recruit has
ch a knowledge of the various
to be capable of combining
ular order.

"Present" will not be learned
care, the instructor will fre-
"*as you were*," on which the
rifle to the right side, without
ly but the arms, his eye still
ed at; the instructor will then
d. By this means the recruit
get into the position readily,
mand of his rifle with the left

d *Ready* some distance must
wever, the distance be omitted,
mself the distance he is from
aim at, and adjust his sight

be taken to insure that the
m at some object whenever he
ent;" for this purpose, small
ed on the barrack wall for the

e given to the following points
y is to be firm and upright, the

butt to be pressed firmly into the hollow of the shoulder, so as to avoid the kick which will otherwise take place from the recoil on the explosion of the powder; the rifle to rest solidly in the palm of the left hand, and to be firmly grasped, but without rigidity of muscle, the sight to be upright; in aiming, the muzzle to be steadily raised until the top of the fore-sight is aligned upon the object on which the right eye is fixed, through the bottom of the notch of the back-sight, the left eye being closed and the breathing restrained. In delivering the fire, the trigger is to be moved by pressure alone, without any motion of the hand, eye, or elbow; the right eye to continue fixed on the object after snapping, to ascertain if the aim has been deranged by the movement of trigger or body.

The position of the head with reference to the butt when taking aim depends entirely on the elevation used. With small elevation the butt must be brought to the head by raising the shoulder, or the cheek must be so placed on the butt by stooping the head a little forward, (not sideways,) as to get the eye fixed on the object through the bottom of the back-sight; as the distances increase, the head must be raised or the shoulder lowered.

2. *Platoon Exercise in Slow Time.*

The recruit having been thoroughly instructed in the platoon exercise by numbers, will next be taught to perform it in slow time, the following words only being given without the numbers:—*Platoon Exercise in Slow Time. As a Front* (or *Rear*) *Rank, Prepare to Load. Load. Rod. Home. Return. Cap. Fire a Volley, at — Yards. Ready. Present.* After each word the recruit will go through the motions described in the Platoon Exercise by numbers, resting a pause of slow time between them.

When required to re-load in slow time from the position of "Prepare to load," the command will be *In Slow Time, Load.*

3. *Platoon Exercise in Quick Time.*

When the recruit has become sufficiently familiar with the motions of the Platoon Exercise to recollect the order in which they come, he will be practised in Quick Time, the following words only being given: Caution, *Platoon Exercise in Quick Time. As a Front* (or *Rear*) *Rank, Load. At — Yards. Ready. Present.* When the recruit has fired, he will bring his rifle down to the position of prepare to load, and will proceed with his loading without word of command, and after he has capped he will remain steady at the capping position. In quick time the recruit will perform each motion throughout the exercise distinctly and correctly, but as rapidly as possible. When the recruit is required to reload in quick time from the position of prepare to load, after having performed the Platoon Exercise in slow time, the word will be *In Quick Time, Load.*

4. *To Shoulder, to Order, and to Advance from the Capping Position.*

When the recruit has loaded and capped, he may be ordered to shoulder, to order, and, if he is armed with the long rifle, to advance, from the capping position.

Shoulder—	*To Shoulder with the Long Rifle.*—On the word *Shoulder*, bring the left foot back to the right, placing the heel behind that of the right foot.
Arms.	On the word *Arms*, come to the front; at the same time bring the rifle with the right hand to the left shoulder, and grasp the butt with the left hand at the full extent of the arm, the fingers of the right hand to be under the cock and close to the lock side of the stock, thumb pointing to the muzzle.

e in Quick Time.

ome sufficiently familiar with
xercise to recollect the order
practised in Quick Time, the
en: Caution, *Platoon Exercise*
or *Rear*) *Rank, Load, At* —
When the recruit has fired, he
e position of prepare to load,
ng without word of command,
ill remain steady at the cap-
the recruit will perform each
cise distinctly and correctly,
When the recruit is required to
position of prepare to load,
latoon Exercise in slow time,
ue, Load.

l to Advance from the Capping
ition.

ded and capped, he may be
, and, if he is armed with the
he capping position.

lder with the Long Rifle.—On
Shoulder, bring the left foot
e right, placing the heel be-
of the right foot.
word *Arms,* come to the front;
me time bring the rifle with
hand to the left shoulder, and
butt with the left hand at the
of the arm, the fingers of the
d to be under the cock and
e lock side of the stock, thumb
o the muzzle.

Two. — Drop the right hand smartly to the side.

Shoulder— — *To Shoulder with the Short Rifle.*—On the word *Shoulder,* bring the left foot back to the right, placing the heel behind that of the right foot.

Arms. — On the word *Arms,* come to the front; at the same time bring the rifle to a perpendicular position at the right side with the left hand, and seize it with the forefinger and thumb of the right hand round the trigger-guard, the remaining fingers under the cock.

Two. — Drop the left hand smartly to the side.

Order. — *To Order with the Long or Short Rifle.*—On the word *Order,* bring the left foot back to the right (placing the heel behind that of the right foot), and seize the rifle with the right hand close in front of the left, fore-arm close to the barrel.

Arms. — On the word *Arms,* face to the front, and with the right hand place the butt quietly on the ground at the right side, as detailed in the *manual exercise.*

Advance—Arms. — *To Advance with the Long Rifle.*—The same as the shoulder with the short rifle.

5. *To prepare to Load from the Advance, and from the Order.*

Prepare to—Load. — *From the Advance with the Long Rifle.*—The same as from the shoulder with the short rifle.

Prepare to-Load.

From the Order with the Long or Short Rifle.—Turn on the heels as in preparing to load from the shoulder, carrying the rifle round with the body, eyes to the front.

Two.

As a front rank, carry the left foot ten inches to the left front, (viz., six to the front and eight to the left,) moving the body with it; toes pointing to the front;

As a rear rank, carry the left foot six inches to the front, moving the body with it; toes pointing to the front;

at the same time square the shoulders to the front from the hip, pass the rifle smartly to the left hand, which will seize it at the nose cap, thumb and finger round the stock, and proceed as in the second motion of preparing to load from the shoulder.

6. *Coming to the Ready from Shouldered Arms, from Ordered Arms, and from Advanced Arms.*

As a Front (or Rear) Rank at — yds. Ready.

From Shouldered Arms with the Long Rifle.—Turn on the heels as in preparing to load from the shoulder; at the same time seize the rifle with the right hand at the small of the butt, thumb pointing to the muzzle.

Two.

Bring the rifle to a horizontal position at the right side, grasping it with the left hand as described in the first motion of "Cap."

Order with the Long or
-Turn on the heels as in
load from the shoulder,
rifle round with the body,
ont.

rank, t foot to the z., six t and left,) body point- nt;	*As a rear rank,* carry the left foot six inches to the front, moving the body with it; toes pointing to the front;

ime square the shoulders to
om the hip, pass the rifle
e left hand, which will seize
ose cap, thumb and finger
ock, and proceed as in the
n of preparing to load from

ouldered Arms, from Ordered
dvanced Arms.

ldered Arms with the Long
on the heels as in preparing
the shoulder; at the same
e rifle with the right hand
of the butt, thumb pointing
c.
rifle to a horizontal position
t side, grasping it with the
described in the first motion

As a front rank, press the small of the butt against the hip, and carry the left foot ten inches to the left front (viz., six inches to the front and eight to the left);	*As a rear rank,* press the small of the butt to the side four inches above the hip, and carry the left foot six inches to the front;

in both cases the body must move with the foot, and the left toes must point direct to the front; then proceed as detailed in the "Ready from the Capping Position," No. 1 of this Section.

As a Front (or Rear) Rank, at — yards— Ready.

From Shouldered Arms with the Short Rifle.—Turn on the heels as in preparing to load from the shoulder; at the same time raise the rifle by bending the right arm slightly, and seize it with the left hand, the little finger touching the projection.

Two.

Bring the rifle to a horizontal position at the rigl t side, grasping it with the left hand as described in the first motion of "Cap," and proceed as "From Shouldered Arms with the Long Rifle."

As a Front (or Rear) Rank at — yards— Ready.

From Ordered Arms with the Long or Short Rifle.—Turn on the heels as in preparing to load from the shoulder; carrying the rifle round with the body. With the long rifle the thumb of the right hand must be turned behind the barrel, in order to seize it before facing.

Two.	Bring the rifle to a horizontal position at the right side, grasping it with the left hand, as explained in the "Ready from Shouldered Arms with the Long Rifle," then proceed as detailed under that head.
As a Front (OR *Rear*) *Rank at — yards—Ready.*	*From Advanced Arms with the Long Rifle.*—The same as from "The Shoulder" with the short rifle.

7. *Half-cocking Arms.*

If a soldier is at the ready when ordered to cease firing he will half-cock arms, or the squad may be ordered to half-cock arms, which will be performed as follows:—

Half-cock—Arms.	Place the thumb of the right hand on the comb of the cock and the forefinger on the trigger, and draw both back until the sear is disengaged from the full bent of the tumbler; then let the cock gently down (removing the forefinger from the trigger), and when it passes the half bent, draw it back to half cock; after which, having, if the flap has been raised, shut it down, carry the right hand to the small of the butt, thumb pointing to the muzzle, fingers behind the guard.

8. *To fire a Volley and Shoulder.*

When it is not intended to re-load after firing, the command will be, *Fire a Volley and Shoulder. At—yds. Ready. Present.* After delivering the volley, rest a pause, and

rifle to a horizontal po-
e right side, grasping it
hand, as explained in the
Shouldered Arms with the
then proceed as detailed
ad.

anced Arms with the Long
ame as from "The Shoulder"
t rifle.

ing Arms.

when ordered to cease firing
e squad may be ordered to
erformed as follows:—

thumb of the right hand on
the cock and the forefinger
er, and draw both back until
isengaged from the full bent
ler; then let the cock gently
ving the forefinger from the
d when it passes the half
it back to half cock; after
ng, if the flap has been raised,
n, carry the right hand to the
butt, thumb pointing to the
gers behind the guard.

ley and Shoulder.

re-load after firing, the com-
nd Shoulder. At—yds. Ready.
he volley, rest a pause, and

PLATE XVI.

AS A FRONT RANK KNEELING, READY.

AS A REAR RANK KNEELING, PRESENT (1st Motion).

AS A FRONT RANK KNEELING, PRESENT (5th Motion).

AS A REAR RANK KNEELING, PRESENT (5th Motion).

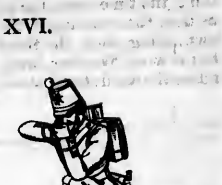
taking th
position,
down, bri
On the w
and on th

This e
arms.

CAUTI
Rear) *Ra*

At — *y*
Reac

E XVI.



AS A REAR RANK KNEELING, PRESENT (1st Motion).

AS A REAR RANK KNEELING, PRESENT (5th Motion).

taking the time from the right, come down to the capping position, then having, if the flap has been raised, shut it down, bring back the right hand to the small of the butt. On the word *Shoulder*, bring the left foot back to the right; and on the word *Arms*, shoulder and come to the front.

S. 5. To Fire and Re-load kneeling.

1. *By Numbers.*

This exercise will first be commenced from shouldered arms.

CAUTION.—*By Numbers, Fire and Load as a Front (or Rear) Rank kneeling.*

At — yards.
Ready.

With the Long or Short Rifle.—As detailed in the first motion of "Ready," from "The Shoulder," standing.

Two.

Bring the rifle to a horizontal position at the right side, as explained in the 2nd motion of "Ready" from "The Shoulder" standing; at the same time carry the right foot 12 inches to the rear, and place the toe of the boot as much to the left of the left heel as will bring the knee of the front rank 6 inches to the right when on the ground, and that of the rear rank 12 inches to the right; the foot to be nearly perpendicular, the left leg straight.

Three. — *Three.*—Sink at once on the right knee twelve inches to the rear, as a front rank six inches to the right, as a rear rank twelve inches to the right of the left heel, and square with the right foot; bring the weight of the body on to the right heel, and place the left fore-arm, as a front rank six inches behind and square with the left knee, as a rear rank on and square with the left knee, the butt resting against the right side; then proceed as directed in Section 4 of this Part.

When required to come to the "Ready" kneeling, from the capping position standing, the left foot will be brought back to the right, and the right foot will be carried back before sinking on the right knee.

As the length of leg, in very tall men, is greater than the breadth of body, it will be impossible, in close order, to get the knee square with the foot; in such cases, therefore, the knee is to be inclined to the front, but not beyond the inside of the right foot of the next file on the right.

Present. — As detailed when coming to this position standing, without raising the body off the heel, and place the left elbow at once over the left knee to form a support. The instructions which follow the first motion of the *present standing* are applicable also to this motion.

Two.
Three.
Four. — As detailed when firing standing.

k at once on the right
inches to the rear, as a
x inches to the right, as a
velve inches to the right
heel, and square with the
ring the weight of the body
ght heel, and place the left
front rank six inches be-
are with the left knee, as a
and square with the left
t resting against the right
proceed as directed in Sec-
Part.

he "Ready" kneeling, from
the left foot will be brought
it foot will be carried back
e.

y tall men, is greater than
e impossible, in close order,
e foot; in such cases, there-
to the front, but not beyond
e next file on the right.

en coming to this position
raising the body off the heel,
elbow at once over the left
support. The instructions
first motion of the *present*
cable also to this motion.

en firing standing.

	Front Rank.	*Rear Rank.*
Five.	Bring the rifle down to the capping position, at the same time raise the body off the right heel, and place the left fore-arm square on the left thigh six inches behind the knee; then, if the flap has been raised shut it down without a jerk, return the hand to the small of the butt, and after resting a pause of the slow time, come to the position of "prepare to load" by carrying the rifle in both hands round in front of the left leg, (turning the barrel downwards at the same time,) and with the left hand, passing the butt close by the body over the right heel to the left rear, to the extent of the left arm, meeting it with the right hand, the thumb in line with the muzzle; then seize the rifle with the left hand at the nose cap, thumb and fingers round the piece; the elbow to be close to the left side, hand in front of the left breast, the rifle close to the hollow of the left side and as upright as possible; at the same time carry the right hand to the pouch and take up a cartridge, which will be held between the forefinger and thumb, close to the top, the bullet resting in the palm of the hand.	Bring the rifle down to the capping position, at the same time raise the body off the right heel, and place the left fore-arm square on the left knee; then, if the flap has been raised, shut it down without a jerk, return the hand to the small of the butt, and after resting a pause of the slow time, come to the position of "prepare to load" by turning the rifle over in the left hand, and placing the butt on the ground (lock uppermost), under the shin of the right leg of the front rank man of the file on the right, meeting the barrel with the right hand thumb in line with the muzzle, which is to be as high as, and in a line with, the right shoulder, then seize the rifle with the left hand at the nose cap, thumb and fingers round the piece, the elbow to be close in to the body hand in front of the right breast; at the same time carry the right hand to the pouch and take up a cartridge, which will be held between the forefinger and thumb, close to the top, the bullet resting in the palm of the hand.
Load.	In five motions, as when loading standing; in seizing the head of the ramrod in the fifth motion, the front rank to incline the ramrod to the right to facilitate the drawing of it.	
Rod.	In two motions, as when loading standing.	

Home.	In four motions, as when loading standing.
Return.	In two motions, as when loading standing.

	Front Rank.	*Rear Rank.*
Cap.	With the left hand raise the butt over the right heel, and carry the rifle round close to the body until the left elbow is in front of the hip, at the same time quitting the right hand to the side; then bring it to a horizontal position at the right side, and let the shoulders resume the right half-face, placing the left fore-arm at once square on the thigh six inches behind the knee, meeting the small of the butt with the right hand, (which is to hold it lightly, with the fingers behind the trigger-guard,) and half cock the rifle, the thumb to remain on the cock;—the rifle to be grasped with the left hand as detailed when capping standing; the butt to be pressed against the side.	Bring the rifle with the left hand to a horizontal position at the right side, muzzle to the front, and let the body resume the right half-face; place the left fore-arm at once square on the left knee, and at the same time meet the small of the butt with the right hand, and holding it lightly with the fingers behind the guard, half cock the rifle, the thumb to remain on the cock;—the rifle to be grasped with the left hand, as detailed when capping standing, the butt to be pressed against the side.
Two. *Three.* *Four.* *Five.* *Six.*	As detailed when capping standing.	

At—yds. Ready.	Bring the weight of the body on to the right heel, and place the left fore-arm on the left leg, the butt resting against the right side, then proceed as directed in Section 4 of this Part.
Present.	As already detailed.
Load.	As already detailed.

2. *To Fire and Re-load kneeling in Slow Time.*

The recruit having been thoroughly instructed in the motions of firing and loading kneeling by numbers, will next be taught to perform them in slow time in the same manner as he has learned the platoon exercise, the following words only being given without the numbers: *Fire and load kneeling in slow time as a front or rear rank. At — yards—Ready, Present, Load, Rod, Home, Return, Cap.*

When required to re-load in slow time from the position of prepare to load, the command will be *In slow time—Load.*

3. *To Fire and Re-load kneeling in Quick Time.*

When the recruit has become sufficiently familiar with the motions of the firing and loading kneeling to recollect the order in which they come, he will be practised in quick time, the following words only being given:—Caution. *Fire and Load kneeling in quick time as a Front* (or *Rear*) *Rank, at — yards, Ready, Present.* When the recruit has fired he will rest a pause of slow time, and then bring his rifle down to the position of prepare to load, proceed with his loading without word of command, and after he has capped will remain steady at the capping position. The time will be the same as in the platoon exercise. When the recruit is required to re-load in quick time, from the position of prepare to load, after having performed the firing and loading kneeling in slow time, the command will be—*In quick time—Load.*

4. *To Load Standing from the Kneeling Position.*

First shut down the flap (if necessary) and resume the capping position, then rise to the half-face, bringing the right heel before the left, the rifle remaining steady at the side. After which proceed as detailed in the fifth motion of "Present," at the same time carrying the left foot forward to the position of "Prepare to load."

5. *To Shoulder, to Order, and to Advance from the Capping Position kneeling.*

Shoulder—	*With the Long or Short Rifle.*—On the word *Shoulder*, spring smartly to attention at the half-face, bringing the right heel in front of the left, still keeping the rifle in a horizontal position at the right side.
Arms.	At the word *Arms*, proceed as detailed when coming to the shoulder from the capping position standing.
Two.	Drop the right hand (or left hand with the short rifle) smartly to the side.
Order—	*With the Long or Short Rifle.*—On the word *Order*, spring smartly to the standing position at the right half-face, bringing the right heel in front of the left, still keeping the rifle in a horizontal position at the right side, and at the same time seize the rifle with the right hand close in front of the left, fore-arm close to the barrel.
Arms.	On the word *Arms*, face to the front, &c., as detailed, when coming to the order from the capping position, standing.
Advance-Arms.	*With the Long Rifle.*—The same as the shoulder with the short rifle.

S. 6. *Platoon Exercise and Firing in two Ranks.*

When the recruit has learned all the motions of the Platoon Exercise, and of the firing and re-loading kneeling, in single rank, he will practise them in two ranks.

1. *Instruction for Troops armed with the Long Rifle.*—In corps armed with the long rifle the rear rank will, on the caution, before loading, take a pace of nine inches to the front. Before firing, if not already closed, the rear rank,

nd to Advance from one on kneeling.

ong or Short Rifle.—On the r, spring smartly to atten- half-face, bringing the right of the left, still keeping the zontal position at the right e word *Arms*, proceed as de- coming to the shoulder from position standing.

ight hand (or left hand with e) smartly to the side.

Long or Short Rifle.—On the spring smartly to the stand- at the right half-face, bring- nt heel in front of the left, g the rifle in a horizontal ne right side, and at the same he rifle with the right hand t of the left, fore-arm close to

rd *Arms*, face to the front, &c., when coming to the order pping position, standing.

Long Rifle.—The same as the th the short rifle.

nd Firing in two Ranks.

ed all the motions of the Pla- g and re-loading kneeling, in hem in two ranks.

armed with the Long Rifle.— g rifle the rear rank will, on ake a pace of nine inches to t already closed, the rear rank,

unless the front rank is to kneel, will close up in like manner. When soldiers are required to fire, front rank kneeling, the rear rank will not close up, and if the rear rank has already closed up to load, on the caution to fire it will step back a pace of nine inches.

Cautions for loading and firing on which the rear rank will close up:—

For Loading.	For Firing.
Platoon Exercise by Numbers.	*Battalion (Right* or *Left Wing*, or *Company, &c.)*
Platoon Exercise in Slow (or *Quick*) *Time.*	*Fire a Volley.*
With Cartridge, or	*File Firing from the Right,* (or *Left*, or *from both Flanks*) *of Companies, &c.*
As with Cartridge. or	And in Battalion Square *Prepare for Cavalry.*
With Blank Cartridge.	

When the soldiers are to fire front rank kneeling, the words *Front rank kneeling* must precede the above cautions for firing, in order that the rear rank may know how to act.

After loading, if not required to fire, the rear rank men will resume their distances by taking a pace of nine inches to the rear as they shoulder, order, or advance arms.

Soldiers will be taught to fire standing, with the front rank kneeling, and with both ranks kneeling. After firing volleys front rank kneeling, the front rank men will rise and re-load standing; but in file firing the front rank will load kneeling. After firing volleys both ranks kneeling, the men, unless previously cautioned to re-load on the knee, will rise and re-load standing.

In the case of troops armed with the short rifle, on the word *Ready* (in volley firing), or the bugle sound *Commence firing* (in file firing), the front rank will invariably kneel; consequently as a general rule the rear rank will neither close up to load nor to fire, and the caution *Front*

rank kneeling will be unnecessary; but on the caution *Both ranks kneeling fire a volley*, the rear rank will close up; and in squares four deep, the second and fourth ranks will close up as directed in Section 8, No. 3 of this Part. Troops armed with the short rifle will reload in the same manner as those armed with the long.

S. 7. *Rifle Exercises for Serjeants.*

The serjeants of all infantry regiments will be taught the manual and platoon exercises for the short rifle.

Serjeants when moving with their companies or with the battalion will remain with unfixed swords, excepting while they are escorting the colours, and when they are in a square, in which cases they will have their swords fixed.

Serjeants will stand at ease and come to attention with the men, they will also shoulder arms, slope or trail arms, and order arms with them, but will perform no other motions of the rifle with the men. The serjeants, during the performance of the manual and platoon exercises by the rank and file, will remain steady at the shoulder.

Recover-Arms. *The Recover.*—Serjeants will recover arms as follows:—Seize the rifle as directed in the first motion of "the Secure," then raise it perpendicularly in front of the face, right hand grasping the small of the butt, thumb as high as the mouth, barrel to the front; at the same time place the left hand under the butt, thumb in front of the heel, first two joints of the fingers round the side of the butt.

While a serjeant marking a point is extending an arm, as directed in Part IV., General Principle V., he will hold his rifle by the small of the butt with the other hand, resting the toe against his chest.

Serjeants marking points on which men are to dress when forming line will stand with recovered arms; when they

ssary; but on the caution
, the rear rank will close up;
econd and fourth ranks will
ion 8, No. 3 of this Part.
ifle will reload in the same
ie long.

ses for Serjeants.

regiments will be taught the
for the short rifle.
h their companies or with the
fixed swords, excepting while
and when they are in a square,
their swords fixed.
and come to attention with
der arms, slope or trail arms,
but will perform no other
men. The serjeants, during
l and platoon exercises by the
dy at the shoulder.
over.—Serjeants will recover
llows:—Seize the rifle as di-
e first motion of "the Secure,"
t perpendicularly in front of
ht hand grasping the small of
umb as high as the mouth,
he front; at the same time
ft hand under the butt, thumb
the heel, first two joints of the
nd the side of the butt.
point is extending an arm, as
Principle V., he will hold his
with the other hand, resting

which men are to dress when
recovered arms; when they

mark the points for their companies to form upon simultaneously in column, as in forming on parade, they will take their distances and covering with recovered arms, and when they are correctly covered they will shoulder arms on the word *Steady* from the adjutant or other person dressing them; but when they mark the ground for their companies to form upon in succession, as in forming column from line, they will take up their covering with recovered arms, but will come to the shoulder without word of command when correctly dressed. The serjeant giving a base point in front or rear of a flank company of formation, when forming column from line, and in closing on, or opening out from, a front or rear company in column, will remain at "The Recover" until the word *Steady* is given.

Platoon Exercise for the Westley Richards' Breech-loading Rifles.

PREPARE TO LOAD.	As described in the first motion of coming to the ready from the shoulder with the short rifle, Section 4, No. 6, of this part.
TWO.	Bring the rifle to a horizontal position at the right side, grasping it firmly with the left hand as described in the first motion of "Cap" in the "Platoon Exercise," the flat part of the butt to rest in the hollow of the side, in line with the hip; at the same time carry the left foot six inches to the front, moving the body with it, and seize the knob of the breech between the forefinger and thumb, the remaining fingers closed in the hand. Raise the breech, carry the right hand to the pouch, and take up a cartridge, holding it between the forefinger and thumb, bullet point foremost.

LOAD.	Carry the cartridge to the breech, and place the bullet in the chamber, pushing it as far forwards as possible into the barrel with the thumb of the right hand (the fingers closed with the knuckles upwards), then seize the knob of the flap between the forefinger and thumb and close the breech; after which hold the small of the butt lightly with the right hand, the thumb to the right of the knob and pointing to the mussle.
CAP. TWO. THREE. FOUR. FIVE. AT — YARDS READY. PRESENT. TWO. THREE. FOUR. FIVE.	Proceed as explained in the "Platoon Exercise," Section 4, No. 1, of this part.
	Bring the rifle to the right side, and if the flap has been raised shut it down, but without moving the sliding bar, and open the breech, &c., as detailed in the second motion of "Prepare to load."

Review Exercise.

S. 8. Review Exercise.

At inspections or reviews the manual exercise will be performed by the men, judging their own time, as directed in Section 1 of this part; the platoon exercise will be performed first in slow time, then in quick time. The men having been directed to take out their stoppers while standing at ease, will be ordered to come to attention, to shoulder, and

cartridge to the breech, and
let in the chamber, pushing
wards as possible into the
he thumb of the right hand
closed with the knuckles up-
seize the knob of the flap
forefinger and thumb and
eech; after which hold the
butt lightly with the right
umb to the right of the knob
to the muzzle.

as explained in the "Platoon
Section 4, No. 1, of this part.

e rifle to the right side, and
has been raised shut it down,
ut moving the sliding bar,
the breech, &c., as detailed
ond motion of "Prepare to

EXERCISE.

ew Exercise.

he manual exercise will be per-
their own time, as directed in
atoon exercise will be performed
quick time. The men having
eir stoppers while standing at
to attention, to shoulder, and

to take open order, as described in Part VII., Section 1, after which the words of command will be as follows:—

Manual Exercise.		*Platoon Exercise for both Long and Short Rifle.*
For the Long Rifle.	*For the Short Rifle.*	
I. Caution.—Manual—Exercise.	I. Caution.—Manual—Exercise.	Caution.—Platoon Exercise in Slow Time.
II. Secure—Arms.	II. Secure—Arms.	Prepare to—Load.
III. Shoulder—Arms.	III. Shoulder—Arms.	Load.
IV. Order—Arms.	IV. Present—Arms.	Rod.
V. Fix—Bayonets.	V. Shoulder—Arms.	Home.
VI. Shoulder—Arms.	VI. Support—Arms.	Return.
VII. Present—Arms.	VII. Shoulder—Arms.	Cap.
VIII. Shoulder—Arms.	VIII. Order—Arms.	Fire a Volley at 300 Yards.
IX. Port—Arms.	IX. Fix—Swords.	Ready.
X. Charge—Bayonets.	X. Shoulder—Arms.	Present.
XI. Shoulder—Arms.	XI. Port—Arms.	Then wait for the men to fire, and come down to the capping position, after which continue.
XII. Advance—Arms.	XII. Charge—Swords.	In Quick Time—Load.
XIII. Order—Arms.	XIII. Shoulder—Arms.	Shoulder—Arms.
XIV. Advance—Arms.	XIV. Slope—Arms.	Under—Arms.
XV. Shoulder—Arms.	XV. Shoulder—Arms.	Stand at—Ease.
XVI. Support—Arms.	XVI. Order—Arms.	After which the men will be directed to replace their stoppers, unless they are going to fire.
XVII. Shoulder—Arms.	XVII. Unfix—Swords.	
XVIII. Slope—Arms.	Shoulder—Arms.	
XIX. Shoulder—Arms.	Rear Rank take Close—Order.	
Rear Rank take Close—Order.	March.	
March.		

S. 9. Modes of Firing.

Troops firing in close files at distances of 300 yards and under will not make use of the flap of the back sight, but will take their aim between the flanges which protect it.

1. *Volley Firing.*—Soldiers must be practised in firing volleys by battalions, wings, companies, subdivisions, &c., as described in the foregoing sections.

2. *File Firing.*—Soldiers will be taught to fire independently by files in the following manner:—

File firing, from the right (or left, or from both flanks) of Companies (or Subdivisions, &c.)	On this caution the rear rank will close up as described in Section 6.
Commence.	The flank file or files will at once make ready and come to the present, the front-rank man delivering his fire first, to be immediately followed by that of the rear-rank man; both men will then return to the capping position, and from thence go on with their loading in the quick time, performing their motions together and without loss of time. When the flank file is bringing the rifle to the present, the next file is to make ready, coming to the present when the flank file is in the act of returning to the capping position; the next file to proceed in like manner, and so continue by files in succession for the first round, after which, each file, as soon as loaded, will fire independently, without reference to the files either on the right or left.
Cease Firing.	Each file, as it completes its loading, will shoulder arms, if armed with the long rifle, or order if armed with the short rifle.

s of Firing.

at distances of 300 yards and
ne flap of the back sight, but
ne flanges which protect it.
must be practised in firing
ompanies, subdivisions, &c., as
tions.
vill be taught to fire indepen-
g manner:—

caution the rear rank will close
ribed in Section 6.

k file or files will at once make
come to the present, the front-
delivering his fire first, to be
y followed by that of the rear-
; both men will then return to
g position, and from thence go
eir loading in the quick time,
; their motions together and
ss of time. When the flank
ging the rifle to the present,
le is to make ready, coming to
t when the flank file is in the
rning to the capping position;
le to proceed in like manner,
tinue by files in succession for
ound, after which, each file, as
oaded, will fire independently,
eference to the files either on
r left.
le, as it completes its loading,
ler arms, if armed with the long
ler if armed with the short rifle.

PLATE XVII.

PREPARE FOR CAVALRY. READY.

XVII.

PREPARE FOR CAVALRY. READY.

Files that may have made ready, when this command is given will half cock their rifles before they shoulder or order arms.

Each man, before full cocking his rifle, is to adjust his sight for the distance he estimates the object at which he intends to fire to be from him. In file and volley firing, it is to be impressed upon the men, that the front rank must remain perfectly steady after delivering their fire, otherwise the aim of the rear rank will be deranged.

When the command to fire by files is given to a battalion, the commence firing will be given on the drum or bugle, instead of the word *Commence*, and the cease fire will also be given on the drum or bugle, after the word *Cease Firing* from the commanding officer, as he could not be heard during the firing.

In all firing, the officer commanding the company will fall to the rear of the centre of his company on the caution, and will return to his post as the men come to the shoulder, order, or advance, after having ceased to fire.

3. *Preparing for Cavalry.*

The recruits, having a thorough knowledge of the preceding portion of the drill, may now be formed into four ranks and practised to receive cavalry, as in square four deep.

Troops armed with the long rifle will commence this practice on the halt with shouldered arms and fixed bayonets. Those armed with the short rifle will commence the practice on the march with trailed arms, and will be taught to fix swords on the word *Halt* or *Halt-Right about-Face;* the leading company of a column thus armed, if halted, will fix swords on the word QUICK MARCH given to the remaining companies; the men who halt without word of command will fix swords as they halt.

Prepare for-Cavalry, { On this caution the second and fourth ranks will take a pace of nine inches to the front.

Ready.	On this command, the first and second rank will sink at once upon the right knee as a front and rear rank, kneeling in the manner prescribed when at the capping position, at the same time placing the butts of their rifles (which will not be cocked) on the ground against the inside of their right knees, locks turned uppermost, the muzzle slanting upwards, so that the point of the bayonet will be about the height of a horse's nose; the left hand to have a firm grasp of the rifle immediately above the lower band, the right hand holding the small of the butt, the left arm resting upon the thigh about six inches in rear of the left knee. The third and fourth ranks will come down to the ready position. Muzzles of rifles to be inclined upwards, but the men will not cock.
File Firing from the right (left, or both flanks) of Faces—Commence.	On the word *Commence*, the standing ranks will commence file firing, as before detailed, the men of each file cocking their rifles as the file next to them comes to the present.
Cease—Firing.	Each file, as it completes its loading, will shoulder arms. In rifle corps the men will come to the order.
Kneeling Ranks (or Kneeling Ranks of the—face), Fire a Volley.	This caution will be given, should it be deemed necessary to fire a volley.
At — yards Ready.	Come to the capping position, at the same time bring the weight of the body

ommand, the first and second
nk at once upon the right
front and rear rank, kneel-
manner prescribed when at
position, at the same time
butts of their rifles (which will
ed) on the ground against the
eir right knees, locks turned
the muzzle slanting upwards,
point of the bayonet will be
eight of a horse's nose; the
have a firm grasp of the rifle
above the lower band, the
holding the small of the butt,
resting upon the thigh about
in rear of the left knee. The
ourth ranks will come down
y position. Muzzles of rifles
ed upwards, but the men will

word *Commence*, the standing
commence file firing, as before
he men of each file cocking
as the file next to them comes
ent.

e, as it completes its loading,
der arms. In rifle corps the
ome to the order.

tion will be given, should it be
cessary to fire a volley.

o the capping position, at the
bring the weight of the body

	on the right heel, then full cock the rifle, and fix the eye steadfastly on an object in front.
Present.	After delivering the fire, rest a pause of the slow time, then raise the body off the heel, and bring the rifle down to resist cavalry, as before directed, remaining perfectly steady.
Load.	Spring smartly to the standing position at the right half-face, and bring the rifle to a horizontal position at the right side, seizing it at the same instant with the right hand close in front of the left, and from thence come to the position of prepare to load as standing ranks, and go on with the loading in quick time.
Shoulder-Arms or *Order-Arms.*	Troops armed with the long rifle will shoulder, those armed with the short rifle will order.

Troops armed with the long rifle must also be taught to come to the positions of prepare for cavalry from ordered arms with fixed bayonets.

In squares of two deep, the front rank only will kneel to resist cavalry.

4. *To fire a Feu de Joie.*

For this mode of firing the men will be drawn up in line at open order, with shouldered arms, and bayonets fixed if armed with the long rifle, but with unfixed swords if armed with the short rifle.

With Blank Cartridge, Load.	In quick time, as per regulation. Muzzles of rifles to slant upwards when capping.
Ready.	As per regulation.
Present.	Elevated in the air.

The right-hand man of the front rank commences the fire, which will run down the front and up the rear, as quick as

possible. When the right-hand man of the rear rank has fired, the whole will glance their eyes to the right to bring the rifle to the capping position and from thence to the loading position, and when loaded and capped they will remain steady, waiting for the word—

Ready, Present. As before directed.

The same to be repeated a third time.

After the third fire, the whole will remain steady at the capping position, and shoulder by word of command.

Shoulder-Arms.	As per regulation.
Present-Arms.	
Shoulder-Arms.	
Order-Arms.	

Three cheers.

When artillery are present and are ordered to fire twenty-one guns, seven will be fired before each round of the feu de joie.

5. *Street Firing.*

A column at open, half, or quarter distance, formed in a street or in narrow ground where deployment is impracticable, may be required to fire either when advancing or retiring. It will be performed in the following manner:—

1. *Street firing advancing.*—Three companies will be ordered to advance from the column, leaving sufficient room between them and the remainder of the column for a gun or body of cavalry to form. The second and third companies will close on the first. When required to fire, on the word THIRD COMPANY FIRE A VOLLEY, FIRST AND SECOND KNEELING AT — YARDS—READY, the two front companies will kneel down, and the third will fire over their heads; the second will then receive the word AT — YDS. READY, on which it will spring up, and on the word PRESENT will deliver its fire; lastly, the front company will fire kneeling, each company load as soon as it has fired

-hand man of the rear rank has
their eyes to the right to bring
position and from thence to the
en loaded and capped they will
the word—
e directed.
a third time.
whole will remain steady at the
lder by word of command.

regulation.

nt and are ordered to fire twenty-one
efore each round of the feu de joie.
Street Firing.
f, or quarter distance, formed in a
d where deployment is impracti-
to fire either when advancing or
rmed in the following manner:—
cing.—Three companies will be
the column, leaving sufficient room
mainder of the column for a gun
rm. The second and third com-
first. When required to fire, on
ANY FIRE A VOLLEY, FIRST AND
— YARDS-READY, the two front
own, and the third will fire over
will then receive the word AT —
t will spring up, and on the word
fire; lastly, the front company will
pany load as soon as it has fired

The leading company may then be ordered to rise and charge, or the first and second companies may be ordered to open out to half distance from the rear, and all three then be wheeled back by sub-divisions to each side of the street to allow the gun to fire between them, or the cavalry to charge; it may occasionally be of use to extend files along each side of the street to fire up into the windows.

2. *Street firing and retiring.*—In retiring, the leading company will give its fire, face outwards by sub-divisions, file to the rear, re-form company, load, and remain halted, until its front is again clear, or the whole column is put in motion. The moment the front of the second company is clear it will give its fire, face outwards, by sub-divisions, and file to the rear as above directed; and so on by companies in succession; the companies thus follow each other in succession: when the front of the column occupies the whole breadth of the street, the outward files of companies will double in the rear, to give the companies, which have fired, room to pass.

It must never be forgotten, in entering towns or villages occupied by the enemy, that the first thing to be done, on gaining a footing in the place, is to clear the houses on both flanks, and the column should on no account proceed through the streets without previously occupying the houses on either hand: the troops employed for that purpose breaking through partition walls, or pushing on from house to house, so as to accompany the march of the main body and protect its flanks.

Application of the Modes of Firing.

1. *General Remarks.*—No definite rules can be laid down with respect to the application, on service, of the various modes of firing; the commanding officer must use his discretion on this point, being guided in his decision by the nature of the country, the description of troops with whom he is engaged, and the quality of the arms with which they are equipped.

2. *Volley Firing.*—Volleys may occasionally be fired with good result, but this mode of firing must be used with great caution, or it may be the means of wasting ammunition in large quantities to no purpose. It must be remembered that if you fail in any decided effort against your enemy, you will produce despondency in your own ranks, and inspire him with confidence.

Volleys should only be used at short distances from the enemy, and when the men happen to be all loaded, for instance, when a second line relieves the first line, and it is necessary at once to check the advance of the enemy.

Volley firing by companies may occasionally be used during the formation of line, each company firing in succession as it forms.

Volley firing by the kneeling ranks of squares may be used with great effect and with perfect safety in the following instances,—when cavalry fail in their charge, and are forced to retire, or when cavalry break and pass by the sides of the square.

3. *File Firing.*—On service the usual, and for general purposes the most effective, mode of firing is by files. File firing may be safely used under any circumstances.

When small bodies fire by files great care must be taken to prevent soldiers from firing away their first round too quickly, and thus leaving all or a large portion of the number unloaded and defenceless.

4. *Firing Kneeling.*—Firing with the front rank kneeling enables the rear rank to fire with ease and precision, and consequently with greater effect.

Firing with both ranks kneeling may be applied when partial cover can be afforded to the men by that means; it has, moreover, been found to be an effective method of firing even on level country.

Firing with Blank Cartridge on Parade.—The following remarks may be considered more as suggestions for parade

s may occasionally be fired with
e of firing must be used with
the means of wasting ammuni-
o purpose. It must be remem-
ny decided effort against your
espondency in your own ranks,
lence.

sed at short distances from the
n happen to be all loaded, for
e relieves the first line, and it is
the advance of the enemy.

nies may occasionally be used
e, each company firing in succes-

eeling ranks of squares may be
with perfect safety in the follow-
ry fail in their charge, and are
valry break and pass by the sides

rvice the usual, and for general
e, mode of firing is by files. File
nder any circumstances.

by files great care must be taken
firing away their first round too
g all or a large portion of the
enceless.

ring with the front rank kneeling
fire with ease and precision, and
effect.

kneeling may be applied when
ed to the men by that means; it
nd to be an effective method of
ry.

ridge on Parade.—The following
ed more as suggestions for parade

purposes than as definite rules. All movements should be covered by skirmishers firing independently. In all formations of line firing should commence after formation, as soon as the front is clear of the skirmishers; companies forming in succession should frequently be made to fire as soon as they are formed, which will accustom the remaining companies to move steadily during the noise of firing. The standing ranks of squares should be ordered to fire the moment they are formed.

In firing by wings, one wing will receive the words *at—yards—ready*, the instant the other has completed its loading, the commanding officer or senior major will give the commands to the right wing, the junior major to the left wing.

In firing by companies, when the first company comes to the loading position the next company will receive the words *at—yards—ready*. When firing from centre to flanks, the right centre company will commence, then the left centre company will take up the fire, then the company on the right of the right centre company, and so on alternately to the flanks.

S. 10. Manner of Inspecting a Company on Parade.

Order-Arms.	If armed with the long rifle.
Fix-Bayonets (or *Swords*).	As per regulation.
Shoulder-Arms.	As per regulation.
Rear Rank take Open Order-March.	As per regulation.
Port-Arms.	As per regulation.
Half-cock, Arms.	Place the thumb of the right hand on the comb of the cock, and the fingers behind the trigger-guard; then draw back the cock until the sear catches in the half

bent of tumbler, and remove the snap cap from the nipple; afterwards resume the hold of the small of the butt.

The inspecting officer will now pass down the ranks to ascertain that the locks and sights are serviceable and perfectly clean, and that the nipples are free from rust.

Ease–Springs. On the word *Springs*, each soldier will replace his snap cap and let the hammer down thereon.

Shoulder, Arms. As per regulation.

Order, Arms. As per regulation.

Examine–

Arms. With the long rifle, on the word *Examine*, bring the thumb round the rear of the barrel.

On the word *Arms*, pass the rifle smartly to the left hand, which must grasp it at the nose cap, and place the butt quietly on the ground between the feet, the toe of it to be in line with the toes of the boots, barrel to the front, and perpendicular, the left arm close to the body; then withdraw the muzzle stopper, pass it to the left hand, and carry the right hand to the pouch or other place assigned, taking therefrom a piece of clean rag, place it in the jag or slit in the head of the ramrod, and seize the rod between the forefinger and thumb.

Rod. As per regulation, placing the head of the ramrod in the muzzle, with the rag between it and the breech.

Home. As per regulation, except that in performing the fourth motion, raise the ramrod about six inches instead of one; and when completed, drop the right hand to the right side.

umbler, and remove the snap cap
nipple; afterwards resume the
e small of the butt.
ill now pass down the ranks to
l sights are serviceable and per-
ipples are free from rust.
word *Springs*, each soldier will
is snap cap and let the hammer
reon.
regulation.
regulation.
the long rifle, on the word
, bring the thumb round the
he barrel.
he word *Arms*, pass the rifle
to the left hand, which must
at the nose cap, and place the
etly on the ground between the
toe of it to be in line with the
he boots, barrel to the front, and
cular, the left arm close to the
en withdraw the muzzle stopper,
to the left hand, and carry the
nd to the pouch or other place
, taking therefrom a piece of
g, place it in the jag or slit in
d of the ramrod, and seize the
veen the forefinger and thumb.
r regulation, placing the head of
rod in the muzzle, with the rag
it and the breech.
r regulation, except that in per-
the fourth motion, raise the
about six inches instead of one;
en completed, drop the right
the right side.

The officer will now proceed to ascertain if the insides of the barrels are clean or otherwise. Each soldier, as the officer approaches within two files of him, will draw the ramrod from the barrel as in the "Return" of the platoon exercise, and, holding the ramrod in the middle, place it under the right arm, and on the upper brass or nose cap to the left of the barrel, with the head of it to the left front, arm close to the side, knuckles of the right hand towards the ground. If the inside of the rifle is clean, no dirt should appear on the rag.

Return.	As per regulation, removing the rag from the jag, and returning it to the place whence taken, and replace the muzzle stopper; then pass the rifle to the right side with the left hand, dropping the right arm to the proper extent, quit the left hand, and resume the position of "*Order Arms.*"

An inspection of the appointments, clothing, &c., is now to be made.

Unfix-Bayonets.	As per regulation.
Rear Rank, take Close Order, -March.	As per regulation.
Stand at-Ease.	As per regulation.

Bayonet Exercise.

S. 11. *Bayonet or Sword Bayonet Exercise.*

1. *General Directions.*

Formation of Squad.—When recruits have been thoroughly instructed in the manual and platoon exercises and modes of firing, they will be taught the bayonet exercise; for this purpose they will, in the first instance, be formed in squads of not more than sixteen men in single rank.

Method of Teaching.—The recruits will first be taught the exercises in slow and quick time by numbers, after which they will be taught to perform them, judging their own time, in the review exercise, and with such variation from the regular order of the drill as the instructor may require, frequently changing quickly from one movement to another.

Position.—In attaining a good and firm position, care must be taken not to allow the limbs to be rigid, as any stiffness will prevent the promptness of action requisite to give effect to the bayonet.

Giving Points at Marks.—In order to teach the recruit to deliver the thrust in a proper direction, a cross bar upon poles may be erected, from which balls can be suspended, and a squad being drawn up in front should be practised in giving point at them.

2. *Preliminary Drill.*

The squad having fallen in in single rank as above directed, will be formed into two deep, as follows:—

Prepare for Bayonet-Exercise.	Right files stand fast, left files face to the right about.
Quick-March.	Left files move four paces to the rear, halt and front.
Port-Arms.	As usual.
Charge-Bayonets.	As usual. In the Bayonet exercise, this is called the "First Position."
Preliminary Drill in Slow (or Quick) Time.	Caution.

The feet will be kept at right angles to each other throughout the following exercises.

Second-Position.	Draw back the right foot twenty-four inches, the body resting upon it, the heels in line with each other, both knees bent, and kept well apart, the right directly over the foot, the left easy and flexible, pointing to the front.

e recruits will first be taught the
k time by numbers, after which
rform them, judging their own
and with such variation from the
as the instructor may require,
y from one movement to another.
a good and firm position, care
ow the limbs to be rigid, as any
promptness of action requisite to

.—In order to teach the recruit
proper direction, a cross bar upon
which balls can be suspended,
up in front should be practised in

liminary Drill.
len in in single rank as above
to two deep, as follows:—
t files stand fast, left files face to
t about.
files move four paces to the rear,
d front.
sual.
sual. In the Bayonet exercise,
called the "First Position."

n.
t at right angles to each other
exercises.
w back the right foot twenty-four
, the body resting upon it, the
n line with each other, both knees
and kept well apart, the right
y over the foot, the left easy and
e, pointing to the front.

Third-Position.	Advance the body by extending the right leg and bending forward the left leg without moving or raising the feet.
Second-Position.	As before.
Advance.	Move forward the left foot six inches, and follow with the right the same length of step.
Retire.	Step back with the right foot six inches, and follow with the left the same length of step.
Double-Advance.	Bring up the right foot to the left, and step out again with the left to the "Second Position."
Double-Retire.	Bring the left foot back to the right, and step back again with the right to the "Second Position."
First-Position.	Bring up the right heel to the left, straightening the knees.
Shoulder-Arms.	As usual, resuming the proper front.
Order-Arms.	As usual.
Stand at-Ease.	As usual.

In this and the following drills each movement will be repeated as often as may be necessary, but the recruit must not be kept too long in the same position; and when it is necessary for an awkward man to repeat any particular portion of the drill, the rest should be allowed to stand at ease.

3. *Guards and Points, by Numbers.*

Attention. *Shoulder-Arms.* *Port-Arms.* *Charge-Bayonets.*	As usual.
Guards and Points by Numbers; in Slow (or Quick) Time.	Caution.

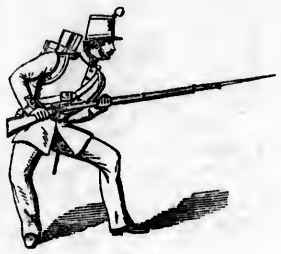
Guard.	Fall back to the "Second Position," with the knees well apart, the back and neck bent and chest drawn in, the rifle retaining the position of "Charge Bayonet," except that the right wrist will be upon the upper part of the hip, the left elbow close to and in front of the body, the point of the bayonet directed towards the height of a man's breast. Plate XVIII., Fig. 1.
Point.	Without quitting the hold or losing the balance of the rifle advance it gradually to the full extent of the arms; at the same time incline forwards to the "Third Position," the right elbow rather under and close to the stock, and lower the head, as in taking aim. Plate XVIII., Fig. 2.
Two.	Resume slowly the position of "Guard."
Low-Guard.	Bring the rifle to the "Low Guard" by turning the sling uppermost, and raising the butt and right elbow as high as the head, the back of the hand towards the right ear, and the bayonet pointing downwards to the front. Plate XIX., Fig. 1.
Point.	As before, but downwards, and as the rifle gradually descends, turn the barrel upwards. Plate XIX., Fig. 2.
Two.	Resume the position of the "Low Guard."
High-Guard.	Bring the rifle to the "High Guard" by lowering the right wrist to the hip; the left hand to be opposite the breast. Plate XX., Fig. 1.
Point.	As before, but upwards. Plate XX., Fig. 2.
Two.	Resume the position of the "High Guard."

to the "Second Position,"
ees well apart, the back and
nd chest drawn in, the rifle
the position of "Charge
except that the right wrist
n the upper part of the hip,
w close to and in front of the
oint of the bayonet directed
height of a man's breast.
I., Fig. 1.
quitting the hold or losing the
he rifle advance it gradually
xtent of the arms; at the same
forwards to the "Third Posi-
right elbow rather under and
stock, and lower the head,
aim. Plate XVIII., Fig. 2.
lowly the position of "Guard."
rifle to the "Low Guard" by
sling uppermost, and raising
nd right elbow as high as the
ack of the hand towards the
nd the bayonet pointing down-
e front. Plate XIX., Fig. 1.
e, but downwards, and as the
lly descends, turn the barrel
Plate XIX., Fig. 2.
the position of the "Low

e rifle to the "High Guard"
g the right wrist to the hip;
nd to be opposite the breast.
Fig. 1.
, but upwards. Plate XX., Fig. 2.
the position of the "High

PLATE XVIII.

Fig. 1.



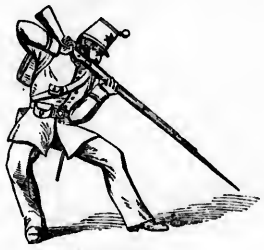
GUARD.

Fig. 2.

POINT.

PLATE XIX.

Fig. 1.



LOW-GUARD.

Fig. 2.

POINT.

PLATE XX.

Fig. 1.

HIGH-GUARD.

Fig. 2.

POINT.

PLATE XXI.

HEAD-PARRY.

TE XXI.

AD-PARRY.

PLATE XXII.

SHORTEN ARMS.

E XXII.

TEN ARMS.

Head-Parry. — Raise the rifle, turning the sling upwards till the left wrist is as high as, and opposite to, the forehead; the butt slanting downwards. Plate XXI.

Two. — Return to the "High Guard."

Shorten-Arms. — Throw back the rifle to the full extent of the right arm, lowering the point of the bayonet direct to the front, the barrel resting upon the left arm, just above the elbow; and carry back the body by extending the left leg. Plate XXII.

Point. — As before, direct to the front, as in Plate XVIII., Fig. 2.

Two. — Return to the "Shorten Arms."

Guard. — As before.

Shoulder-Arms.
Order-Arms.
Stand at-Ease. — As usual.

When it is necessary to repeat a thrust in the above practice, the command "*As you were*" will be given instead of "*Two.*"

The first guard and point are intended to be used against a man on foot, on level ground; the low guard and point when standing on a height, such as a parapet, against a man below; the high guard and point against a man standing on a height, or against a mounted man. The thrust of a bayonet or lance can be parried by a slight movement of the rifle to the right or left when at either of the three guards. In order to protect the head from a sabre cut, the rifle will be raised to "The Head Parry."

4. *Guards and Points in an Oblique Direction by Numbers.*

Attention.
Shoulder-Arms.
Port-Arms.
Charge-Bayonets. — As usual.

Variations of Guard and Point by Numbers, in Slow (or Quick) Time.	Caution.
Guard.	As before.
Right.	Keeping the feet steady, and retaining the position of "Guard," turn the body to the right front, so as to present the bayonet in that direction.
Point.	As before, to the right front.
Two.	Return to "Guard" to the right front.
Left.	Turn the body as before, but to the left front.
Point.	As before, to the left front.
Two.	Return to "Guard" to the left front.
Low-Guard. *Point.* *Two.*	As before, to the left front.
High-Guard. *Point.* *Two.*	As before, to the left front.
Right.	Retaining the position of the "High Guard," turn the body to the right front.
Point.	As before, to the right front.
Two.	Return to the "High Guard" to the right front.
Low-Guard. *Point.* *Two.*	As before, to the right front.
Guard.	As before.
Shoulder-Arms. *Order-Arms.* *Stand at-Ease.*	As usual.

5. *Points to the Rear by Numbers.*

In order to bring the body and limbs into equal action on both sides, the preceding practices should be performed

Caution.

re.
g the feet steady, and retaining
on of "Guard," turn the body
ht front, so as to present the
that direction.
re, to the right front.
to "Guard" to the right front.
he body as before, but to the

re, to the left front.
to "Guard" to the left front.

re, to the left front.

re, to the left front.

ng the position of the "High
urn the body to the right front.
re, to the right front.
to the "High Guard" to the
t.

re, to the right front.

re.

l.

Rear by Numbers.

ly and limbs into equal action
practices should be performed

with the right shoulder and foot foremost, the squad being faced about, as follows:—

Attention.
Shoulder-Arms.
Port-Arms.
Charge-Bayonets.
} As usual.

The caution will be given as before, according to the exercise which is to be performed.

Guard. As before.

About. Straighten the knees and raise the rifle perpendicularly in front of the centre of the body, at the same time turn to the right about upon the heels, the right foot pointing to the rear, the left foot to its left, and smartly changing the hold of the rifle with the right hand at the balance, and grasping the small of the stock with the left hand, sink down again to the position of "Guard," by bending the knees, and bringing the weight of the body on the left leg.

6. *Exercises in Quick Time.*

The movements detailed in the preceding numbers having been taught in slow time, they will next be practised in quick time, that is, the movements explained in No. 2 will be made more rapidly, and in Nos. 3 and 4 the thrust will be delivered quicker, especially at the latter part, and in withdrawing the rifle on the word *Two*, the motion will also be quicker, especially at the commencement.

7. *Bayonet Exercise in Single Rank.*

The guards and points will also be practised in single rank without intervals, the squad being re-formed in single rank for that purpose.

The whole of the practices detailed in Nos. 2, 3, and 4

will then be performed, after which the squad will be brought to its proper front from the position of "Guard," as follows:—

About.	As before directed.
Shoulder-Arms. *Order-Arms.* *Stand at-Ease.*	As usual.

8. *Review Exercise.*

In the review exercise the soldiers will perform the second motion, judging their own time without the word *Two*, the point being given, and the rifle drawn back to the position from which it was delivered in quick, but marked time.

For this exercise the squad, company, or battalion will be drawn up in line.

Prepare for Bayonet Exercise.	The right files of the front rank stand fast; the remainder, including the colour party, the captains, coverers, and supernumerary rank, go to the right about.
Quick-March.	The files which have faced about will move direct to the rear; the left files of the front rank, four paces; the right files of the rear rank, seven paces; the left files of the rear rank, eleven paces; the colour party, captains, and coverers eighteen paces, and the supernumerary ranks fourteen paces; each man halting and fronting at his proper distance, and the ranks dressing by the right: after the captains have moved back as above directed, they will move to the rear of the centre of their companies.
Review Exercise.	Caution.
Guard.	Seize the small of the butt with the right hand, and come down at once to the position of "Guard."

which the squad will be
m the position of "Guard,"

ected.

Exercise.
diers will perform the second
e without the word *Two*, the
e drawn back to the position
quick, but marked time.
, company, or battalion will

files of the front rank stand
mainder, including the colour
aptains, coverers, and super-
nk, go to the right about.
which have faced about will
to the rear; the left files of
ank, four paces; the right
rear rank, seven paces; the
the rear rank, eleven paces;
party, captains, and coverers
ces, and the supernumerary
een paces; each man halting
g at his proper distance, and
dressing by the right: after
s have moved back as above
ey will move to the rear of
f their companies.

small of the butt with the
, and come down at once to
of "Guard."

Point. { Deliver the point to the front, rest a pause of slow time, and return to "Guard," each movement being swiftly and smartly executed.

The remaining points will be performed in like manner by the following commands, viz.: *Low-Guard, Point. High-Guard, Point. Head-Parry. Shorten-Arms, Point. Guard. Right, Point. Left, Point. Low-Guard, Point. High-Guard, Point. Right, Point. Low-Guard, Point. Guard. About.*

The above exercise will then be performed with the right shoulder and leg foremost, and when it is completed, line will be formed as follows:—

Shoulder-Arms, Form Line, Quick-March.—The ranks in rear will move up to their proper places in two deep.

Order-Arms. As usual.

Stand at-Ease. As usual.

9. *Review Exercise in two Ranks.*

The exercise should also be practised in two ranks, without intervals, thus:—the men standing in the formation with intervals described in the preceding Section, will receive the command *Form Ranks, Quick-March;* on which the left files of each rank will move up between the right files; the right (or left) files will then be faced about, so that the movements may be performed, by alternate men, to the front and rear at the same time.

10. *Review Exercise in Quick Time.*

When the men are perfect in the exercise, it may be performed without any further words of command than *Review Exercise in Quick Time—Guard,* upon which they will go regularly through the movements, executing them smartly, but resting a pause of slow time between each motion.

PART IV.

FORMATION AND EVOLUTIONS OF A BATTALION.

GENERAL PRINCIPLES.

I.

Application of Squad and Company Drill.—The evolutions of a battalion are effected by a combination of the minor movements that have been described in the squad and company drill. The rules already laid down in Parts I. and II. for the positions and movements of officers, non-commissioned officers, and privates, are applicable, with very few exceptions, to all the movements of a company, when in the battalion. As they have been fully explained, it will not be necessary to repeat them in this Part, but any deviation from them will be distinctly specified.

II.

Battalions to move as component Parts of a Brigade.—The formations and movements of a company are explained in Part II., as having reference to the evolutions of a battalion; in like manner the evolutions of a battalion should be performed with a constant view to the more extended movements of a brigade. Commanding officers, therefore, when drilling their battalions singly, should accustom themselves to make their changes of position, and their formations, on fixed battalion points, dressed on previously determined alignments.

RT IV.

D EVOLUTIONS OF TTALION.

PRINCIPLES.

I.

nd Company Drill.—The evo- effected by a combination of ıt have been described in the The rules already laid down in tions and movements of officers, and privates, are applicable, with the movements of a company, they have been fully explained, epeat them in this Part, but any distinctly specified.

II.

omponent Parts of a Brigade.— ıents of a company are explained ence to the evolutions of a bat- evolutions of a battalion should tant view to the more extended Commanding officers, there- ttalions singly, should accustom hanges of position, and their for- n points, dressed on previously

III.

Words of Command.—Words of command must be given as described in the general principles of Part I. Every commanding officer of a battalion must give his commands loud enough to be heard by the leaders of other corps, who may be dependent on his movements.

IV.

Mounted Officers.—1. The field officers and adjutant, when with the battalion, are at all times to be mounted, in order to take up ground, dress points and pivots, correct mistakes, and circulate orders. They should always know the number of files in the battalion and in its companies, and be able to take up the distance required for the whole or any part of its front. This may be done by counting the strides of their horses when cantering; but the eye will be found the most convenient and accurate guide in judging distances. The majors and adjutant, when they are not marking points, must afford every assistance to the commanding officer during a manœuvre, and move to their places when it is done.

2. When only one major is present the senior captain should, if practicable, be mounted. When this cannot be done, the adjutant will take the place of the junior major; if only one mounted officer is present, besides the commanding officer, he must be prepared to dress the coverers from either flank or to give distant points, as may be required; the commander must also assist in dressing the coverers, and the serjeant-major will be available for that duty so far as it can be performed on foot.

V.

Giving Points.—When mounted officers give points, they must place their horses at right angles with the alignment, facing towards it, and in deploying into or forming line the horses' heads will be dressed at arm's length from the

alignment. The dismounted points will be given, as described in Part II., General Principles XIX., Rule 3, by the serjeants, whose bodies will be dressed in the same line as the horses' heads.

VI.

Alignment and Points of Formation.—1. An alignment, as explained in Part II., is the imaginary straight line that lies between any two given points. The extremity of the alignment upon which a formation is made, and from which all intermediate points are dressed, is called the Point of Appui. The other extremity, upon which the line, or intermediate points, are dressed, is called the Distant Point.

2. To enable intermediate points to take up their covering correctly in an alignment, a second point will occasionally be required outside of the point of appui, as a guide to the distant points; this point must be correctly dressed on the prolongation of the alignment. By means of successive points covering on this base, a formation may be prolonged in a straight line, to any extent.

3. In the deployment of a single battalion the base points of the company of formation, which must be correctly dressed from the point of appui, will be a sufficient guide for the coverers of the remaining companies.

4. When battalions, or companies of a battalion, come up successively into line, the outward flank of the last formed and halted body is always to be considered as the point of appui for the succeeding one.

5. Soldiers must always look towards the battalion point of appui for their dressing.

6. The dressing and covering of all pivots and points must be corrected by a field officer, from the point of appui.

7. As a general rule, the major nearest to the point of formation will dress the coverers or pivots. The senior

l points will be given, as
al Principles XIX., Rule 3,
will be dressed in the same

.

ormation.—1. An alignment,
imaginary straight line that
oints. The extremity of the
tion is made, and from which
essed, is called the Point of
upon which the line, or inter-
called the Distant Point.
oints to take up their covering
econd point will occasionally
t of appui, as a guide to the
st be correctly dressed on the
t. By means of successive
formation may be prolonged
t.
a single battalion the base
mation, which must be cor-
of appui, will be a sufficient
emaining companies.
panies of a battalion, come up
ard flank of the last formed
be considered as the point of

k towards the battalion point,

ing of all pivots and points
ficer, from the point of appui.
major nearest to the point of
erers or pivots. The senior

major will dress the coverers or pivots when the formation is on the centre of the battalion.

8. The adjutant will mark the outward flank of the battalion when a distant point is required. When the formation is on the centre, the junior major will mark the left and the adjutant the right of the battalion.

VII.

Degrees of March.—1. The slow step is only applicable to purposes of parade.

2. The quick march is the usual pace to be applied to all general movements of battalions or greater bodies in column or line.

3. The double march cannot be applied to the movements of large bodies of troops for a longer distance than is required in a charge, or a short rush to seize a position; it may be used occasionally in the movements of companies, sub-divisions, or sections, during the internal formations of a battalion.

VIII.

Bayonets to be fixed.—Field movements and firings are to be performed with fixed bayonets, except by rifle corps and by other troops when acting as light infantry. See Part II., General Principles, XIX., Rule 9.

IX.

Covering Serjeants.—As a general rule, whenever the captain moves from the front rank the covering serjeant will take his place and preserve it till he returns; when both move out during a formation in line, the rear-rank man of the pivot file will move up and keep the place for the captain.

X.

Order of Companies to be changed.—A company must be accustomed to move in all the different positions it can hold in the battalion; the order of the companies should

therefore be changed frequently, and each company in turn be ordered to lead the column.

XI.

Inversion of Companies.—A battalion must be practised in forming or deploying in inverted order, and in wheeling into line to the reverse flank. When companies lose their order, if in column, the officers will take post as in column right in front, whatever company may happen to be in front; they may, if required, tell off afresh from the front, as directed in Section 1 of this Part; if in line, the officers will be on the right of their companies as usual, and they will tell off, if required, from the right, as directed in Section 2 of this Part. If the battalion is simply inverted it is not necessary to re-number.

XII.

A Battalion dispersed, re-assembling.—A battalion should frequently be practised in assembling when dispersed or in confusion; for this purpose, the covering serjeants should first be placed at quarter distance right in front, facing towards the supposed enemy; the bugle will then sound THE ASSEMBLE, or the words FORM ON THE COVERERS will be given, on which each company will form on its covering serjeant, as described in the general principles of Part II.

XIII.

Colour Party.—The colour party will always move independently from one formation to another, by word of command from the officer carrying the Queen's colour.

A Battalion on Parade.

S. 1. *Formation of a Battalion on Parade in Open Column, Right in Front.*—Plate XXIII.

Companies having been inspected by squads on their private parades will form company on the *Close* being sounded.

PLATE XXIII.

ently, and each company in turn
mn.

XI.

-A battalion must be practised in
verted order, and in wheeling into
When companies lose their order,
will take post as in column right
ny may happen to be in front;
ll off afresh from the front, as
his Part; if in line, the officers
heir companies as usual, and they
from the right, as directed in
f the battalion is simply inverted
mber.

XII.

e-assembling.—A battalion should
assembling when dispersed or in
, the covering serjeants should first
nce right in front, facing towards
he bugle will then sound THE
S FORM ON THE COVERERS will
company will form on its covering
he general principles of Part II.

XIII.

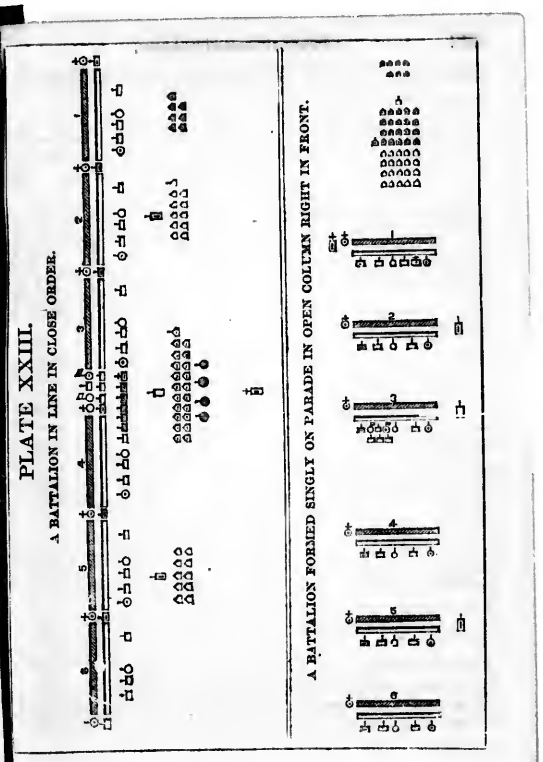
colour party will always move
formation to another, by word of
r carrying the Queen's colour.

LION ON PARADE.

---

ttalion on Parade in Open Column,
ront.—Plate XXIII.

een inspected by squads on their
rm company on the *Close* being



As a
open co

Com
the bat
desirab
with co

The
directe
tion of
flanks
on an
from t
being

On
march
will be

Eve
Sectio
forme
right,
betwe
men
will b
pace
and f

Th
is on
senio
of th
from
adjut
centr
retire

As a general rule, a battalion will assemble on parade in open column right in front.

Companies may be equalized in point of numbers when the battalion is formed for field movement; but it is also desirable that a battalion should be accustomed to exercise with companies of unequal strength.

The companies having been told off and proved, as directed in Part II., the covering serjeants, under the direction of the adjutant, will mark the spots on which the pivot flanks of their respective companies are to rest in column on any given alignment; each taking sufficient distance from the serjeant in front of him, to allow of his company being wheeled into line.

On the *Advance* being sounded, the companies will be marched upon their covering serjeants into column, arms will be ordered, and the men directed to stand at ease.

Every company will be arranged as directed in Part II., Section 2. The colours, each carried by an officer, will be formed in an independent party; the Queen's colour on the right, the regimental colour on the left, with a serjeant between them, and two non-commissioned officers or steady men with a serjeant in the centre, in the rear rank. They will be posted in rear of the right centre company, at one pace distance from the rear rank, covering the third, fourth, and fifth files from the pivot flank.

The usual post of the commanding officer in open column is on the pivot flank of the leading company; that of the senior major, two paces from the reverse flank of the centre of the right wing, and that of the second major, two paces from the reverse flank of the centre of the left wing. The adjutant is posted two paces from the reverse flank of the right centre company. When a column is ordered to advance, or retire, the major of the leading wing will place himself in

rear of the pivot flank of the second company from the front, to superintend the direction, keeping clear of the line of company leaders.

When a battalion is formed singly on parade the band and drums will be placed in several ranks, twelve paces in front of the leading company; the pioneers, formed two deep, and led by a corporal, will be six paces in front of the band. When a battalion is formed in open column with others, the band and drums will be placed two paces from the reverse flank of the centre of the battalion, the pioneers two paces from the reverse flank of the leading company. When the battalion is manœuvring the band will remain on the reverse flank, but the drummers, fifers, buglers, and pioneers will join their companies, taking post in the supernumerary rank.

When a battalion is assembled for the purpose of exercise it will be told off into wings, and the companies numbered from front to rear, odd numbers being right companies, even numbers left.

TELL OFF THE BATTALION.	On the words TELL OFF THE BATTALION from the commanding officer, the captains will take one pace to the front, face inwards, and number thus; the captain of the leading company will call out *number One, Right company.* The captain of number two, *number Two, Left company;* and so on to the rear of the column.
Nos 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, RIGHT WING. Nos 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, LEFT WING. EYES—FRONT.	The commanding officer will next name the companies which are to form the right wing, and those which are to form the left. He will then give the words EYES—FRONT, upon which the captains will resume their places.

ie second company from the
ction, keeping clear of the line

d singly on parade the band
n several ranks, twelve paces
any; the pioneers, formed two
vill be six paces in front of the
formed in open column with
will be placed two paces from
e of the battalion, the pioneers
flank of the leading company,
œuvring the band will remain
drummers, fifers, buglers, and
anies, taking post in the super-

bled for the purpose of exercise
, and the companies numbered
mbers being right companies,

words TELL OFF THE BAT-
rom the commanding officer,
ns will take one pace to the
e inwards, and number thus;
n of the leading company will
umber One, Right company. The
number two, *number Two, Left*
and so on to the rear of the

nmanding officer will next name
anies which are to form the
g, and those which are to form
He will then give the words
ONT, upon which the captains
e their places.

When companies in column are required to take open order for inspection, they will be considered as independent companies; and on the words REAR RANKS TAKE OPEN ORDER, from the commanding officer, the company officers and covering serjeants will place themselves as if taking open order in line, namely, the captain in front of the second file from the right, &c.

On the word MARCH, open order will be taken, as described in Part II., Section 1, the supernumerary rank stepping back four paces. Each captain will receive the inspecting officer with a salute, and follow him during the inspection of his company, the men standing with shouldered arms. As the inspection of each company is completed, the captain will close his ranks and direct his men to order arms and stand at ease, the officers and covering serjeant resuming their proper places in column.

S. 2. Wheeling into Line from Open Column.

LEFT (OR RIGHT) WHEEL INTO LINE.

On the words LEFT (OR RIGHT) WHEEL INTO LINE, each company will proceed as described in Part II., Section 4, except that the covering serjeant of the leading company only will run out and, placing himself in a line with the pivot men, mark the spot where the right (or left) of his company is to rest when the wheel is completed; the covering serjeants of the other companies, if the column is right in front, will place themselves on the right of their companies; but if the column is left in front they will remain steady; a field officer will dress the

Steady. pivots from the rear of the column, and give the word *Steady* when they are in line.

QUICK-MARCH. On the words QUICK MARCH, the companies will wheel as directed in Part II., Section 4; the covering serjeants of all but the leading company, if right is in front, will wheel with their companies; but if left is in front, they will move up to the right of their companies during the wheel, and preserve the place of the captains. The colours will wheel up into line between the two centre companies.

No.—, Halt, Dress. Each captain will call the number of his company and give the word *Halt*, followed by the word *Dress*, when the wheeling man is two paces from the flank of the company next in line. Having dressed his men, he will give the word *Eyes-Front*, and take post on the right of his front rank. The pivot man of each company must keep up his right arm until the company that has wheeled up to him receives the words *Eyes-Front*. The captain of the company that wheels up to the centre will dress the colour party with his own men.

Eyes—Front.

A battalion in line may be told off from the right in the same manner as it is told off in column, the captains taking a pace to the front and facing to the left.

For wheeling into Open Column from Line, see p. 277, s. 26.

n the rear of the column,
he word *Steady* when they are

ords QUICK MARCH, the com-
wheel as directed in Part II.,
the covering serjeants of all
ading company, if right is in
wheel with their companies;
is in front, they will move up
t of their companies during
and preserve the place of the
The colours will wheel up into
n the two centre companies.
ptain will call the number of
ny and give the word *Halt*,
y the word *Dress*, when the
man is two paces from the
the company next in line,
essed his men, he will give the
-Front, and take post on the
s front rank. The pivot man
mpany must keep up his right
the company that has wheeled
receives the words *Eyes-Front*.
in of the company that wheels
centre will dress the colour
his own men.
told off from the right in the
in column, the captains taking
g to the left.
mn from Line, see p. 277, s. 26.

FORMATION AND MOVEMENTS OF A BATTALION IN LINE.

GENERAL PRINCIPLES.

I.

Formation of Lines.—Lines formed for defence may be curved, following the advantages of the ground. But those formed for attack must be straight, or the troops could not advance in order.

II.

Marching in Line.—Correct marching in line is the most important, and, at the same time, the most difficult of military movements; it is the movement by which soldiers are brought into immediate contact with the enemy. In order to attain steadiness and accuracy in this march it is of the first importance that all officers, non-commissioned officers, and privates should be well acquainted with the principles laid down for the instruction of the soldier in marching, which apply especially to the men of a battalion when marching in line.

III.

Passing over Inequalities of Ground.—When soldiers in line pass over mounds or across hollows, they must be taught to step a little longer than the usual pace, to enable them to keep up with those who are moving on level ground.

IV.

Retiring in Line.—A battalion should never unnecessarily stand faced to the rear when about to retire: it, therefore, should not be faced about till everything is ready for its instant march.

V.

Flank Base Points and Coverers.—In all deployments, and formations of line, on either flank company, a serjeant will be placed in front of each flank file of that company as a base, facing to the battalion point of appui; a covering serjeant will also run out from each company as it arrives within twenty paces of its point of formation, and will mark the distance required for his company, covering in the line established by the base points. The base points will remain steady until the whole line is formed, when the major who has dressed them will give the word *Steady*, on which they will fall in in their proper places. Each covering serjeant who is not marking the base will remain steady until the second company from him receives the words *Eyes—Front*, when he will fall in.

VI.

Central Base Points.—When a line is formed on the two centre companies or sub-divisions, the centre serjeant will step out, face to his right, and give a centre base point, the serjeant in rear of him stepping up to occupy his place. The covering serjeants of the two centre companies will mark the outward flanks of their respective companies, facing inwards; the serjeant-major will move up to the coverer of the right centre company, and will assist in dressing these three base points. When a single company gives a central base, a serjeant will mark each of its flanks facing inwards. The covering serjeants of the remaining companies will take up their covering in succession on the central base.

VII.

Points to be kept clear.—As it is of great importance that the base points and coverers of a battalion forming line should be kept clear, companies must upon all occasions be halted in rear of them, and then be dressed up into line.

V.

Coverers.—In all deployments, ther flank company, a serjeant ach flank file of that company lion point of appui; a covering rom each company as it arrives point of formation, and will for his company, covering in base points. The base points he whole line is formed, when them will give the word *Steady*, in their proper places. Each t marking the base will remain mpany from him receives the e will fall in.

VI.

hen a line is formed on the two visions, the centre serjeant will nd give a centre base point, the epping up to occupy his place. the two centre companies will of their respective companies, nt-major will move up to the re company, and will assist in points. When a single company ant will mark each of its flanks ring serjeants of the remaining eir covering in succession on the

VII.

As it is of great importance that rers of a battalion forming line anies must upon all occasions be l then be dressed up into line.

VIII.

Closing to correct Distances.—When too much or too little distance has been taken in forming or wheeling into line, the error will be corrected by the side step, as described in Part II., Section 22. Such closing will always be made either to or from the centre of the battalion. If closing towards the centre, the captain will close with his company; but if opening out to admit files, he will stand fast till they have all moved up. When a whole wing of a battalion is closed the captains will remain in their places and will close with the men, the commanding officer giving the word HALT; if the captains are required to move out to halt their companies the commander will name the companies thus, Nos. 1, 2, 3, 4, AND 5, &c.

FORMATION AND MOVEMENTS.

S. 3. Formation of the Battalion in Line.—Plate XXIII.

When a battalion is formed in line there is to be no interval between the companies. Each company will be arranged as described in Part II., Section 1, except the one on the left of the line, which will have its senior subaltern officer on the left of the front rank, covered by a supernumerary serjeant.

The colour party formed as described in Section 1 of this Part will be placed between the two centre companies.

When necessary, a battalion may be told off in line, from right to left, in the same manner as it is told off in column from front to rear.

For the purpose of exercise when the battalion is alone, the commanding officer may occasionally be in front; but, as his post, when the regiment is in brigade, is always in rear, it is necessary to accustom the men to receive their words of command from that direction. When the battalion

is ordered to fire or to advance in line, the commanding officer will usually be in rear of the colours, at about 20 paces from the supernumerary rank.

The place of the first major will be six paces in rear of the centre of the right wing, that of the second major six paces in rear of the centre of the left wing; the adjutant will be six paces in rear of the colours.

The pioneers will be assembled in rear of the centre of the right company, formed two deep, and nine paces from the supernumerary rank.

The drummers, fifers, and buglers of the battalion will be assembled in two divisions, nine paces in rear of the supernumerary rank of the second companies from the right and left.

The band is placed nine paces from the supernumerary rank, in rear of the centre of the battalion, two deep, at loose files, occupying no more space than is necessary.

The staff officers, consisting of the paymaster, surgeon, assistant surgeon, and quartermaster, will be three paces behind the band. The staff serjeants will be formed in rear of the centre of the battalion in line with the supernumerary rank.

Before commencing to manœuvre, the drummers, fifers, buglers, and pioneers should be ordered to take post with their respective companies.

S. 4. A Battalion in Line taking Open Order and resuming Close Order.—Plate XXIV.

REAR RANK TAKE OPEN ORDER.

1. *Taking Open Order.*—On the word ORDER, each company will proceed as directed in Part II., Section 1, except that the right-hand men only, of the rear rank of each company, and the left-hand man of the rear rank of the whole line, will step back to mark the ground for

ance in line, the commanding
r of the colours, at about 20
y rank.
jor will be six paces in rear of
, that of the second major six
of the left wing; the adjutant
e colours.
mbled in rear of the centre of
two deep, and nine paces from

buglers of the battalion will be
nine paces in rear of the super-
ond companies from the right

paces from the supernumerary
of the battalion, two deep, at
re space than is necessary.
ing of the paymaster, surgeon,
rtermaster, will be three paces
ff serjeants will be formed in
attalion in line with the super-

nanœuvre, the drummers, fifers,
d be ordered to take post with

---

aking Open Order and resuming
r.—Plate XXIV.

ing Open Order.—On the word
each company will proceed as
in Part II., Section 1, except
right-hand men only, of the rear
each company, and the left-hand
the rear rank of the whole line,
back to mark the ground for

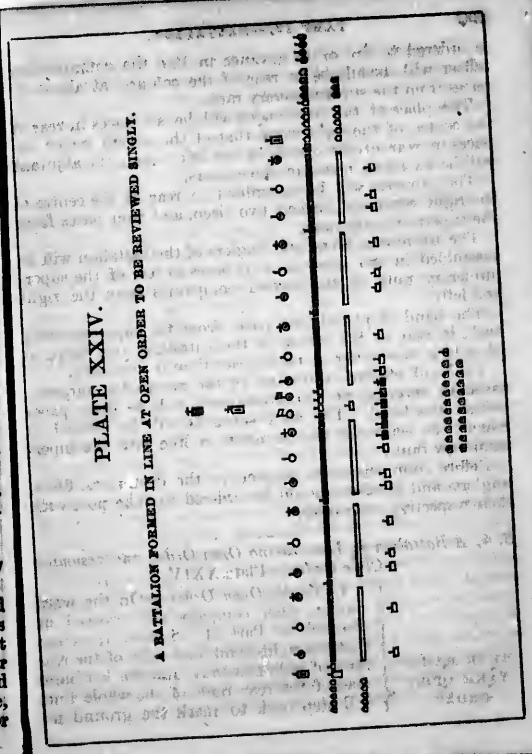


PLATE XXIV.

A BATTALION FORMED IN LINE AT OPEN ORDER TO BE REVIEWED SINGLY.

the rear rank, and their covering will be corrected by the serjeant-major from the right; the senior major will move up to the right of the front rank, and the second major and adjutant to the left.

MARCH.

On the word MARCH, each company will proceed as directed in Part II., Section 1, except that the supernumerary serjeants will only dress the rear ranks of their respective companies. The serjeant-major will dress the whole of the supernumerary rank, give the words *Eyes-Front*, and then fall in on the right of the staff serjeants. The officers carrying the colours will take three paces to the front, and dress with the line of officers; the serjeants in their rear stepping up to replace them in the front rank.

The band, drummers, and pioneers will remain as posted at close order. The senior major will move up on the right of the line of officers, and will dress them; the second major will move up on the left of the line of officers, the adjutant will remain on the left of the front rank. The staff officers, viz., the paymaster, surgeon, assistant surgeon, and quartermaster, will place themselves on the right of the front rank, at one pace distance. The lieutenant-colonel will place himself six, and the colonel, if present, ten paces in front of the colours.

Steady.

On the word *Steady* from the senior major, the officers will port their swords, and every one will remain steady.

When the battalion is reviewed singly, the divisions of drummers will be formed two deep on each flank of the line; the pioneers will be formed two deep on the right of the drummers who are on that flank, and the staff will form on the right of the whole.

REAR RANK TAKE CLOSE-ORDER.

2. *Taking Close Order.*—On the word ORDER, each company will proceed as directed in Part II., Section 1. The officers carrying the colours will face to the right with the rest, the mounted officers will turn their horses' heads to the right, the staff and the drummers and pioneers, if on the flanks, face inwards.

MARCH.

On the word MARCH, the whole will resume their places in close order, each company proceeding as directed in Part II.

S. 5. Advancing and Retiring in Line.

THE LINE WILL ADVANCE.

1. *Advancing in Line.*—On the caution from the commanding officer, the centre serjeant will select points to march on, under the superintendence of a mounted officer, who will give the word *Steady* as a signal, when the line of direction is determined.

QUICK-MARCH.

On the word MARCH, the whole battalion will step off, the files touching lightly towards the centre, the serjeant who is between the colours directing. The serjeant-major, under the direction of a mounted officer, will remain halted in rear of the centre, until the line has advanced 20 or 30 paces, to ascertain if

wed singly, the divisions of
deep on each flank of the
med two deep on the right
hat flank, and the staff will
.

Close Order.—On the word
company will proceed as di-
rt II., Section 1. The officers
colours will face to the right
st, the mounted officers will
orses' heads to the right, the
he drummers and pioneers, if
s, face inwards.

word MARCH, the whole will re-
places in close order, each com-
eding as directed in Part II.

---

nd Retiring in Line.

ncing in Line.—On the cau-
the commanding officer, the
rjeant will select points to
under the superintendence of
d officer, who will give the
dy as a signal, when the line
n is determined.

word MARCH, the whole batta-
tep off, the files touching lightly
the centre, the serjeant who
n the colours directing. The
major, under the direction of a
officer, will remain halted in
the centre, until the line has
20 or 30 paces, to ascertain if

the direction of the centre serjeant is correct; he will then follow in rear.

BATTALION—HALT. On the word HALT, the battalion will halt, and every man will remain perfectly steady.

THE LINE WILL RETIRE. RIGHT ABOUT—FACE. 2. *Retiring in Line.*—On the word RETIRE, the colour party will face about, and a mounted officer and the serjeant-major will pass through the ranks, and place themselves behind it to superintend the direction of the centre serjeant; the former giving the word *Steady* when the line of direction is determined. On the word FACE, the battalion will face about.

QUICK—MARCH. On the word MARCH, the battalion will step off, rear rank leading, files touching lightly to the centre, the serjeant in the centre of the rear rank directing.

BATTALION—HALT—FRONT. On the words HALT—FRONT, the battalion will halt and face to the right about; the serjeant-major and mounted officer returning to the proper rear through the line, the two left files of the right centre company taking two paces to the rear, and one pace outwards from each other, to make way for them, and resuming their places as soon as they have passed.

S. 6. *Charging in Line.*

PREPARE TO CHARGE, CHARGE. The soldiers of a battalion in line will charge as described in Part III., Sections 1 and 2, the officers and non-commissioned officers remaining in their usual places.

BATTALION HALT. — On the word HALT, the battalion will halt, the front and rear ranks coming to the shoulder; and the whole will stand perfectly steady in whatever position they may be.

S. 7. *Dressing a Battalion in Line.*

When it is necessary to dress a battalion after an advance or retreat in line, the commanding officer will give the words THE BATTALION WILL DRESS BY THE RIGHT (or LEFT), COVERERS—PACES TO THE FRONT, on which the captains, if the battalion is to dress by the right, will take one pace to their front and one pace to their left, the coverers moving up into their places; if by the left, the captains will change their flanks, the coverers making way for them by falling to the rear, and then moving up into the places they have left as soon as they have passed. The captains will remain in rear till the coverers have moved to the front; in both cases the officer on the left of the line will take one pace to his left, to make room for his coverer to move up into the front rank.

On the words QUICK-MARCH, the covering serjeants, including the coverer of the officer on the left of the line, will move out straight to their front, with shouldered arms, the given number of paces, the captains and the officer on the left of the line taking post as soon as they have moved; the coverers will then face towards the named flank, and cover, recovering arms as they face; when they are in a line, the field officer who has dressed them will give the word *Steady*.

The commanding officer will then give the words QUICK MARCH, and each captain, when within two paces of the alignment, will halt his company, move out, and dress it from the named flank; this done, he will give the words *No.—, Eyes—Front*, and fall in.

word HALT, the battalion will
ront and rear ranks coming to
ler; and the whole will stand
steady in whatever position
be.

Battalion in Line.

ess a battalion after an advance
manding officer will give the
LL DRESS BY THE RIGHT (or
TO THE FRONT, on which the
to dress by the right, will take
d one pace to their left, the
heir places; if by the left, the
anks, the coverers making way
rear, and then moving up into
as soon as they have passed.
rear till the coverers have moved
the officer on the left of the line
t, to make room for his coverer
ank.

ECH, the covering serjeants, in-
fficer on the left of the line, will
ront, with shouldered arms, the
captains and the officer on the
as soon as they have moved;
towards the named flank, and
they face; when they are in a
has dressed them will give the

will then give the words QUICK
when within two paces of the
mpany, move out, and dress it
s done, he will give the words
l in.

When all have completed their dressing, the field officer will give a second word *Steady*, on which the coverers will resume their places in line, the captains making way for them, as above described.

S. 8. Advancing and Retiring by Wings.

THE BATTALION WILL FIRE AND ADVANCE BY WINGS. *Left Wing,— Fire a Volley, at — Yards, Ready—Present,*	1. *Firing and Advancing by Wings.*—The commanding officer will give the caution THE BATTALION WILL FIRE AND ADVANCE BY WINGS, on which the junior major will order the left wing to fire.
Right Wing— By the Left. Quick—March. Right Wing—Halt.	The instant the left wing has fired, the senior major will give the words *Quick—March* to the right wing, and when it has advanced 30 paces he will give the word *Halt*.
Left Wing, Shoulder—Arms, By the Right, Quick—March, Right Wing Fire a Volley at — Yards —Ready, Present.	The left wing, having loaded, will shoulder arms and advance, and as the junior major gives the words *Quick—March*, the senior will order the right wing to fire. In this manner they will move alternately, each passing the other by 30 paces, the advanced wing being ordered to fire as the rear wing receives the words, *Quick—March*.

If a battalion is on the march when required to advance by wings, it will first be halted, and will then proceed as above described.

THE BATTALION WILL FIRE AND RETIRE BY WINGS.
Left Wing Fire a Volley at — Yards —Ready, Present.
Shoulder—Arms, Right about—Face, By the Left Quick—March, Halt—Front.
Right Wing Fire a Volley at — Yards —Ready, Present.
Shoulder—Arms, Right about—Face. By the Right, Quick—March. Halt—Front.
Left Wing—Ready, &c.

2. *Firing and Retiring by Wings.*—The commanding officer will give the caution THE BATTALION WILL FIRE AND RETIRE BY WINGS; on which the junior major will order the left wing to fire, and when loaded, to shoulder, face about, and retire. When it has marched 15 paces he will order it to halt and front.

As the left wing halts, the senior major will order the right wing to fire, and when loaded to shoulder, face about, and retire until 15 paces beyond the left wing, when he will order it to halt and front, on which the junior major will give the words, *Ready—Present*, &c., and thus the wings will proceed alternately, each passing the other by 15 paces, every due despatch being made in re-loading.

3. If a battalion receives the command FIRE AND RETIRE BY WINGS while marching to the rear, the right wing will be ordered to halt and front; the left wing will continue to move on fifteen paces, and will then be halted, on which the right wing will be ordered to fire, and both will proceed as already described.

In advancing as well as in retiring one colour will move on the inward flank of each wing, the two centre serjeants will move with the right wing in their usual places, next to the Queen's colour. During the movement the men will continue to touch towards the colours; the centre serjeant leading the right wing, and the officer carrying the regimental colour the left. The adjutant will move in rear of

Firing and Retiring by Wings.

e commanding officer will the caution THE BATTALION L FIRE AND RETIRE BY WINGS; which the junior major will the left wing to fire, and loaded, to shoulder, face t, and retire. When it has hed 15 paces he will order it alt and front.

s the left wing halts, the senior or will order the right wing to and when loaded to shoulder, about, and retire until 15 s beyond the left wing, when will order it to halt and front, on ch the junior major will give the ds, *Ready—Present*, &c., and s the wings will proceed alter- ely, each passing the other by paces, every due despatch being le in re-loading.

he command FIRE AND RETIRE to the rear, the right wing will nt; the left wing will continue d will then be halted, on which ed to fire, and both will proceed

in retiring one colour will move h wing, the two centre serjeants ng in their usual places, next to ng the movement the men will the colours; the centre serjeant d the officer carrying the regi- The adjutant will move in rear of

the inner flank of the right wing, and the serjeant-major in rear of the inner flank of the left wing.

In advancing and retiring by wings, the rear wing may at any time be brought up in line with the other.

S. 9. A Battalion in Line passing Obstacles.

If the obstacles are small, and opposite to parts of the battalion, the files whose progress is interrupted by them, will break off in the same manner as files are broken off from the flank of a company in column. The moment the obstacle is passed, the files must move up again to the front. Should the breadth of the obstacle be found to decrease as the line advances, the files will form up successively as there is room for them, if it increases in breadth, additional files will at once be broken off. Great care must be taken that the men who remain in line continue to move straight to their front, neither closing on the intervals left by the men who have fallen to the rear, nor pressing upon the remainder of the battalion should the obstacle increase in breadth.

In breaking off, files should turn towards their own companies; thus, if an obstacle presents itself in front of the flanks of two adjoining companies, the files of the company on the right will turn to the right and wheel to the left, and those of the company on the left will turn to the left and wheel to the right. When the obstacle is in front of the centre of the company, as a general rule, the files will turn to the right and wheel to the left. *See* Plate XXV.

If a company, or subdivision, is required to break off, it will move by fours, or if files break off successively till they amount to a subdivision they will form fours.

Should a line be halted while it is broken by obstacles, such as pools of water, marshes or low bushes, the files that are broken off will form in rear of them, in lines parallel to the front; in this manner, the line will appear to the enemy as though it were unbroken, and every man will be able to fire. *See* Plate XXV.

FROM THE RIGHT (OF LEFT) OF COMPANIES PASS BY FOURS TO THE FRONT. FORM FOURS—RIGHT, LEFT—WHEEL, OR FORM FOURS—LEFT RIGHT—WHEEL.

When a battalion is advancing, and the obstacles are such as to require all the companies to break into fours, the commanding officer will give the caution, FROM THE RIGHT (or LEFT) OF COMPANIES, PASS BY FOURS TO THE FRONT, followed by the words, FORM FOURS—RIGHT, LEFT—WHEEL, OR FORM FOURS—LEFT, RIGHT—WHEEL, and may name any company to direct thus: No. 4—COMPANY OF DIRECTION. The captains will place themselves on that flank of the leading fours which is nearest to the company of direction, and keep their distance from it, as far as circumstances will allow. When no company is named, that company will direct which would be at the head of the column if the words FRONT—TURN, were given.

When the ground will permit, the companies may be reformed into line by the words FRONT FORM—COMPANIES, or in DOUBLE TIME, FRONT FORM—COMPANIES; if necessary, they may be halted and fronted into column, and then wheeled into line. When emerging from a wood, the first company that approaches the edge must halt and wait for the rest to come up, they will then move out into the open together.

If all the companies of a battalion retiring in line are required to break into fours, the commands will be, FROM THE PROPER RIGHT (OF LEFT) OF COMPANIES PASS BY

PLATE XXV.

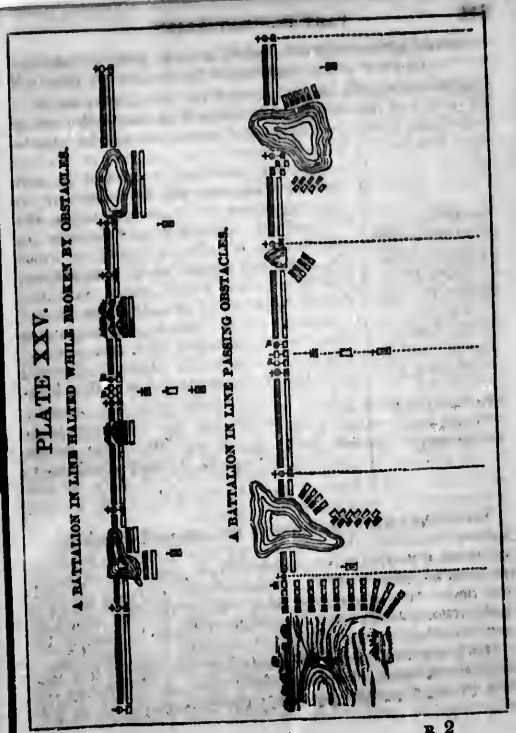
hile it is broken by obstacles, es or low bushes, the files that ar of them, in lines parallel to e line will appear to the enemy and every man will be able to

battalion is advancing, and les are such as to require all nies to break into fours, the ng officer will give the caution, RIGHT (OR LEFT) OF COM- ASS BY FOURS TO THE FRONT, y the words, FORM FOURS— FT—WHEEL, OF FORM FOURS IGHT—WHEEL, and may name ny to direct thus: No. 4—COM- DIRECTION. The captains will selves on that flank of the lead- which is nearest to the company n, and keep their distance from as circumstances will allow. company is named, that com- direct which would be at the e column if the words FRONT were given.

mit, the companies may be re- FRONT FORM—COMPANIES, OF RM—COMPANIES; if necessary, d into column, and then wheeled from a wood, the first company st halt and wait for the rest to e out into the open together.

battalion retiring in line are , the commands will be, FROM FT) OF COMPANIES PASS BY

PLATE XXV.



FOURS TO THE REAR. FORM FOURS—LEFT, RIGHT—WHEEL; OR FORM FOURS—RIGHT, LEFT—WHEEL.

When retiring by fours, the companies may be ordered to form line, and to continue retiring, by the words REAR FORM-COMPANIES, FORWARD; or they may be halted and fronted in column, and then wheeled into line to the original front; or they may be ordered to form to the original front by the command RIGHT (or LEFT) ABOUT FORM-COMPANIES. In the latter case the coverers, and the supernumerary serjeant of the front company of the column, should be called out, and dressed in line before the heads of their companies reach them; each company will then march upon and form round the coverer of the company that is in front of it in column, the company at the proper head of the column marching upon and forming round its supernumerary serjeant, as directed in Part II., Section 17; the remaining companies will not require their supernumeraries to mark their inner flanks.

When companies advancing or retiring from the right, as above described, are ordered to form to the front or rear, the captains will not change their flanks, which is an exception to Part II., General Principles, XIX., Rule 4.

S. 10. *Battalions in Line relieving each other.*

FROM THE RIGHT OF COMPANIES PASS BY FOURS TO THE REAR. FORM FOURS—RIGHT—RIGHT—

1. *Advancing.*—If a battalion halted in the front line is to be relieved by another advancing in its rear, it will, when the latter arrives within a company's wheeling distance, receive the command, FROM THE RIGHT OF COMPANIES PASS BY FOURS TO THE REAR, &c.; and the companies will proceed to the rear through the second line, which will throw back as many files

WHEEL.
QUICK-MARCH.

HALT—FRONT.
LEFT WHEEL INTO LINE.
QUICK—MARCH.
Halt—Dress.
FROM THE PROPER RIGHT OF COMPANIES PASS BY FOURS TO THE REAR.
FORM FOURS—LEFT, &c.

as are necessary to give them passage wherever they present themselves. The companies having passed, the files thrown back will immediately resume their places.

The retiring battalion, when in rear of the new line, may, at any distance, be ordered to halt and front into column, and may then be wheeled into line.

2. *Retiring.*—When a battalion retiring is to be relieved by another in its rear, it will on arriving at twelve paces from the latter break into fours and pass through the rear line, as above directed.

It is a general rule that the relieving line is to be kept as far as possible unbroken; the line which is being relieved will, in all cases, be the one to break into fours, or if necessary, into files.

For purposes of parade, battalions or companies may pass through each other in line, both forming four deep, and the fours of the one passing between the fours of the other; but this system should not be practised on service, where a line retiring in disorder might, while endeavouring to form fours, endanger the steadiness of the line advancing to its relief.

COLUMN MOVEMENTS.

GENERAL PRINCIPLES.

I.

Use and Advantages of Columns.—Columns are formed from line for convenience of movement. In case of attack they can readily be formed into line in any direction, or into square.

essary to give them passage
hey present themselves. The
having passed, the files thrown
mmediately resume their places.

tiring battalion, when in rear
w line, may, at any distance, be
o halt and front into column,
then be wheeled into line.

iring.—When a battalion re-
to be relieved by another in its
vill on arriving at twelve paces
e latter break into fours and
rough the rear line, as above

he relieving line is to be kept as
he line which is being relieved
one to break into fours, or if

battalions or companies may
line, both forming four deep,
assing between the fours of the
ould not be practised on service,
order might, while endeavouring
steadiness of the line advancing

MOVEMENTS.

PRINCIPLES.

I.

Columns.—Columns are formed
f movement. In case of attack
into line in any direction, or into

II.

Formation of Columns.—1. Every column must consist of a succession of companies, subdivisions, or sections, each arranged in the same manner.

2. Columns may be single, that is, formed of a succession of single companies or parts of companies; or double, that is, formed of two separate successions or rows of companies, or parts of companies, one on the flank of the other.

III.

Depth of Columns.—In open column each company, subdivision, or section, is placed at a distance equal to its own breadth from the one immediately in front of it, measuring from the heels of the front rank of the one to the heels of the front rank of the other. Consequently a battalion in open column occupies the same extent of ground that it would cover in line, less the front of the leading company. A quarter distance column occupies one fourth the space of an open column. A close column is formed with the companies at two paces distance from each other, measuring from the heels of the rear rank men of one company to the heels of the front rank men of the next.

IV.

Application of Single Columns. — Single columns are equally applicable with double columns to purposes of moving to attack, and the employment of the one in preference to the other must necessarily depend on the ground and circumstances, and can only be determined by the commander on the spot. The single column for general movements is preferable to the double column, inasmuch as it is simpler, and it can always be reduced, when passing narrow defiles, to the smallest front without danger of confusion.

V.

Application of Double Columns.—Double columns are formed upon the centre of battalions, brigades or lines, for the special purposes of advancing to the attack, and in certain cases for the passage of defiles when they occur in front of the centre. It is obvious that a column in this formation can be re-formed into line from the centre in half the time that a single column could be re-formed from either flank. On the other hand it is more complicated than a single column, and is not as susceptible of reduction of front, being liable, if diminished to less than double sections, to the confusion which may arise in narrow passes from the intermingling of files.

VI.

Application of the Quarter Distance Column.—The quarter distance column combines the convenience of moving in a small space, with the capability of forming in any manner to resist attack; it is moreover less liable to loss of distance than the open column, and is applicable to most of the changes of position of an open column, except the immediate formation of a line to a flank. Movements in quarter distance columns will generally be adopted in the evolutions of a brigade or of larger bodies.

VII.

Application of the Close Column.—The close column will be used when it is necessary to form troops in a small space. It will also be applied when contiguous columns are wheeled into mass, as will hereafter be explained, but it must not be adopted in the general evolutions of a brigade or division.

V.

umns.—Double columns are attalions, brigades or lines, for acing to the attack, and in cer-lefiles when they occur in front hat a column in this formation from the centre in half the uld be re-formed from either t is more complicated than a s susceptible of reduction of ed to less than double sections, arise in narrow passes from

VI.

Distance Column.—The quarter e convenience of moving in a ity of forming in any manner r less liable to loss of distance is applicable to most of the en column, except the imme-flank. Movements in quarter ly be adopted in the evolutions s.

VII.

lumn.—The close column will y to form troops in a small ed when contiguous columns ll hereafter be explained, but the general evolutions of a

MOVEMENTS.

S. 11. *Formation of a Battalion in Open Column.*

The rules laid down for the formation of an open column, right in front, in Section 1 of this Part, are equally applicable to the formation of an open column left in front, the colours being in rear of the third, fourth, and fifth files, from the right of the left centre company.

S. 12. *Forming Close or Quarter Distance Column from any more Open Column.*

THE COLUMN WILL CLOSE TO THE FRONT (or TO QUARTER DISTANCE ON THE FRONT COMPANY); or THE COLUMN WILL CLOSE TO THE REAR (or TO QUARTER DISTANCE ON THE REAR COMPANY), REMAINING COMPANIES RIGHT ABOUT-FACE; or THE COLUMN WILL CLOSE ON (or TO QUARTER DISTANCE ON) No.—, COMPANY. COMPANIES IN FRONT RIGHT ABOUT-FACE.

1. *Closing from the Halt.*—A column may be closed to the front, rear, or on any named company. If to the rear, or on a central company, the companies in front will be ordered to face about.

When the column is being closed to the front, the covering serjeant of the leading company will give a base point, placing himself six paces in front of his captain, facing towards him, and covering on the line of captains. If it is to be closed to the rear, the covering serjeant of the rear company will place himself six paces in rear of his captain, covering in like manner. If on the central company, no point will be required, as the captains in front and rear of the captain of the named company will be a sufficient guide to each other. In each case a field officer will superintend the covering of the captains from the battalion point of appui.

QUICK—MARCH.	On the word MARCH, the named company will stand fast, the remaining companies will close on it to the distance required, and halt as they arrive at their places, by command from their captains. Those which have faced about, if forming on a rear or central company, will be fronted. On the word *Dress*, the men will take up their dressing by themselves, the captains looking to their covering.
N°— Halt— Dress. N°— Halt—Front, Dress.	
Steady.	When the movement is completed, the field officer who has superintended the covering will give the word *Steady*, and move to his place; the covering serjeant who has given the base point, if one has been required, taking post at the same time.

2. *Formation of a Close or Quarter Distance Column.*—The arrangement of a close or quarter distance column will be the same as that of an open column, the distances only being different. The band will be formed in two ranks in the rear when the column is alone or in a line of columns, but in several ranks on the reverse flank when the column is in mass in brigade. In close column the colour party will be formed in single rank, between the two centre companies, the serjeants of the rear rank being on the right of the front rank if the column is right in front, on the left of it if the column is left in front. On the march, the major of the rear wing will superintend the direction of the column, from the rear of the line of captains.

word MARCH, the named
will stand fast, the remaining
will close on it to the dis-
ired, and halt as they arrive
aces, by command from their
Those which have faced
forming on a rear or central
will be fronted. On the
s, the men will take up their
by themselves, the captains
their covering.

the movement is completed,
fficer who has superintended
ng will give the word *Steady*,
to his place; the covering
ho has given the base point,
been required, taking post at
time.

Quarter Distance Column.—
or quarter distance column
open column, the distances
and will be formed in two
olumn is alone or in a line of
on the reverse flank when the
In close column the colour
rank, between the two centre
rear rank being on the right
n is right in front, on the left
front. On the march, the
perintend the direction of the
ine of captains.

CLOSE TO THE FRONT (OR CLOSE TO QUARTER DISTANCE ON THE LEADING COMPANY). *No.— Halt— Dress.*

3. *A Column on the March closing to the Front.*—When a column on the march is ordered to close to the front, the captain of the leading company, on the caution, will give the words *No.* 1 *Halt—Dress.* The column will then be formed as already described.

ON THE MARCH CLOSE TO THE FRONT (OR CLOSE TO QUARTER DISTANCE) ON THE LEADING COMPANY. REMAINING COMPANIES DOUBLE. *No.— Quick.*

4. *Closing to the Front without Halting.*—When a column is required to close without halting, the leading company will move on steadily in quick-time, the remaining companies will close up in double-time, resuming the quick-step in succession as they gain the distance required, by word of command from their captains.

S. 15. *A Close or Quarter Distance Column opening from the Front, Rear, or from any named Company.*

OPEN TO QUARTER (OR WHEELING) DISTANCE FROM THE FRONT.

1. *From the Front.*—If from the front, on the caution, the covering serjeant of the leading company will place himself six paces in front of his captain, facing towards him, and covering on the line of company leaders; and the adjutant will mark the spot on which the pivot flank of the rear of the column will rest, his horse's head being also dressed on the line of company leaders.

REMAINING COMPANIES RIGHT ABOUT —FACE.

The leading company will stand fast, the remaining companies will be faced about.

QUICK—MARCH.

N°—Halt—Front, Dress.

On the word MARCH, the companies facing to the rear will step off, the leader of the rear company marching upon the head of the adjutant's horse. The captain of the second company will count his paces, and having gained the distance required, will give the words *Halt—Front, Dress.* The other captains will commence to count the requisite number of paces, as the previous company receives the word *Halt.* Each captain, the moment he has fronted, will correct his covering and remain steady, the company touching lightly to him, and taking up its dressing.

When the ground is rough the captains of companies may be assisted by their covering serjeants, who will run out in succession, and mark the proper distances, clear of the flank of the column, the officers halting and fronting their companies when in line with their serjeants, who will instantly resume their places in the column.

OPEN TO QUARTER (or WHEELING) DISTANCE FROM THE REAR.

2. *Opening from the Rear.*—If the column is to open from the rear, on the caution, the covering serjeant of the rear company will place himself six paces in rear of his captain, covering on him and the other captains, and the adjutant will mark the alignment at the wheeling distance of a company in front of the spot on which the pivot flank of the head of the column will rest.

g company will stand fast,
g companies will be faced

ord MARCH, the companies
rear will step off, the leader
ompany marching upon the
djutant's horse. The captain
company will count his paces,
ained the distance required,
words *Halt—Front, Dress.*
captains will commence to
quisite number of paces, as
company receives the word
captain, the moment he has
correct his covering and
dy, the company touching
n, and taking up its dressing.

the captains of companies
ring serjeants, who will run
he proper distances, clear of
officers halting and fronting
vith their serjeants, who will
the column.

g from the Rear.—If the
o open from the rear, on the
covering serjeant of the rear
l place himself six paces in
aptain, covering on him and
ptains, and the adjutant will
gnment at the wheeling dis-
ompany in front of the spot
e pivot flank of the head of
will rest.

REMAINING COMPANIES, QUICK—MARCH.

N°—*Halt.*

N°—*Dress.*

On the word MARCH, all but the rear company will step off, the captain of the leading company marching on the head of the adjutant's horse, each captain in succession will halt the company in front of him, when it has gained its proper distance. He will then face about, correct his covering on the base points, front, and give the word *Dress* to his company.

---

3. *Opening from a Central Company.*—If the column is required to open from a central company, the captain of the named company will be the point of appui for the battalion, and the companies in front and rear of it will proceed as already described, the junior major giving a point for the captains of the left wing to march upon, and the adjutant giving a point for the captains of the right wing to march upon.

In each case a field officer will superintend the covering of the captains from the battalion point of appui.

---

4. *Advancing in Succession from the Front.*—When a battalion, standing in close or quarter distance column, is required to advance in a more open column, it will receive the command, ADVANCE BY SUCCESSIVE COMPANIES FROM THE FRONT, AT QUARTER (OR WHEELING) DISTANCE, No.—QUICK—MARCH. When the leading company has gained the required distance, the captain of the second company will give the word, N°—, *Quick—March*, and so on in succession, to the rear. A column may be faced about and the companies marched off in like manner, commencing with the rear company. If the column is on the march

the words will be, ADVANCE BY SUCCESSIVE COMPANIES FROM THE FRONT, AT QUARTER (or WHEELING) DISTANCE, REAR COMPANIES—HALT. The movement will then be performed as above described.

5. *Opening on the March by Halting the Rear Company.*—When a close or quarter distance column on the march is required to open from the rear, on the caution, OPEN TO QUARTER (or WHEELING) DISTANCE FROM THE REAR, the rear company will be halted by the captain. The movement will then proceed as described from the halt. After it is completed, the column may, if required, again be put in motion.

S. 14. *Columns increasing and diminishing their Front, and passing Obstacles.*

1. *Open Columns diminishing Front.*—When an open column is on the march, each company in succession as it arrives at a narrow space or defile, will when necessary diminish its front; and as each company clears the narrow space it must again increase its front.

The different methods of increasing and diminishing the front of a company, have been explained in Part II.

When halted, the front of all the companies in a column may be diminished to subdivisions and sections at the same time, by word of command from the commanding officer, the leaders of subdivisions or sections giving only the words *Halt—Front, Dress.* When in sections or subdivisions, the front of companies may again be increased in like manner, the leaders of companies or subdivisions giving the words *Halt—Front, Dress.*

Columns should always move with as large a front as the ground will admit of.

UCCESSIVE COMPANIES
(or WHEELING) DIS-
r. The movement will
ed.

lting the Rear Company.
e column on the march
on the caution, OPEN
DISTANCE FROM THE
halted by the captain.
as described from the
olumn may, if required,

lminishing their Front,
tacles.

Front.—When an open
pany in succession as it
ile, will when necessary
mpany clears the narrow
nt.
ing and diminishing the
lained in Part II.
e companies in a column
and sections at the same
the commanding officer,
ns giving only the words
tions or subdivisions, the
increased in like manner,
visions giving the words

ith as large a front as the

2. *Passing Obstacles when Marching on an Alignment.*—When the march of a column, on an alignment, is interrupted by pools of water, or any other obstacles which are impassable, the march will be continued direct to that obstacle, which will be passed by diverging on all occasions, when practicable, to the reverse flank, in order not to cloud the line of pivots, and the alignment will again be taken up by the pivots on the other side of the obstacle, at a point placed for that purpose. When marching on an alignment pivots should never diverge unless it is absolutely necessary.

---

3. *Double Columns diminishing Front.*—A battalion in double column of companies may reduce its front to a double column of subdivisions or sections, as directed in Part II., Sections 24, 25, and 26, and a double column of sections may increase its front to subdivisions, and to companies, as directed in Part II., Sections 27, 28, and 29. A line or double column may also advance by double fours or files, if necessary, from the centre by the command BY DOUBLE-FOURS (or FILES) FROM THE CENTRE, FORM FOURS—INWARDS (or INWARDS TURN), RIGHT AND LEFT—WHEEL; but the column should be re-formed as soon as the ground will admit. In double fours or files the colour party will move between the two centre companies in single rank, the front rank leading, followed by the rear rank, both right in front, the Queen's colour between the two leading fours or files. The supernumeraries will also move in one rank between the wings.

---

4. *Reduction of Front to take place on Pivot Flank.*—As a general rule files should always be broken off from the pivot flank. And when the front of a column is reduced by forming subdivisions or sections, those on the pivot flank will be doubled in rear of those on the reverse flank.

---

5. *A Quarter Distance Column diminishing Front.*—A quarter distance column may reduce its front by breaking off a file or two from its pivot flank, but beyond this it is not susceptible of a diminution of front. A close column cannot diminish its front while it retains the formation.

S. 15. *An Open Column changing Direction, and marching on an Alignment, or moving into an Alignment by the Flank March of Fours.*

1. *Changing Direction.*—A battalion marching in column may change direction by the successive wheel of its companies on moveable pivots round the same point. Should the wheel be to the reverse flank, the senior supernumeraries will move up and lead during the change of direction; but it is not necessary that they should all cover or wheel on the same spot. They will retain the relative positions they were held by the reverse flanks when the column was marching by the pivot flank, and weak companies will march a little past the wheeling point before they wheel, strong companies will wheel a little before they come up to it, so that on the word Forward the pivot flanks will still be in line.

The word FORWARD will be given to the leading company by the commanding officer; but each company that follows will receive that word from its own leader as its front becomes perpendicular to the new direction.

---

2. *Changing Direction into a new Alignment.*—If the change of direction is to bring the pivot flank of the column on an alignment, previous to forming line; the captain of the leading company on entering the alignment must at once look to the points of formation and march steadily upon them, selecting intermediate points if necessary; the remaining captains as they enter the alignment must be

olumn diminishing Front.—
may reduce its front by
its pivot flank, but beyond
a diminution of front. A
its front while it retains the

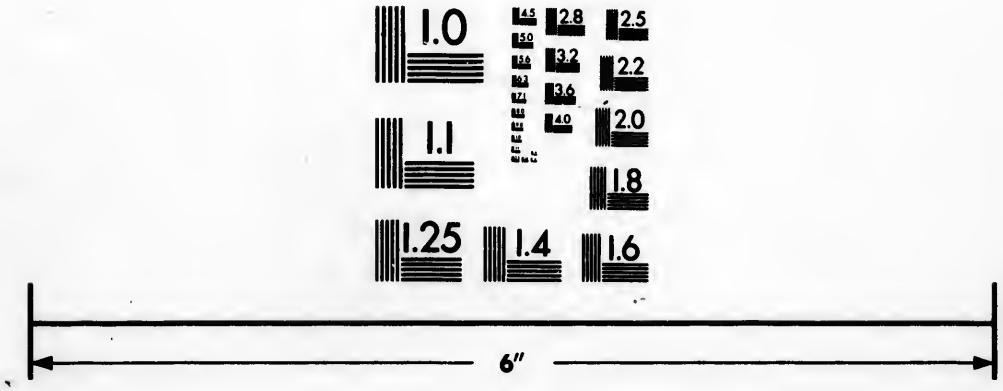
ging Direction, and marching
ing into an Alignment by the

battalion marching in column
successive wheel of its com-
und the same point. Should
nk, the senior supernumeraries
the change of direction; but
should all cover or wheel on
tain the relative positions the
flanks when the column w
nk, and weak companies w
eling point before they whe
a little before they come up
ard the pivot flanks will still

be given to the leading compa
but each company that follow
its own leader as its fron
new direction.

to a new Alignment.—If the
g the pivot flank of the column
forming line; the captain of
tering the alignment must a
formation and march steadily
ediate points if necessary; the
enter the alignment must be

IMAGE EVALUATION
TEST TARGET (MT-3)



Photographic
Sciences
Corporation

23 WEST MAIN STREET
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580
(716) 872-4503

PLATE XXVI.—A BATTALION IN OPEN COLUMN MARCHING ON THE POINT WHERE ITS RIGHT IS TO REST WHEN IN LINE, AND ENTERING THE NEW ALIGNMENT BY THE FLANK MARCH OF COMPANIES IN FOURS.

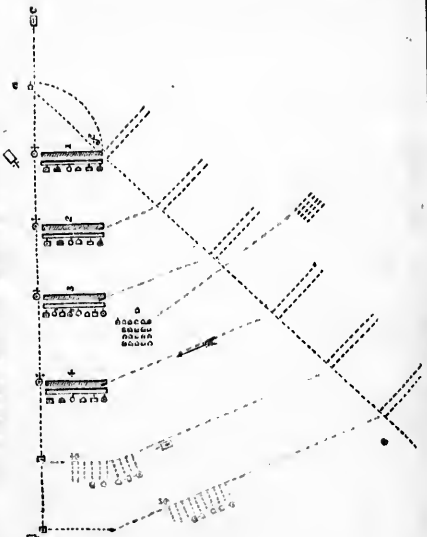
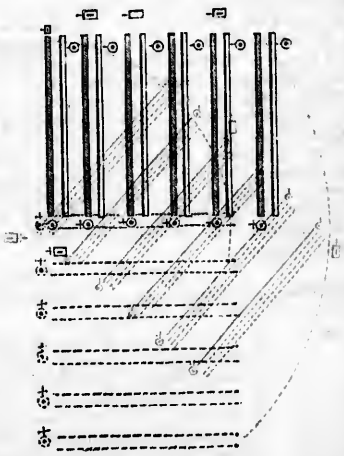


PLATE XXVII.

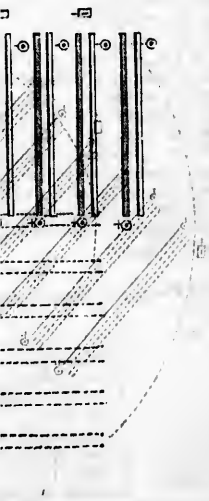
A QUARTER DISTANCE COLUMN WHEELING TO A FLANK.



-BATTALION.

E XXVII.

UMN WHEELING TO A FLANK.



careful to cover on him and the base point. If the column is halted before all the companies have changed their direction into the alignment, the rear companies will move into it by the flank march of fours, their covering serjeants running out to mark the spots on which their pivot flanks are to rest.

---

3. *Moving into an Alignment by the Flank March of Fours.*—A battalion in column marching in an oblique direction (e.a.) Plate XXVI., on that point in an alignment where the outward flank of its leading company is to rest when in line, will move up till it arrives at rather more than wheeling distance (f.) from the point; it will there receive the words FORM FOURS—LEFT (OR RIGHT), MARCH ON YOUR COVERERS, from the commander. All the companies will then move across into the new alignment, each covering serjeant running out in succession to take up the distance and covering for the pivot flank of his company, the major of the leading wing (c.) covering them from the front; the coverer of the leading company will take his distance from the point (a.) on which the column originally marched.

S. 16. *A Column at Close or Quarter Distance Wheeling on a Fixed or Moveable Pivot.*

COLUMN—LEFT (OR RIGHT)—WHEEL.

1. *Wheeling on a Fixed Pivot.*—Upon the caution (supposing a column right in front is to wheel to the left, Plate XXVII.,) the left-hand man of the front rank of the leading company will face to the left, and his rear rank man will uncover, the covering serjeant will run out to mark (with shouldered arms) the spot where the outward flank of the column

will rest when the wheel is completed, and will raise his left arm; the remaining companies will make a half face to the right, the lieutenants moving up to lead them on their reverse flanks.

QUICK (or DOUBLE)—MARCH.

On the word QUICK or DOUBLE MARCH, the front company will wheel as usual, except that the pace must be much shorter, and so regulated as to give the remaining companies time to circle round. The remaining companies will step off at the same moment, each man moving round on the circumference of a circle, of which the pivot man who has faced to the left is the centre; the men nearest the pivot flank of each company must keep up their left shoulders as much as possible, at the commencement of the wheel, so as to gain sufficient ground to the flank and to avoid diminishing the distance between companies. The captain of the leading company will move back to his place during the wheel.

COLUMN—HALT.

The commanding officer will give the word HALT when he sees that the leading company is completing the wheel, at which time the rear companies should also have circled round into the new position; the lieutenants will resume their places in column, the men will face to their proper front, and remain steady unless the word DRESS is given, in which case they will take up their dressing by the pivot flank.

hen the wheel is completed, se his left arm; the remain- nies will make a half face to the lieutenants moving up to on their reverse flanks.

word QUICK or DOUBLE e front company will wheel xcept that the pace must be ter, and so regulated as to emaining companies time to d. The remaining companies off at the same moment, each g round on the circumference , of which the pivot man who to the left is the centre; nearest the pivot flank of pany must keep up their left as much as possible, at the ment of the wheel, so as to icient ground to the flank void diminishing the distance ompanies. The captain of the mpany will move back to his ng the wheel.

mmanding officer will give the r when he sees that the lead- any is completing the wheel, ime the rear companies should circled round into the new posi- lieutenants will resume their column, the men will face to per front, and remain steady word DRESS is given, in which will take up their dressing by flank.

COLUMN—RIGHT OR LEFT—WHEEL.

2. *Wheeling on a Moveable Pivot.*—A column on the march will change its direction on a moveable pivot on exactly the same principles as it wheels on a fixed pivot, the rear companies making a half turn instead of a half face towards the outward flank, and the pivot man of the column moving with a very short pace round the wheeling point, keeping his shoulders square with his company. The covering serjeant of the leading company will not move out.

COLUMN—FORWARD.

On the word FORWARD, every man will turn to his front and move on by the pivot flank.

During these wheels, the outward flank directs, (whether on a halted or moveable pivot,) and to ensure the proper execution of the wheel, it is indispensably requisite that the outward flanks of companies should carefully preserve throughout the wheel their distances, and the same relative positions and covering, on the leading company, that they held previous to being put in motion; the remaining files will be guided by the outward flanks of their respective companies and will conform to them during the wheel.

The major of the leading wing will place himself on the outward flank of the leading company, to regulate its pace, in so doing he must watch the leader on the outer flank of the rear company, who will continue to march with a full pace of 30 inches throughout the wheel, and on whose movements the march of every man in the column should be made to depend. The major of the rear wing will place himself in rear of the wheeling flank of the rear company, to see that the outer files retain the relative positions they occupied before commencing to wheel. The adjutant will see that the companies close up to their leading files. The

major of the leading wing will cover the captains from the front when the column halts.

These wheels should frequently be practised in double time.

A double column when closed to quarter or close distance may wheel in the same manner as a single column.

S. 17. A Close or Quarter Distance Column taking Ground to a Flank wheeling to the Right or Left.

A column taking ground to a flank will wheel to the right, or left, on the principles laid down in the preceding section, the leading files or fours of all the companies wheeling round the pivot in the same manner as the leading company of a column is therein directed to wheel, the men on the outward or wheeling flank of the column preserving their distances and covering as therein described, the remaining men of the column being guided during the wheel by them. When in fours or files the officer leading each company, if not there already, will place himself on the flank of the leading file or four nearest to the pivot, in order that he may be able to keep his distance from that point.

S. 18. A Close or Quarter Distance Column changing Front to the Rear by the Wheel of Subdivisions round the Centre.—Plate XXVIII.

CHANGE FRONT TO THE REAR BY THE WHEEL OF SUBDIVISIONS ROUND THE—CENTRE.

1. *From the Halt.*—On the caution, the coverers of the front and rear companies will mark the two points (a. b.) for the subdivisions to wheel upon; one, in front of the inner file of the reverse subdivision of the leading company; the other, in rear of the inner file of the pivot subdivision of the rear company, both facing inwards towards the column.

ll cover the captains from the

tly be practised in double time.
sed to quarter or close distance
er as a single column.

istance Column taking Ground to the Right or Left.

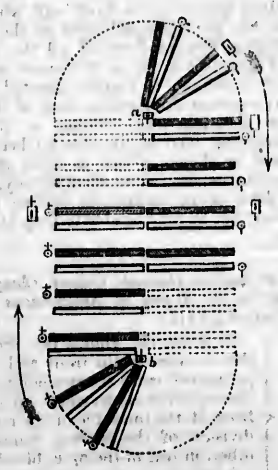
to a flank will wheel to the
es laid down in the preceding
r fours of all the companies
the same manner as the lead-
is therein directed to wheel,
wheeling flank of the column
and covering as therein de-
of the column being guided
When in fours or files the
, if not there already, will place
leading file or four nearest to
ay be able to keep his distance

istance Column changing Front heel of Subdivisions round the l.

the Halt.—On the caution,
ers of the front and rear com-
ll mark the two points (a. b.) for
visions to wheel upon; one, in
he inner file of the reverse sub-
of the leading company; the
rear of the inner file of the pivot
on of the rear company, both
wards towards the column.

PLATE XXVIII.

A COLUMN AT QUARTER DISTANCE CHANGING FRONT TO THE REAR BY THE WHEEL OF SUBDIVISIONS ROUND THE CENTRE.



RIGH
(OF LI
SUBDIVI
RIGHT A
—FAC

QUI
(OF DOU
MAR

HALT—
DRE

CHANGE
TO THE
BY THE
OF SUBDI
ROUN
CENTRE
(OF LEFT
VISION
ABOUT-
FRONT-

In th

RIGHT (OR LEFT) SUBDIVISIONS RIGHT ABOUT —FACE.

The commanding officer will then face the reverse subdivisions to the right about, the lieutenants taking post on their outward flanks.

QUICK (OR DOUBLE)—MARCH.

On the word MARCH, the subdivisions will step off and wheel in succession round the points, touching to their inward flanks; as each completes its wheel of half a circle, it will move to its front at a full pace, still feeling inwards; the inner files of the right and left subdivisions passing close to each other.

HALT—FRONT, DRESS.

When the countermarch is completed, on the words HALT—FRONT, DRESS, the column will halt, the reverse subdivisions will front, the lieutenants will resume their places in column, and the whole will dress by the pivot flank.

CHANGE FRONT TO THE REAR BY THE WHEEL OF SUBDIVISIONS ROUND THE CENTRE, RIGHT (OR LEFT) SUBDIVISIONS RIGHT ABOUT—TURN. FRONT—TURN.

2. *On the March.*—If the column is on the march the countermarch will be effected in the same manner as from the halt, the reverse subdivisions turning instead of facing, and the covering serjeants of the front and rear companies giving their points on the words RIGHT ABOUT—TURN. The commanding officer must give the words FRONT—TURN four paces before the subdivisions of each company arrive in line with each other, in order that they may move on together in the new direction.

In this movement the front of the column is changed

to the original rear, but the order of the companies is not changed.

A double column will countermarch in the same manner as a single column.

S. 19. Columns countermarching by Files and by Ranks.

Open and quarter distance columns will countermarch by files, close columns by ranks, each company moving as described in Part II., Section 23. In open or quarter distance column the colour party will countermarch independently, and move across to the rear of the leading centre company; in close column it can only face about and correct its formation when the column opens out.

In these countermarches both the front of the column and the order of the companies is changed, a column right in front becoming a column left in front, facing to the original rear.

S. 20. Changing the Order of a Column by the successive March of the Rear Companies to the Front.

BY SUCCESSIVE COMPANIES, REAR WING TO THE FRONT.

No.—, Form Fours Left. Quick—March.

When right is in front, and the left is to be brought up, on the caution BY SUCCESSIVE COMPANIES REAR WING TO THE FRONT, the captain of the rear company will take one pace to the front, face to the right about, and give the words *No.—, Form Fours—Left, Quick—March*, on which his company will step off, the captain remaining steady, the covering serjeant stepping short to gain

ne order of the companies is not

—

ountermarch in the same manner

—

arching by Files and by Ranks.

nce columns will countermarch by
anks, each company moving as
ion 23. In open or quarter dis-
party will countermarch indepen-
to the rear of the leading centre
n it can only face about and cor-
e column opens out.
es both the front of the column
panies is changed, a column right
umn left in front, facing to the

—

r of a Column by the successive
r Companies to the Front.

n right is in front, and the left is
brought up, on the caution BY
SIVE COMPANIES REAR WING TO
RONT, the captain of the rear
y will take one pace to the
ace to the right about, and give
ds *N°–, Form Fours—Left, Quick*
h, on which his company will step
e captain remaining steady, the
g serjeant stepping short to gain

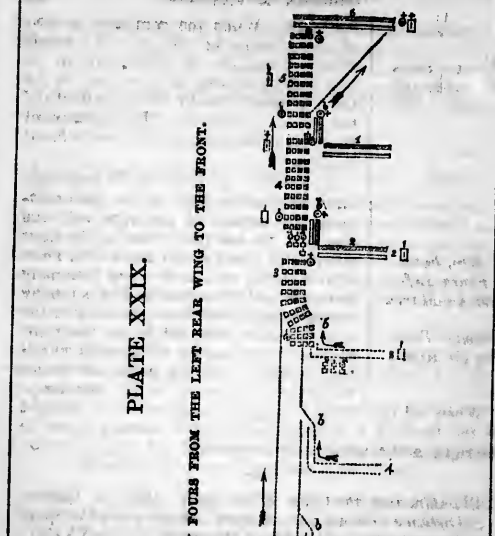


PLATE XXIX.

BY FOURS FROM THE LEFT REAR WING TO THE FRONT.

Front—T
By the Ri

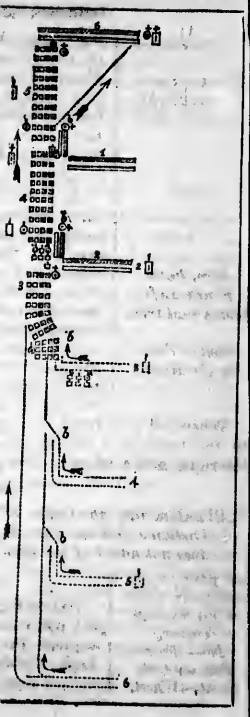
No—, Fo
Fours—L
Quick—M

Front—T
By the Ri

When l
to the fro
the right,

S. 21. *Ch*
Dista
does

BY FOURS
THE LEFT,
WING TO
FRONT
No— F
Fours—
Right—W



Front—Turn. By the Right.

his place. When the company is clear of the column he will give the words *Front—Turn, By the Right,* fall in on that flank, and lead his company to the front, passing close by the pivot flanks of the other companies. The lieutenant will change his flank on the words *Front—Turn.*

No—, Form Fours—Left. Quick—March.

Front—Turn. By the Right.

As soon as the flank of the rear company approaches that of the next company, the captain of the latter will take one pace to his front, face to the right about, and give the command *No—, Form Fours—Left,* and as the rear company passes him, *Quick—March.* His company having cleared the column, he will give the words *Front—Turn,* fall in on the right of it, and follow the left company at wheeling distance. The remaining companies will follow successively in like manner.

When left is in front, the right companies will be brought to the front in a similar manner, each forming fours to the right, and coming up in succession.

S. 21. ***Changing the Order of an Open, Half, or Quarter Distance Column, formed upon a Road where the Space does not admit of the Flank Movement.***—Plate XXIX.

BY FOURS FROM THE LEFT, REAR WING TO THE FRONT.

No— Form Fours—Left, Right—Wheel.

When right is in front, on the caution the rear company (6,) will receive from its captain the words *No — Form Fours—Left, Right—Wheel.*

FOURTH SECTIONS. RIGHT-WHEEL. QUICK—MARCH. *Fourth Section—Halt.*

No— Form Fours—Left, Quick—March.

At the same time the commander of the battalion will give the words to the remaining companies, FOURTH SECTIONS RIGHT—WHEEL, and then QUICK—MARCH, on which those sections (b.b.b.) will wheel a quarter circle to their right and halt by command of their captains; the rear company will step off on the same word in fours, wheel to the right, and move straight to the front along the rear ranks of the fourth sections. The captain of the next company (5.) will give the word *Form Fours—Left, Quick—March* to his men in sufficient time to follow the left company without loss of distance; the remaining companies will follow in like manner.

The colours will move to the rear of the third section of the right centre company on the word MARCH from the commander of the battalion, and will follow in rear of the left centre company when it passes them.

No— Front Form—Company. Forward.

As the left company (6.) clears the former front of the column it will receive the word, *No. — Front form—Company,* from its captain, who will move across to the right, give the word *Forward,* and fall in, leading straight to the front; the remaining companies will follow in like manner; No. 1 company may form to the front as soon as its leading four has gained the left of the road.

same time the commander of
on will give the words to the
companies, FOURTH SECTIONS
HEEL, and then QUICK—
which those sections (b.b.b.)
a quarter circle to their right and
nmand of their captains; the
ny will step off on the same word
heel to the right, and move
the front along the rear ranks
th sections. The captain of the
pany (5.) will give the word
e—*Left, Quick—March* to his
fficient time to follow the left
without loss of distance; the
companies will follow in like

urs will move to the rear of the
on of the right centre company
d MARCH from the commander
alion, and will follow in rear of
entre company when it passes

left company (6.) clears the
t of the column it will receive
No. — *Front form—Company,*
ptain, who will move across to
give the word *Forward,* and
ling straight to the front; the
companies will follow in like
No. 1 company may form to the
oon as its leading four has
left of the road.

A column left in front will bring its rear companies to the front by fours from the right in a similar manner; the first sections being wheeled to the left.

The battalion, if required, may move on in fours instead of forming companies; the rear wing may also be brought to the front by sections, in which case the pivot subdivisions must be wheeled up to give sufficient room.

S. 22. Columns taking Ground to a Flank, by the Echellon March of Sections.

When a column is required to take ground to a flank in echellon of sections, each company will move as described in Part II., Section 14; the leaders of companies keeping their covering on the leading flank of the leading company, and preserving their distances from the companies that are next in front of them when in column, the leader of the leading company taking up points, in the diagonal direction, to march on.

S. 23. Columns taking Ground to a Flank.

TAKE GROUND TO THE RIGHT (or LEFT) IN FOURS. FORM FOURS—RIGHT (or LEFT). (QUICK—MARCH).

After the caution, the commanding officer will give the word FORM FOURS—RIGHT (or LEFT), and, if halted, QUICK—MARCH; on which the companies will move to the flank in fours; if to the reverse flank, the lieutenants will move up and lead, unless the flank movement is to be of long duration, in which case the captains may be ordered to lead, and the lieutenants will fall back to their places on

the reverse flank. Any company may be named as the company of direction; but if no company is specified, the leading company of the column will direct. The officers will always lead on that flank of their companies which is nearest to the company of direction, keeping their distances from it, and dressing upon it.

S. 24. Columns, when taking Ground to a Flank by Fours, closing to less Distance or opening to greater Distance from any named Company.

CLOSE ON N°—COMPANY, OR CLOSE TO QUARTER DISTANCE ON N°— COMPANY.

1. *Closing to less Distance.*—When an open or quarter distance column is taking ground to a flank by fours, on the command CLOSE ON N° — COMPANY (or CLOSE TO QUARTER DISTANCE ON N°— COMPANY), the named company will continue to move on with a short pace, the remaining companies will wheel their leading fours the eighth of a circle toward it, the rest following; their leaders, if not there already, will change to that flank of the leading fours which is nearest the named company.

Each company in succession, as it gains the required distance, will change its direction parallel to that of the named company, and move with a short pace.

COLUMN—FORWARD.

When the movement is completed the commanding officer will give the word FORWARD, on which the whole column will move on with a full pace.

flank. Any company may be
he company of direction; but
pany is specified, the leading
f the column will direct. The
l always lead on that flank of
anies which is nearest to the
f direction, keeping their dis-
n it, and dressing upon it.

—

Ground to a Flank by Fours,
or opening to greater Distance
y.

g to less Distance.—When an
arter distance column is taking
a flank by fours, on the com-
SE ON N°— COMPANY (or
QUARTER DISTANCE ON N°—
, the named company will con-
ove on with a short pace; the
companies will wheel their
rs the eighth of a circle toward
following; their leaders, if not
dy, will change to that flank
ling fours which is nearest the
npany.
npany in succession, as it gains
d distance, will change its di-
rallel to that of the named
nd move with a short pace.
he movement is completed the
g officer will give the word
on which the whole column
n with a full pace.

OPEN TO QUARTER (or WHEELING) DISTANCE FROM N°— COMPANY.

2. *Opening to greater Distance.*—When a close or quarter distance column is taking ground to a flank by fours, on the command OPEN TO QUARTER (or WHEELING) DISTANCE FROM N°—COMPANY, the named company will continue to move on with a short pace; the remaining companies will wheel outwards the eighth of a circle, and their leaders, if not there already, will change to that flank of the leading fours which is nearest the named company.

Each company in succession, as it gains the distance required, will change its direction parallel to that of the named company, and move with a short pace.

COLUMN— FORWARD.

When the movement is completed the commanding officer will give the word FORWARD, on which the whole column will move on with a full pace.

On open ground, the companies in these movements may close or open by the diagonal march, the commands will then be BY THE DIAGONAL MARCH CLOSE (or OPEN), &c. REMAINING COMPANIES INWARDS (or OUTWARDS) HALF-TURN. N°— *Right half-turn.* N°— *Left half-turn.*

—

S. 25. *Application of the Flank March of Columns by Fours.*

The flank march of columns by fours will be found most useful in the advance of large bodies of troops.

A battalion in line may advance by fours from the right or left of companies, thereby becoming an open column taking ground to a flank. In this formation it may pass

any obstacles or broken ground without risk of disorder or material loss of distance in the general line.

If a defile or bridge presents itself, the battalion may close on the company opposite to it; if a further reduction of front is required, when the column is right in front, the right companies may be ordered to mark time, the left companies moving on and closing on the centre, the right following; in like manner when the column is left in front the left companies may be ordered to mark time, the right moving on; or one wing may move on, the other following; if necessary, one of the flank companies may be ordered to move on in fours, the remainder following in succession.

When the defile is passed, the leading companies may be ordered to mark time or halt, while the others resume their places if the column has been broken, or, if necessary, the rear companies may be ordered to double instead of the leading ones marking time. The column may then be ordered to open again to wheeling distance; or while moving by the flank march of fours, may be wheeled in any direction, and then be opened.

Companies may afterwards be formed to the front, into line, in quick or double time, as described in Parts I. and II.

Troops in this formation will be found flexible in the greatest degree, and as the companies move independently, they will not be liable to disorder, and the battalion will at all times be ready to form line or square, as may be required. See Sections 9 and 17 of this Part.

---

nd without risk of disorder or
e general line.
ents itself, the battalion may
e to it; if a further reduction
e column is right in front, the
dered to mark time, the left
losing on the centre, the right
hen the column is left in front
dered to mark time, the right
move on, the other following;
companies may be ordered to
der following in succession.
the leading companies may be
, while the others resume their
n broken, or, if necessary, the
red to double instead of the
The column may then be
eling distance; or while moving
nay be wheeled in any direction,

s be formed to the front, into
as described in Parts I. and II.
will be found flexible in the
mpanies move independently,
order, and the battalion will at
or square, as may be required.
Part.

FORMATIONS OF COLUMN FROM LINE.

S. 26. *A Line wheeling back into Open Column from the Halt.*

OPEN COLUMN RIGHT IN FRONT.

1. *By Companies into Open Column, Right in Front.*—On the caution, the captains, and pivot files of all the companies, and the covering serjeant of the leading company, will move as described in Part II., Section 5, the remaining covering serjeants will stand fast, the officer on the left of the line will fall back into the supernumerary rank, and the senior major will move to the right of the line.

RIGHT ABOUT FACE.

On the word FACE, the pivot men and covering serjeant of the leading company will stand fast, the colour party will face to the right and disengage to the rear, the remainder of the battalion, including band, drummers, and pioneers, will face about, the junior major and adjutant turning their horses' heads to the rear.

RIGHT-WHEEL. QUICK-MARCH.

On the words QUICK-MARCH, the companies will wheel as described in Part II., Section 5, the colour party will wheel to the right, and, together with the band, drummers, pioneers, and mounted officers, will move to the places in column, described in Section 1 of this Part.

Halt–Front, Dress.

On the word *Halt—Front, Dress,* from the captains, the companies will halt, front, and dress; the senior major will correct the covering of the captains from the head of the column, and then move to his place.

2. *By Companies into Open Column, Left in Front.*—Open column, left in front, will be formed in like manner, the colour party facing to the left, when the battalion faces about; and the junior major moving to the left of the line to correct the covering of the captains.

BY SUBDIVISIONS (or SECTIONS) ON THE LEFT BACKWARD-WHEEL.

3. *By Subdivisions or Sections into Column, Right in Front.*—On the caution, the captains, pivot files, and the covering serjeant of the leading company will move as described in Part II., Section 8, the remaining covering serjeants will stand fast, and the senior major will move to the right of the line; the colour party will face to the right, the band, drummers, and pioneers will face to the right about, and the junior major and adjutant will turn their horses' heads to the rear.

QUICK-MARCH.

Halt—Dress.

On the words QUICK—MARCH, the subdivisions or sections will wheel back, and will be halted as described in Part II., Section 8, the senior major dressing the leaders of subdivisions or sections from the head of the column, and the mounted officers, band, &c. moving as in the wheel of companies into column.

4. *By Subdivisions or Sections into Column, Left in Front.*—Subdivisions and sections will wheel back on their right in like manner, the colour party facing to the left, and

ord *Halt—Front, Dress*, from
s, the companies will halt,
dress; the senior major will
covering of the captains from
the column, and then move

Column, Left in Front.—Open
formed in like manner, the
eft, when the battalion faces
moving to the left of the line
captains.

ubdivisions or Sections into
ght in Front.—On the cau-
aptains, pivot files, and the
rjeant of the leading com-
nove as described in Part II.,
the remaining covering ser-
stand fast, and the senior
nove to the right of the line;
party will face to the right, the
umers, and pioneers will face
about, and the junior major
nt will turn their horses'
rear.

words QUICK—MARCH, the
s or sections will wheel back,
halted as described in Part
n 8, the senior major dress-
lers of subdivisions or sections
ead of the column, and the
ficers, band, &c. moving as in
f companies into column.

ctions into Column, Left in
ions will wheel back on their
ur party facing to the left, and

the junior major moving on the caution to the left of the line, to be ready to dress the subdivision or section leaders.

When the subdivisions or sections exceed twelve files, they should always be faced about and wheeled rear rank in front. The word of command will then be, OPEN COLUMN OF SUBDIVISIONS OF SECTIONS RIGHT (OR LEFT) IN FRONT, RIGHT ABOUT—FACE, &c., and they will wheel in the same manner as companies wheel.

S. 27. A Line Wheeling into Open Column on the March.

BY COMPANIES (SUBDIVISIONS OF SECTIONS) RIGHT (OR LEFT)—WHEEL. FORWARD.

A battalion advancing or retiring in line may wheel by companies, subdivisions, or sections into column on moveable pivots, as described in Part II., Section 10, the colour party will wheel independently, and move by the shortest line to its position in column, the mounted officers, band, drummers, and pioneers also moving to their places in column during the wheel.

When a battalion is required to wheel on moveable pivots from the halt, the caution must be given thus: ON THE MOVE BY COMPANIES, SUBDIVISIONS, OR SECTIONS, RIGHT (OR LEFT) WHEEL, QUICK-MARCH.

S. 28. A Battalion moving in Open Column from either Flank along the Rear.

1. *By Companies from the Right.*—On the caution, all the captains will change their flanks, remaining in rear of the line, the coverers will as usual change with their captains, then move up on the left of the front rank of their companies; the supernumerary rank will

THE BATTALION WILL MOVE IN COLUMN OF COMPANIES FROM THE RIGHT ALONG THE REAR.
N° 1,
Form Fours—Left.
Left Wheel.
Quick—March.
Front—Turn.
N° 2,
Form Fours—Left.
Left Wheel,
Quick—March.
Front—Turn.
&c.

close to one pace from the rear rank, and the right company will form fours to the left by command of the captain, who will give his word as he is changing his flank, the leading four disengaging to the rear. On the words *Left Wheel, Quick—March*, the company will wheel to the left, the captain leading it out perpendicularly to the rear. As soon as he is clear of the supernumerary rank of the line he will halt and allow his company to pass him; and when the rear four reaches him he will give the word, *Front—Turn*, and take post on its right flank, continuing there until ordered to change, which should not be done before all the companies are in column. The second company will form fours to the left by command of its captain, disengage to the rear, and move out in the same manner, the moment the right company passes it; and thus company after company will follow in succession, the captains taking care not to lose distance.

THE BATTALION WILL MOVE IN COLUMN OF COMPANIES FROM THE LEFT ALONG THE REAR.
N°—, Form Fours—Right, Right Wheel—Quick—March, Front—Turn. &c.

2. *By Companies from the Left.*—Companies will move from the left along the rear in like manner, the companies forming fours to the right and wheeling to the right, the captains falling to the rear on the caution, (being replaced by their coverers), and leading on the left flanks when in column.

pace from the rear rank, and
company will form fours to
command of the captain,
e his word as he is changing
he leading four disengaging
On the words *Left Wheel,*
ch, the company will wheel
the captain leading it out
arly to the rear. As soon
r of the supernumerary rank
he will halt and allow his
pass him; and when the
eaches him he will give the
t—Turn, and take post on
lank, continuing there until
change, which should not be
e all the companies are in
he second company will form
he left by command of its
engage to the rear, and move
same manner, the moment
ompany passes it; and thus
fter company will follow in
the captains taking care not
ance.

Companies from the Left.—
will move from the left along
like manner, the companies
urs to the right and wheeling
t, the captains falling to the
e caution, (being replaced by
ers), and leading on the left
in column.

This movement will be performed by subdivisions and sections in exactly the same manner, the captains on the caution placing themselves in rear of the inner flanks of the subdivisions or sections of their companies, which will be in front when in column, and which they will lead.

S. 29. A Battalion formed in Line advancing from a Flank in Open Column of Companies, Subdivisions, or Sections.

RIGHT (or LEFT) COMPANY TO THE FRONT, REMAINING COMPANIES ON THE MOVE, RIGHT (or LEFT) WHEEL. QUICK—MARCH. FORWARD. *N° *—, Left* (or *Right*)—*Wheel. Leading Company—Forward. N° *—, Forward, &c.*

1. *Advancing from a Flank by Companies.*—The caution will specify from which flank the advance is to be made, and on the word MARCH, the named company will move to the front at a short pace, receiving the word *Forward* from its captain, at such time during the second wheel of the next company as will prevent distance being lost between them when the latter receives that word. The other companies will wheel towards the flank whence the advance is made, the commanding officer giving the word FORWARD when they are square in column; this word will immediately be followed by the word *Left* (or *Right*) *Wheel* from the captain of the company next the leading one, which will follow the first in column, the remaining companies wheeling successively as they arrive on the ground where the second company wheeled. The captains must take care to preserve their distances.

If the advance is from the right, the captain and covering serjeant of the named company will change flank on the caution; the captain and coverer of No. 2 falling to the rear; if from the left they will stand fast. In both cases, on the words QUICK—MARCH, the captain of the named company will lead to the front, and the remaining captains will move as directed in Part II., Section 10, No. 2.

RIGHT (OR LEFT) SUBDIVISION (OR SECTION) TO THE FRONT, REMAINING SUBDIVISIONS (OR SECTIONS) ON THE MOVE, RIGHT (OR LEFT)—WHEEL, QUICK—MARCH, FORWARD, &c.

2. *Advancing from a Flank by Subdivisions or Sections.*—A battalion in line will advance in column of subdivisions or sections from a flank, in the same manner as it advances by companies. The captain who is to lead the column moving as directed in Part II., Section 12, the remaining leaders and covering serjeants moving to their places during the wheel.

3. *Advancing from a Flank by Companies, Subdivisions, or Sections on the March.*—These movements may be done when the line is advancing, by the words RIGHT (OR LEFT) COMPANY, SUBDIVISION, OR SECTION, TO THE FRONT, REMAINING COMPANIES, SUBDIVISIONS, OR SECTIONS, RIGHT (OR LEFT) WHEEL, &c.

S. 30. A Battalion in Line advancing in Double Column of Companies, Subdivisions, or Sections.

A battalion may advance from the centre in double column of companies, subdivisions, or sections, according to

he right, the captain and covering
mpany will change flank on the
coverer of No. 2 falling to the
y will stand fast. In both cases,
ARCH, the captain of the named
front, and the remaining captains
'art II., Section 10, No. 2.

*dvancing from a Flank by Sub-
s or Sections.*—A battalion in
ll advance in column of subdivi-
or sections from a flank, in the
ianner as it advances by compa-
The captain who is to lead the
moving as directed in Part II.,
12, the remaining leaders and
g serjeants moving to their places
the wheel.

Flank by Companies, Subdivisions,
—These movements may be done
ng, by the words RIGHT (or LEFT)
, OF SECTION, TO THE FRONT,
s, SUBDIVISIONS, OF SECTIONS,
, &c.

---

*ne advancing in Double Column of
ubdivisions, or Sections.*

ance from the centre in double
odivisions, or sections, according to

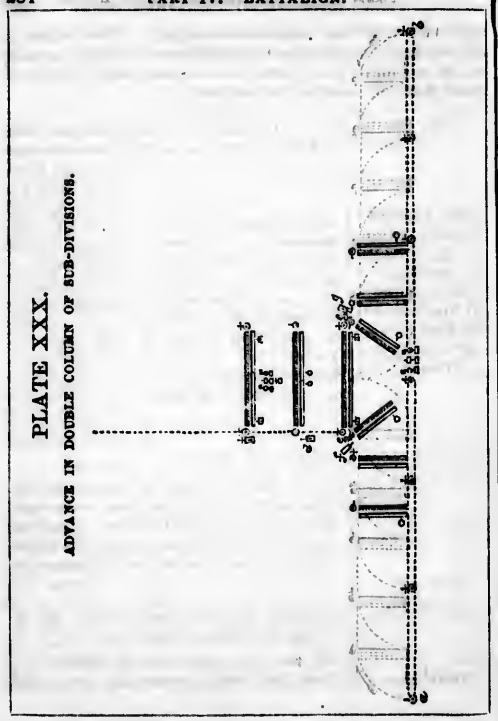


PLATE XXX.

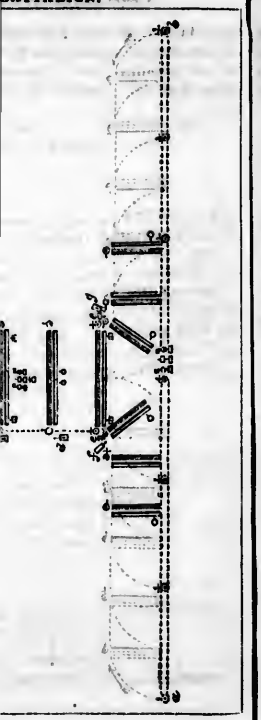
ADVANCE IN DOUBLE COLUMN OF SUB-DIVISIONS.

the natu
descriptio
to an ad
tions that

TWO CE
SUBDIVI
TO TH
FRON
REMAI
SUBDIVI
ON THE
INWAR
WHE

QUIC
MARC

FORW



the nature of the movement required. The following description of an advance by subdivisions will apply equally to an advance by companies, or sections, with the exceptions that will hereafter be mentioned.

TWO CENTRE SUBDIVISIONS TO THE FRONT, REMAINING SUBDIVISIONS ON THE MOVE, INWARDS—WHEEL.

1. *Advancing by Subdivisions.* Plate XXX.—On the caution, the supernumerary rank will take two paces to the front, and the colour party will step back two paces, the captains of the right and left centre companies will move out and place themselves, the former in front of the left file of his right subdivision, the latter in front of the right file of his left subdivision, the remaining captains and the lieutenants will stand fast. The coverers of the flank companies will mark the points (e. e.), facing towards the line, for the subdivisions to wheel on, the coverer of No. 1 making allowance for the distance the right centre subdivision will have to incline to the left, to join the left centre subdivision.

QUICK—MARCH.

FORWARD.

On the word MARCH, the whole battalion will step off, the two centre subdivisions moving to the front at a short pace, the right centre subdivision closing on the left as it advances; the remaining subdivisions will wheel inwards, the captains and lieutenants moving as directed in Part II., Section 10, No. 2; when the subdivisions are square in column the commanding officer will give the word FORWARD, on which

*Left Subdivision Left—Wheel.**
Right Subdivision Right—Wheel.†

Two Centre Subdivisions Forward.
By the Left.
**Forward.*
†Forward.

each wing will move in the same manner as a battalion when advancing from a flank, explained in the preceding section, the corresponding subdivisions meeting and following the two centre subdivisions in double column; the commander of the left centre company will give the word *Forward* to both the centre subdivisions when the two following subdivisions have commenced their second wheel, on which they will move on at a full pace.

The captains will lead the leading subdivisions of their companies, the lieutenants the rear subdivisions; the colour party will march in rear of the centre of the two leading subdivisions. The column will move by the left unless ordered to the contrary, the junior major placing himself in rear of the pivot flank of the second subdivision from the front of the left wing, to superintend the direction; the senior major and adjutant, after having superintended the second wheels of all the subdivisions will follow in rear of the column, the band will also be in the rear.

When the advance is to be in double column of companies, on the caution, the captain of the left centre company will change his flank, the captain and coverer of the company next on his left falling to the rear to make room for him; on the words QUICK—MARCH, the remaining captains and coverers and the lieutenants of the left wing will move as directed in Part II., Section 10, No. 2.

will move in the same manner
lion when advancing from a
ained in the preceding section,
onding subdivisions meeting
ng the two centre subdivisions
column; the commander of
entre company will give the
ard to both the centre sub-
hen the two following subdivi-
commenced their second wheel,
they will move on at a full

tains will lead the leading sub-
of their companies, the lieu-
rear subdivisions; the colour
march in rear of the centre
o leading subdivisions. The
ill move by the left unless
the contrary, the junior major
nself in rear of the pivot flank
nd subdivision from the front
ft wing, to superintend the
the senior major and adjutant,
ng superintended the second
all the subdivisions will follow
the column, the band will also
ear.

e in double column of com-
tain of the left centre company
ptain and coverer of the com-
to the rear to make room for
ARCH, the remaining captains
nts of the left wing will move
on 10, No. 2.

All words of command that are intended to apply to two companies, subdivisions, or sections, that are moving together in double column, will be given to both by the leader who belongs to the left wing.

S. 31. *A Battalion formed in Line retiring over a Bridge or through a Defile, or Retreating from a Flank or from both Flanks in Rear of the Centre.*

RETIRE BY COMPANIES FROM THE LEFT IN REAR OF THE RIGHT.

1. *From a Flank by Companies.*—If the defile is in rear of the right flank, the retreat should commence from the left; if in rear of the left flank it should commence from the right. Supposing the retreat to be from the left in rear of the right, on the caution the captains will fall to the rear, the supernumerary rank will take two paces to the front; and the coverer of N° 1 will fall back to give a point in rear of the captain of N° 2 company, facing towards him, at a distance equal to the breadth of a company and three paces, for the remaining companies to wheel upon, the remaining coverers taking post in rear of the second files from the right of their companies. The captain of the left company will give the word, *N°— Right about — Face, Quick—March,* and on the third pace, *Left—Wheel.* As soon as his company has completed the quarter circle, he will give the word *Forward,* placing himself on the inward flank, and will proceed along the rear of the line till he reaches the left of the right com-

N°— Right about—Face. Quick—March. Left—Wheel. Forward.

N°—Right—Wheel. Forward. By the Right.

pany, when he will order his company to wheel to the right, on the point placed for the purpose, as above described. The captain, followed by his covering serjeant, will change his flank during the wheel; and when his company is perpendicular to the direction in which it is to move, he will give the word—*Forward.*

N°—Right about—Face. Quick-March—Left—Wheel. Forward.

Each company in succession, except the right company, will move in like manner, being faced about in sufficient time to step off when the company that has moved from its left is within three paces of its right flank.

The captain of N° 1 will change his flank and give the word—*Right about—Face,* to his company, as N° 2 is making its second wheel, and the words *Quick—March,* three paces before the wheel is completed.

The colour party will move independently in the same manner as the companies, following the left centre company; after it has completed the second wheel it will move up to the wheeling point, and then mark time in order to gain its position in the proper rear of the third, fourth, and fifth files from the pivot flank of the right centre company.

A battalion will retire by companies from the right in rear of the left in like manner; in this movement the captain of the left company will fall to the rear, his coverer taking post in rear of the second file from the right; the remaining captains will change flank, remaining in rear of the line, their coverers taking post in rear of the second file from the left of their companies; the captain of the right com-

he will order his company to
e right, on the point placed
urpose, as above described.
n, followed by his covering
ill change his flank during
and when his company is per-
to the direction in which it is
will give the word—*Forward*,
mpany in succession, except
company, will move in like
ing faced about in sufficient
off when the company that
from its left is within three
right flank.
ain of N° 1 will change his
give the word—*Right about*—
company, as N° 2 is making
wheel, and the words *Quick*—
ce paces before the wheel is

our party will move indepen-
e same manner as the com-
lowing the left centre com-
it has completed the second
ill move up to the wheeling
then mark time in order to
sition in the proper rear of
ourth, and fifth files from the
of the right centre company.
mpanies from the right in rear
this movement the captain of
the rear, his coverer taking
from the right; the remaining
emaining in rear of the line,
rear of the second file from
the captain of the right com-

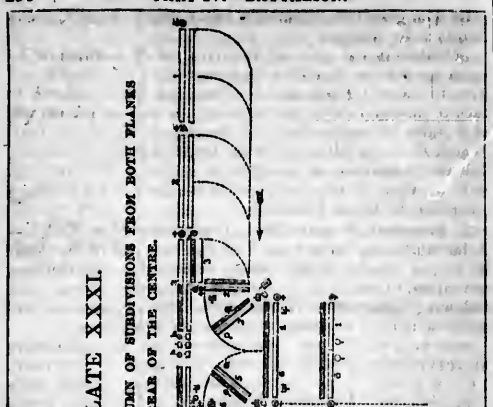
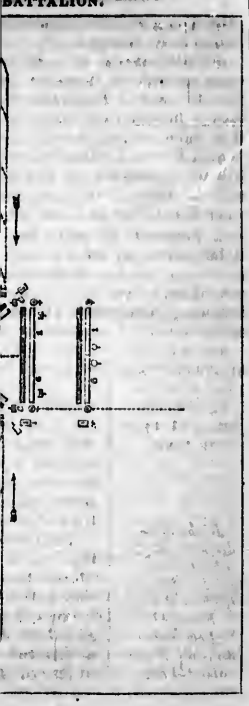


PLATE XXXI.

RETIRING IN DOUBLE COLUMN OF SUBDIVISIONS FROM BOTH FLANKS IN REAR OF THE CENTRE.

pany will
March as
A batte
same ma
give the
each of hi
then take
Wheel, Fo
will alway
in order
when it is
2. *Fro*
A battali
in double
according
following
apply equ
RETIRI
SUBDIVI
FROM B
FLANK
REAR O
CENT

Right
division,
about—
Quick—
Right—
Forw
Left
division
about—



pany will give the commands *Right about—Face, Quick—March* as he changes.

A battalion will retire by subdivisions or sections in the same manner as it retires by companies; the captain will give the words *Right about—Face,* and *Quick—March* to each of his subdivisions or sections, the proper leaders will then take command and give the words *Right* (or *Left*) *Wheel, Forward,* falling in on the inward flanks; the captain will always lead the last subdivision or section when retiring, in order that he may be found at the head of his company when it is halted and fronted.

2. *From both Flanks in Rear of the Centre,* Plate XXXI.—A battalion may retire from both flanks in rear of the centre in double column of companies, subdivisions, or sections, according to the nature of the movement required. The following description of the retreat by subdivisions will apply equally to a retreat by companies or sections.

RETIRE BY SUBDIVISIONS, FROM BOTH FLANKS IN REAR OF THE CENTRE.

On the caution, the supernumerary rank will take two paces to the front, the coverers of the two centre companies will fall back, and give the points (e.e.), facing towards the line, for the remaining subdivisions to wheel on, at a distance equal to the breadth of a subdivision, and three paces in rear of the second files from the outward flanks of the two centre subdivisions.

Right Subdivision, Right about-Face. Quick—March. Right—Wheel. Forward. Left Subdivision, Right about-Face.

The two flank subdivisions will receive the words *Right about Face—Quick March,* from their captains; after which they will be led by their respective lieutenants, who will give the words *Right,* and *Left Wheel, Forward,* and proceed as directed in the retreat from one flank in rear of the other; the remaining sub-

Quick—March.
Left—Wheel.
Forward.

divisions will follow in like manner, the captains giving the words *Right about—Face, Quick—March,* to each of their subdivisions in succession, but leading that which steps off last.

Right about—Face.
Quick—March.

The captain of the left centre company will give the words *Right about—Face* to the two centre subdivisions, when the outward subdivisions of the centre companies commence their second wheel, and *Quick—March,* when those subdivisions are at three paces from the completion of the wheel. The colour party will face about with the centre subdivisions, and then take three paces forward, it will also step off with those subdivisions on the words *Quick—March.*

Left—Wheel.
Right—Wheel.
Forward.

As the corresponding subdivisions of the two wings arrive at the outward flanks of the two centre subdivisions, they will wheel to the rear on the points placed (e.e.) by command of their respective leaders; they will meet in the centre and retire in double column on the word *Forward,* given by the leader of the subdivision which belongs to the left wing; the leaders of subdivisions will change their flanks by the rear during this wheel.

The column will march by the right (the proper left), and the junior major will superintend the direction as in open column; the senior major and adjutant will superintend the second wheels of the subdivisions, and then follow in rear of the column.

ll follow in like manner, the
ing the words *Right about*—
t—*March*, to each of their
s in succession, but leading
steps off last.

ain of the left centre company
e words *Right about*—*Face* to
ntre subdivisions, when the
bdivisions of the centre com-
mence their second wheel, and
rch, when those subdivisions
paces from the completion of
The colour party will face
the centre subdivisions, and
ree paces forward, it will also
th those subdivisions on the
t—*March*.

orresponding subdivisions of
ings arrive at the outward
he two centre subdivisions,
heel to the rear on the points
by command of their respec-
; they will meet in the centre
n double column on the word
iven by the leader of the
which belongs to the left
leaders of subdivisions will
ir flanks by the rear during

the right (the proper left),
perintend the direction as in
jor and adjutant will super-
the subdivisions, and then

In these movements a loss of distance will take place between companies or subdivisions; the distances must therefore be regained as soon as the whole battalion is in column, either by the leading company or subdivisions stepping short or marking time, for the rest to move up, the whole moving on at the word FORWARD; or, if necessary to gain time, by the leading company or subdivisions moving on in quick time, and the remainder recovering their distances at the double march, as may be ordered by the commanding officer.

When from want of space or other causes the retreat cannot be effected by the wheel of companies or subdivisions, it may be performed, with equal facility, by facing them inward, or forming fours inwards, and moving along the rear of the line, until opposite the defile, when the company or subdivision leaders will give the words *Rear-Turn*, and proceed as directed.

S. 32. A Battalion in Line forming Open, Quarter Distance, or Close Column.

OPEN (QUARTER DISTANCE OR CLOSE) COLUMN IN REAR OF N° 1.

1. *Forming Open, Quarter Distance, or Close Column in Rear of the Right Company.*—On the caution, the supernumerary rank will take two paces to the front, the captain of N° 1 company will change to his future pivot flank, (the captain and coverer of No. 2 falling to the rear,) and the covering serjeant of No. 1 will move across by the front and place himself six paces in front of his captain, facing towards him, with recovered arms. The senior major will move to the head of the column to superintend the covering of the coverers and captains.

REMAINING COMPANIES FORM FOURS—RIGHT.

On the word RIGHT, each company, except N° 1, will form fours to the right, and disengage to the rear, the colour party will face to the right, and the covering serjeant of N° 2 will step back and mark the spot on which the left of his company is to rest, covering on the captain and coverer of N° 1.

QUICK—MARCH.

On the word MARCH, all the companies in fours will step off, each covering serjeant in succession running on when within 20 paces of the column, and taking up the covering and distance for his company in rear of the pivot flank of the last formed company.

Each captain will halt, as he reaches his coverer, his company moving on past the rear of that serjeant, in a line parallel to the leading company.

Halt—Front, Dress.

As the pivot flank of each company reaches the covering serjeant, the captain will give the words, *Halt—Front, Dress*, on which the company will halt, front, and take up its own dressing, the coverer falling back to his place in column, and the captain taking post on the exact spot vacated by him.

Steady.

When the formation is completed the senior major will give the word *Steady*, and move to his place; the covering serjeant of N° 1 company taking post at the same time.

word RIGHT, each company, 1, will form fours to the disengage to the rear, the y will face to the right, and ng serjeant of N° 2 will nd mark the spot on which his company is to rest, cover- captain and coverer of N° 1.

word MARCH, all the com, fours will step off, each rjeant in succession running thin 20 paces of the column, up the covering and distance mpany in rear of the pivot last formed company.

ptain will halt, as he reaches his company moving on past of that serjeant, in a line the leading company.

pivot flank of each company covering serjeant, the cap- ive the words, *Halt—Front*, which the company will halt, take up its own dressing, the lling back to his place in d the captain taking post on pot vacated by him.

he formation is completed the or will give the word *Steady*, to his place; the covering ser- N° 1 company taking post at ime.

OPEN (QUARTER DISTANCE OR CLOSE) COLUMN IN FRONT OF N° 1.

2. *Forming Open, Quarter Distance, or Close Column in Front of the Right Company.*—On the caution, the supernumerary rank will take two paces to the front, and the senior supernumerary serjeant of N° 1 company will place himself six paces in rear of his captain, with recovered arms, the senior major will place himself in rear of the supernumerary, ready to superintend the covering of the coverers and captains.

REMAINING COMPANIES FORM FOURS—RIGHT.

On the word RIGHT, all the companies will form fours to the right and disengage to the front; the colour party will face to the right, and the coverer of N° 1 will take up his own distance in front of his captain, cover on him and the supernumerary, and then face to the right about, marking the spot on which the pivot flank of N° 2 is to rest.

QUICK—MARCH.

On the word MARCH, all the companies in fours will step off. Each coverer in succession will run on, when within 20 paces of the line of coverers, and will mark the spot on which the right flank of the company that is to form in front of his own is to rest, covering on the rear base, and then facing to the right about. Each captain will lead his company to the spot where its left is to rest in column, and then change direction and lead on the covering serjeant, who is marking the spot for his pivot flank, he will thus march his

company into column in a line parallel to the company of formation.

Halt—Front, Dress. On the word *Halt—Front, Dress,* from the captain, each company will halt, front, and take up its own dressing, the covering serjeant moving back to his place in rear of his own company, and the captain taking post on the exact spot vacated by him.

Steady. When the formation is completed, the senior major will give the word *Steady,* and move to his place in column, the supernumerary serjeant of No 1 company taking post at the same time.

In both the preceding manœuvres the junior major, the adjutant, the lieutenants, and band, &c., will move to their places during the formation, and the colour party will move independently, by files, to its place in column.

---

3. *Forming Open, Quarter Distance, or Close Column in Front or Rear of the Left Company.*—A battalion in line will be formed in column on the left company, in the same manner as it is so formed on the right company, the captains of the remaining companies changing flank on the caution, and their companies forming fours to the left; the colour party will face to the left, and the junior major will superintend the covering of the coverers and captains.

When the column is formed in front of the left company, the captain of that company will change to the left flank, on the caution, and his senior supernumerary serjeant will mark the base point in rear of him. When it is formed in rear of the left company, the captain will stand fast, and his coverer will mark the base point in front of him.

y into column in a line parallel
ompany of formation.
he word *Halt—Front, Dress,*
e captain, each company will halt,
nd take up its own dressing, the
g serjeant moving back to his
rear of his own company, and
ain taking post on the exact spot
by him.
n the formation is completed, the
major will give the word *Steady,*
ove to his place in column, the
umerary serjeant of N° 1 company
post at the same time.
manœuvres the junior major, the
and band, &c., will move to their
tion, and the colour party will
lles, to its place in column.

---

ter Distance, or Close Column in
ft Company.—A battalion in line
on the left company, in the same
ned on the right company, the
g companies changing flank on
mpanies forming fours to the left;
to the left, and the junior major
ring of the coverers and captains.
rmed in front of the left company,
any will change to the left flank,
senior supernumerary serjeant will
ear of him. When it is formed in
, the captain will stand fast, and
base point in front of him.

OPEN (QUARTER DISTANCE OR CLOSE) COLUMN, RIGHT (OR LEFT) IN FRONT ON N°—. FORM FOURS—INWARDS. QUICK—MARCH.

Halt—Front—Dress. Steady.

4. *Forming Open, Quarter Distance, or Close Column on a Central Company.*—In this formation the companies will form fours inwards, and move into column in front and rear of the named company in precisely the same manner as they form on the flank companies.

If the column is to be right in front, the captain of the named company will change his flank, on the caution. If left is to be in front, he will stand fast. In either case the covering serjeant will mark the spot on which the pivot flank of that company is to rest, which is to form in front of his own, he will cover on his captain, placing himself square with the line, and then face about.

If the battalion is to be formed in close or quarter-distance column, the senior major will superintend the covering from the front; but if it is to be in open column, he will place himself on the pivot flank of the company of formation.

---

5. *Advancing or retiring from either Flank of Companies.* See Section 9 of this Part.

---

6. *Forming Open (Quarter Distance or Close) Column, facing to the Rear.*—In the same manner column may be formed facing to the rear from line upon any company; that company, on the caution, counter-marching by files, and the remaining companies forming fours outwards, counter-marching to the right or left, and forming as already described. The company of formation will be so faced and counter-

marched as to lead to its new pivot, by command of its captain; the caution for this manœuvre will be, OPEN (QUARTER DISTANCE OF CLOSE) COLUMN ON Nº—COMPANY, RIGHT (OF LEFT) IN FRONT FACING TO THE REAR. In this movement the companies which move to the rear of the line will countermarch round the rear rank, which is an exception to the general rule.

7. *Forming Double Columns.*—Double column of companies or subdivisions will be formed from line on the two centre companies or subdivisions, in the same manner as single columns are formed. When the column is formed of subdivisions, the senior supernumerary serjeants will take up the covering and distances for the rear subdivisions of their companies. The covering serjeant of the left centre company will give a base point in front of his captain. Double columns, unless ordered to the contrary, will be formed at the wheeling distance of the companies or parts of companies of which each single column is composed. The caution will be DOUBLE COLUMN (OF QUARTER DISTANCE, OF CLOSE, DOUBLE COLUMN) ON THE TWO CENTRE COMPANIES (OF SUBDIVISIONS). On the caution, the colour party will step back two paces, and the two centre companies, or subdivisions, will close inwards four paces each by command of the captain of the left centre company, who will change to the left of his company or right subdivision.

FORMATION OF LINE FROM COLUMN.

Wheeling into line has already been described in Section 2 of this Part; a column may also wheel into line on the march, each company wheeling as described in Part II., Section 10. For the manner in which a column, taking ground to a flank by fours or files, forms line, see Section 9 of this Part.

pivot, by command of its cap-
euvre will be, OPEN (QUARTER
IN ON No—COMPANY, RIGHT
TO THE REAR. In this move-
ove to the rear of the line will
rank, which is an exception to

ns.—Double column of com-
e formed from line on the two
sions, in the same manner as
When the column is formed
pernumerary serjeants will take
es for the rear subdivisions of
ing serjeant of the left centre
point in front of his captain.
dered to the contrary, will be
nce of the companies or parts
ngle column is composed. The
UMN (or QUARTER DISTANCE,
) ON THE TWO CENTRE COM-
On the caution, the colour party
nd the two centre companies,
wards four paces each by com-
left centre company, who will
pany or right subdivision.

INE FROM COLUMN.

dy been described in Section 2
n may also wheel into line on
any wheeling as described in
For the manner in which a
to a flank by fours or files,
) of this Part.

S. 33. Forming Line to the Front from Open Column on any named Company.

FORM LINE ON THE LEADING COMPANY.

1. *Forming Line on the Leading Company from the Halt.*—If right is in front, on the caution, the captains will change their flanks. The coverer and senior supernumerary serjeant of the leading company will mark the base points, the former in front of the left flank, and the latter in front of the right flank of that company, both facing to the right, the senior major moving up to dress them, and the adjutant marking the distant flank of the line.

REMAINING COMPANIES FOUR PACES ON THE RIGHT BACKWARDS —WHEEL.

On the word WHEEL, the covering serjeants of the remaining companies will place themselves in rear of the eighth files from the right of their respective companies, facing to the rear, and will take their four paces to the rear, as directed in Part II., Section 6; the pivot men and the captains will also face as described in that Section.

QUICK—MARCH.
No 1, Eyes Right—Dress, Eyes—Front.
No –, Halt—Dress, Eyes—Front.

On the word MARCH, the companies, except the leading one, will wheel back as described in Part II., Section 6, and the captain of the leading company will give the word *Eyes Right—Dress;* on which his company will dress; when the dressing is completed he will give the words *Eyes—Front,* and fall in on the right. Each captain will halt and dress his own company in echellon, and

then give the words *Eyes—Front*, on which he will take post on the right flank and the covering serjeant on the left.

FORM LINE. QUICK—MARCH.

On the word MARCH, the companies in echellon will step off and march by the right, the coverers when they arrive within 20 paces of the alignment running out and covering on the base, at the point on which the left of their companies are to rest.

No.—, Right—Wheel, Halt—Dress up. Eyes—Front.

As each company in succession comes up to the rear rank of the last halted company, it will receive the words *Right—Wheel* and *Halt—Dress up*, from its captain, who will dress his men from the second file beyond the coverer of the company on his right; he will give the words *Eyes—Front* when his company is dressed and take post in his place in line.

The supernumerary rank of each company will step back to its proper distance as the company next on its left receives the words *Right—Wheel;* except the supernumerary rank of the left company, which will step back on the words *Halt—Dress up*, from its captain.

The colour party will move up independently in echellon in the same manner as the companies move, and will be dressed in line by the captain of the left centre company.

The junior major and band will move across to their places in line during the movement.

the words *Eyes—Front*, on
ll take post on the right flank
ering serjeant on the left.

ord MARCH, the companies in
l step off and march by the
coverers when they arrive
aces of the alignment running
overing on the base, at the
which the left of their com-
o rest.

company in succession comes
rear rank of the last halted
t will receive the words *Right*
nd *Halt—Dress up*, from its
ho will dress his men from
file beyond the coverer of the
n his right; he will give the
—*Front* when his company is
d take post in his place in line.
ernumerary rank of each com-
step back to its proper distance
pany next on its left receives
Right—Wheel; except the
rary rank of the left company,
step back on the words *Hal*—
rom its captain.

our party will move up in-
y in echelon in the same
s the companies move, and
ssed in line by the captain of
ntre company.
ior major and band will move
their places in line during the

Steady. { When the formation is completed the senior major will give the word *Steady*, and move to his place, the adjutant and the base points taking post at the same time.

When the column is left in front, line will be formed in the same manner as when right is in front; the base points facing to the left, the covering serjeant on the right of the leading company, the supernumerary serjeant on the left; the remaining companies wheeling backwards on their left. The junior major will dress the coverers, (who will mark the right of their companies,) from the left, and the adjutant will mark the distant flank of the line.

2. *Forming Line on the leading Company in a Direction oblique to the Front of the Column.*—In this movement the leading company will be wheeled back on its reverse flank into the direction required, the remaining companies will be wheeled back half the number of paces wheeled by the leading company, in addition to the four paces described in the preceding number of this Section; thus, if the leading company wheels back two paces, the remaining companies will wheel back five; the formation will be completed as already explained. If the leading company is wheeled up on the reverse flank, the line will be formed as described in Section 35 of this Part.

3. *Forming Line on the Rear Company from the Halt.*—Line may also be formed on the rear company of a column, the remaining companies first being faced to the right about, and then wheeled four paces on their right backwards, if right is in front, and on their left backwards if left is in front, the captains remaining on the pivot flank. The movement will be performed in all respects as described in No. 1 of this Section, except that each company will move rear rank in front, and after it has wheeled into the alignment, it will receive the word *Forward* from its captain, move to the rear

until its proper front rank is in line with the rear rank of the halted company, and then be halted and fronted, before dressing up into line.

FORM LINE ON No*—, COMPANIES IN FRONT, RIGHT ABOUT—FACE. FOUR PACES ON THE RIGHT (or LEFT) BACKWARDS—WHEEL.† QUICK—MARCH.
No—, Eyes Right—Dress.*
Eyes—Front.
No†—, Halt—Dress,
Eyes—Front.
FORM LINE.
QUICK—MARCH.
Left (or *Right*) *Wheel.*
Forward, Halt
Front—Dress up.
Left (or *Right*) *Wheel.*
Halt—Dress up.
Eyes—Front.

4. *Forming Line on a Central Company.*—Line may be formed on any central company, those in rear of it forming to the front as described in No. 1, and those in front of it forming as described in No. 3 of this Section. The base points will face inwards, the covering serjeant being on the left and the supernumerary serjeant on the right of the named company; the captain of that company dressing his men from the right, whichever flank of the column may be in front.

The senior major will dress the coverers from the right of the company of formation. The serjeant-major will move up to the left of that company, and will dress the coverer of the next company on its right, and then move to the rear. The adjutant will mark the right of the line, the junior major the left.

5. *An Open Column on the March forming Line on the Leading Company.*—If advancing, on the caution, FORM LINE ON THE LEADING COMPANY, the commanding officer will then give the words REMAINING COMPANIES LEFT (or RIGHT) WHEEL, on which the leading company will continue to move straight to the front, and the remaining companies will wheel on moveable pivots, their captains changing flank by the rear. When they have completed the eighth of a circle, the commanding officer will give the

in line with the rear rank of be halted and fronted, before

Forming Line on a Central pany.—Line may be formed ny central company, those in of it forming to the front as ribed in No. 1, and those in t of it forming as described in 3 of this Section. The base ts will face inwards, the cover-serjeant being on the left and supernumerary serjeant on the t of the named company; the ain of that company dressing nen from the right, whichever k of the column may be in front. he senior major will dress the rers from the right of the com-y of formation. The serjeant-or will move up to the left of company, and will dress the rer of the next company on its t, and then move to the rear. adjutant will mark the right e line, the junior major the left.

March forming Line on the ncing, on the caution, FORM PANY, the commanding officer AINING COMPANIES LEFT (or e leading company will con-e front, and the remaining vable pivots, their captains When they have completed nanding officer will give the

word FORWARD, on which they will move on in echellon, and the captain of the leading company will give the word *Halt*, change his flank, and then give the word *Dress*, the coverer and supernumerary serjeant running out to give the base points, and the adjutant will move out to mark the distant flank of the line. The movement will then be completed in the same manner as it is performed from the halt.

If retiring, the first part of the manœuvre will be performed in the same manner as when the column is advancing, except that the captains will not change their flanks on the caution, and the captain of the leading company will give the word *Halt-Front, Dress.* The remaining companies will then form in the same manner as on a rear company from the halt.

S. 34. *An Open Column forming Line in Inverted Order.*

A battalion in column should be practised in forming line on the front or rear company in inverted order, the right company on the left and the left company on the right. The command will be given thus, IN INVERTED ORDER FORM LINE ON N° 1 COMPANY, REMAINING COMPANIES, &c.

S. 35. *A Battalion in Open Column forming Line to the Reverse Flank.*

FORM LINE TO THE REVERSE FLANK. *N°—Right* (or *Left*) *Wheel, Double, Forward. Halt-Dress up.*	On the caution, the captains will change their flanks, their covering serjeants taking the places they leave, and the adjutant will move out to mark the distant flank of the line. The captain of the leading company will at once give the word *Right* (or *Left*) *Wheel, Double,* on which his coverer and supernumerary serjeant will run out

Right or *Left*—*Wheel, Double, Halt*—*Dress up.*	and mark the base, the former taking the flank farthest from the captain, and both facing towards him; the leading company will wheel on a moveable pivot, and when parallel to the alignment will receive the word *Forward*, advance three paces, and will then be halted and dressed on the base points by the captain; the second company will continue to advance along the rear of the first, and on reaching its outward flank will receive the words *Right* (or *Left*)—*Wheel, Double, Forward, Halt* — *Dress up*, from its captain; each company in succession will form in like manner on the outward flank of the last halted company, the covering serjeants running out when within twenty paces of their ground, to mark the outward flank of their companies. If the line is formed from column right in front, the senior major will dress the coverers from the right; if from column left in front, the junior major will dress them from the left. The supernumeraries in succession will step back to their three paces distance as the rear of the column passes clear of them.
Steady.	When the formation is completed, the major who has dressed the coverers will give the word *Steady*, and move to his place, the adjutant and the base points taking post at the same time.

When this movement is performed from the halt, the captains will change their flanks on the caution, and on

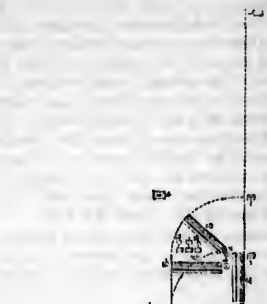
the base, the former taking
farthest from the captain, and
towards him; the leading
ill wheel on a moveable pivot,
parallel to the alignment
the word *Forward*, advance
s, and will then be halted
d on the base points by the
he second company will con-
advance along the rear of
and on reaching its out-
will receive the words *Right*
-Wheel, Double, Forward, Halt
p, from its captain; each com-
succession will form in like
n the outward flank of the
l company, the covering ser-
ning out when within twenty
their ground, to mark the
ank of their companies. If
s formed from column right
he senior major will dress the
om the right; if from column
nt, the junior major will dress
the left. The supernumeraries
on will step back to their three
nce as the rear of the column
r of them.

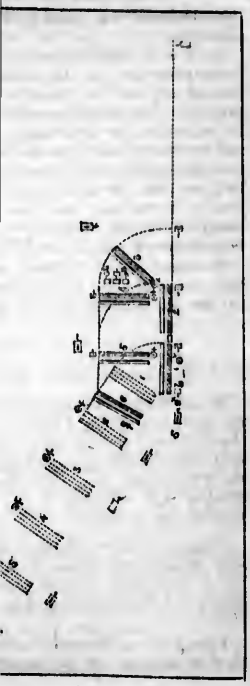
he formation is completed, the
has dressed the coverers will
word *Steady*, and move to his
adjutant and the base points
t at the same time.

performed from the halt, the
lanks on the caution, and on

PLATE XXXII.

AN OPEN COLUMN FORMING LINE TO THE REVERSE FLANK, AT AN ANGLE LESS THAN A RIGHT ANGLE.





the words QUICK-MARCH the whole will move as above directed.

In this evolution the line may be formed at any angle to the direction of the column, but if the leading company is required to wheel less than the quarter circle the captain of the second company must be previously warned in order that he may change his direction on the caution, and march on a line parallel to the new alignment, the following captains changing their directions in succession as they arrive at the same spot. In this case the captains will remain on their original pivot flanks until their companies change direction, when they will move across by the rear during the wheel. Plate XXXII.

Columns of subdivisions or sections will be formed to the reverse flank in like manner, the instructions laid down in Part II., Section 16, being also observed.

S. 36. Forming Line to the Front from Double Column.

When double columns form line to the front in echellon, the movement should always be performed on the march; the command should therefore be given when the battalion is at sufficient distance in rear of an alignment, to allow of the two centre companies, subdivisions, or sections continuing their advance, while the remainder are wheeling forward into echellon.

When a double column is required to form line from the halt without advancing the two front companies, subdivisions, or sections, it should first be closed to quarter distance, and then be deployed as described in Section 42 of this Part.

Line will be formed to the front on the march, from double column, on the same principles as from a single

column. The following description of the formation from double column of subdivisions will apply equally to the formation from double column of companies or sections.

FORM LINE ON THE TWO CENTRE SUBDIVISIONS, REMAINING SUBDIVISIONS OUTWARDS—WHEEL.

On the word WHEEL, the two centre subdivisions will continue to advance, the remaining subdivisions will wheel outwards, their leaders changing their flanks by the rear during the wheel, and the junior major and adjutant moving out to mark the left and right of the line.

FORWARD.

Two centre Subdivisions—Halt.

Four paces outwards—Close—Quick—March.

Left Subdivision, Eyes Left—Dress.
Right Subdivision, Eyes Right—Dress.

As soon as the wheeling subdivisions have completed the eighth of a circle, on the word FORWARD from the commanding officer, they will advance in echellon, and the captain of the left centre company will halt the two centre subdivisions, and order them to open out by the side step four paces each to make room for the colour party and himself. The centre serjeant will give a centre base point, facing to the right, the coverers of the two centre companies will give base points where the outward flanks of their companies are to rest in line, facing inwards; the captains of the two centre companies will, at the same time, move across by the front, and place themselves one on each side of the centre serjeant, and will give the word *Dress* to the two centre subdivisions.

Right (or *Left*) *Subdivision,*

The remaining subdivisions will form in succession, as described in Section 33 of this Part. The lieutenants, as well as the captains, will give the words *Right*

cription of the formation from
ons will apply equally to the
nn of companies or sections.
word WHEEL, the two centre
ns will continue to advance,
ining subdivisions will wheel
their leaders changing their
he rear during the wheel, and
major and adjutant moving
rk the left and right of the

as the wheeling subdivisions
leted the eighth of a circle, on
ORWARD from the command-
they will advance in echellon,
aptain of the left centre com-
halt the two centre subdivi-
order them to open out by the
four paces each to make room
lour party and himself. The
eant will give a centre base
ng to the right, the coverers
o centre companies will give
where the outward flanks of
anies are to rest in line, facing
he captains of the two centre
will, at the same time, move
he front, and place themselves
h side of the centre serjeant,
ve the word *Dress* to the two
livisions.
aining subdivisions will form
on, as described in Section 33
t. The lieutenants, as well as
s, will give the words *Right*

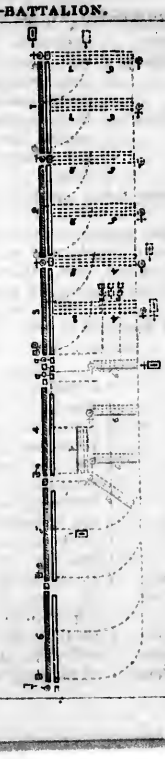
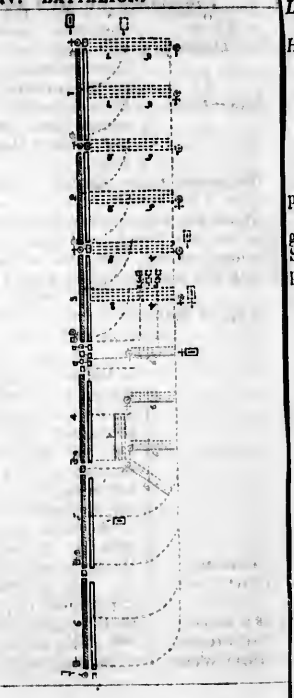


PLATE XXXIII.

A DOUBLE COLUMN OF SUB-DIVISIONS FORMING LINE TO THE RIGHT.



Left (or *Right*) *—Wheel— Halt–Dress-up.* (or *Left*)—*Wheel, Halt—Dress up,* to their subdivisions, but the captains only will move out and dress the whole of their companies from the inner flanks on the covering serjeants, who will mark their outward flanks, covering on the central base points—the lieutenants moving to their places in the supernumerary rank.

Eyes—Front.

The senior major assisted by the serjeant major will superintend the covering from the centre.

When the formation is completed the senior major will give the word *Steady,* and move to the rear, as described in Section 5 of this Part; the serjeant major and the base points will take post at the same time.

S. 37. A Battalion in Double Column forming Line to the Right or Left.—Plate XXXIII.

COLUMN BY THE RIGHT.

FORM LINE TO THE RIGHT. RIGHT WING

1. *Forming to the Right on the March.*—Before forming to the right the column should be ordered to march by that flank for a short distance, to enable the leaders to correct their covering and distances. On the words RIGHT WING RIGHT WHEEL INTO LINE, the leaders of the left wing will change their flanks, and the companies, subdivisions, or sections of the right wing will wheel to the right into line, the supernumerary serjeant of the right company marking the right of the line, all the coverers marking the left of their respective companies, facing to the right, whence the senior major will dress them. The companies of the right wing will be halted and dressed

RIGHT-WHEEL INTO LINE.

Halt—Dress.
Eyes—Front.

from the right, by their captains; if forming from double column of subdivisions or sections, the captains will turn to the right-about and move to the right of their companies during the wheel, the other leaders of subdivisions or sections falling back into the supernumerary rank on the words RIGHT—WHEEL INTO LINE. All the subdivisions or sections, when dressing, will feel to the right of their respective companies, the pivot files of companies only keeping their ground.

The companies, subdivisions, or sections of the left wing (4. 5. 6.) will form successively to their reverse flank, in the manner described in Section 35 of this Part; the captains will dress the whole of their companies from the right on the coverers, who will mark the outer flanks. The other leaders, if forming from subdivisions or sections, will fall back into the supernumerary rank, after giving the words, *Halt—Dress up.*

The adjutant will mark the distant flank of the line, as usual.

Line will be formed to the left on precisely the same principles.

2. *Forming from the Halt.*—This movement may be performed from the halt, in which case the words will be, FORM LINE TO THE RIGHT (OR LEFT), RIGHT (OR LEFT) WING, RIGHT (OR LEFT) WHEEL INTO LINE, THE WHOLE, QUICK—MARCH, &c., on which the companies, subdivisions, or sections of the named wing will wheel into line, as directed in Part II., Section 4 or 9. The other wing will

right, by their captains; if
rom double column of sub-
or sections, the captains will
e right-about and move to the
ieir companies during the wheel,
leaders of subdivisions or sec-
ng back into the supernumerary
ne words RIGHT—WHEEL INTO
ll the subdivisions or sections,
ssing, will feel to the right of
ective companies, the pivot files
ies only keeping their ground.
mpanies, subdivisions, or sec-
ne left wing (4. 5. 6.) will form
ly to their reverse flank, in the
escribed in Section 35 of this
captains will dress the whole
ompanies from the right on the
who will mark the outer flanks.
r leaders, if forming from sub-
or sections, will fall back into
numerary rank, after giving the
alt—Dress up.
ljutant will mark the distant
he line, as usual.

the left on precisely the same

Halt.—This movement may be
which case the words will be,
T (OR LEFT), RIGHT (OR LEFT)
HEEL INTO LINE, THE WHOLE,
ich the companies, subdivisions,
wing will wheel into line, as
n 4 or 9. The other wing will

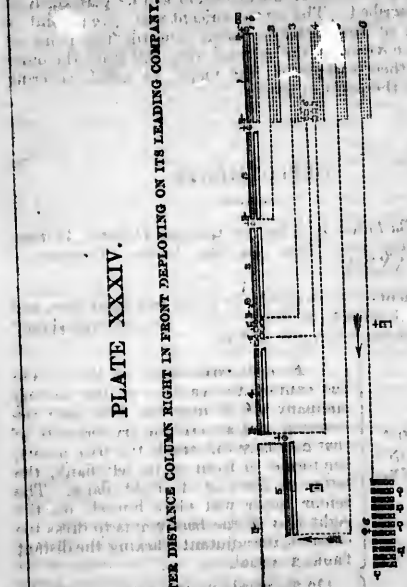


PLATE XXXIV.

A QUARTER DISTANCE COLUMN RIGHT IN FRONT DEPLOYING ON ITS LEADING COMPANY.

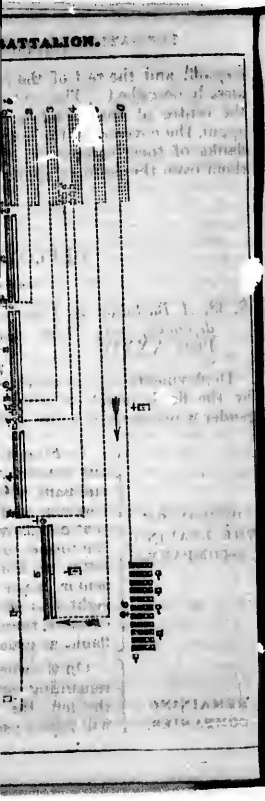
step off,
already
the cent
appui, th
flanks o
them fro

S. 38, *A*
depl
Plat

Deploy
by the f
render it

DEPLO
THE LE
—COMP

REMAI
COMPA



step off, and the rest of the evolution will be performed as already described. The centre serjeant will give a point in the centre of the battalion facing towards the point of appui, the coverers of the outward wing will mark the outer flanks of their companies; the major, as usual, covering them from the point of appui.

DEPLOYMENTS.

S. 38. *A Battalion in Close or Quarter Distance Column, deploying into Line on the leading Company.*—Plate XXXIV.

Deployments will invariably be made on a front base, and by the flank march of fours, unless the ground should render it necessary to move in files.

DEPLOY ON THE LEADING —COMPANY.

1. *From Column Right in Front.*—On the caution the captain of the leading company will change his flank, and the covering and supernumerary serjeants of that company will mark the base points, the former in front of its left flank, the latter in front of its right flank. The senior major will place himself on the right (b.) of the base points to dress the coverers, the adjutant marking the distant flank, as usual.

REMAINING COMPANIES,

On the words FORM FOURS—LEFT, the remaining companies will form fours to the left, the captain of N° 2 company will take a pace to his front, and face to

FORM FOURS —LEFT.

the right about, and his covering serjeant will run out to mark the left of the company, covering on the base points.

QUICK—MARCH.
No 1.
Right—Dress, Eyes—Front.
No 2.
Front—Turn, Halt—Dress up Eyes—Front.

Front—Turn. Halt—Dress up Eyes—Front.

On the word MARCH, the companies in fours will step off. The captain of N° 1 will dress his company, and then take post. The captain of N° 2, as the right of his company clears the left of N° 1, will give the words *Front—Turn,* and when at two paces from the alignment *Halt—Dress up;* he will dress his men from the second file beyond the coverer of N° 1, give his word *Eyes—Front,* and fall in in his place in the line. Each of the remaining captains in succession, as the company that will be on his right receives the words *Front—Turn,* will halt and allow his company to pass him, and when its right flank reaches him he will give the words *Front—Turn,* and when at two paces from the alignment *Halt—Dress up;* the covering serjeants running out in succession as they get within twenty paces of their ground, to mark the left of their companies, and taking post after the dressing is completed, as directed in General Principle No. V. of Line Movements.

Steady.

When the formation is completed, the senior major will give the word *Steady,* and move to his place, the adjutant and the base points taking post at the same time.

ut, and his covering serjeant to mark the left of the com-ng on the base points.

ord MARCH, the companies l step off. The captain of ress his company, and then The captain of N° 2, as his company clears the left vill give the words *Front*— when at two paces from nt *Halt—Dress up;* he will en from the second file be-verer of N° 1, give his word t, and fall in in his place in ach of the remaining captains n, as the company that will right receives the words *Front* l halt and allow his company n, and when its right flank m he will give the words n, and when at two paces alignment *Halt—Dress up;* ng serjeants running out in as they get within twenty eir ground, to mark the left mpanies, and taking post after g is completed, as directed in inciple No. V. of Line Move-

he formation is completed, the or will give the word *Steady*, to his place, the adjutant and oints taking post at the same

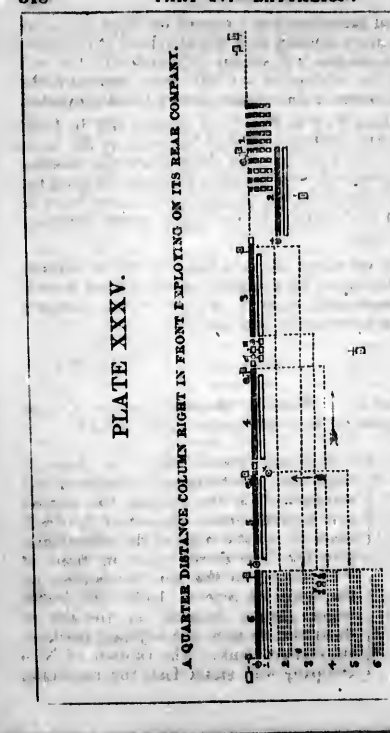
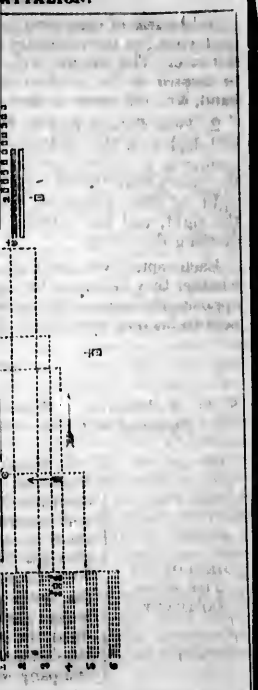


PLATE XXXV.

A QUARTER DISTANCE COLUMN RIGHT IN FRONT EXPLOYING ON ITS REAR COMPANY.



As the rear of each company is cleared by those which are deploying, its supernumerary rank will step back to its proper distance. The colours will deploy independently, but will be dressed by the captain of the left centre company, the band, &c., will move to their places during the deployment.

2. *From Column Left in Front.*—A column left in front will deploy on the leading company in precisely the same manner as a column right in front, the junior major dressing the points from the left, the covering serjeants marking the right of their companies, the companies forming fours to the right, and the captain of the right centre company dressing the colours.

Each captain will dress the men from coverer to coverer, whether they belong to his company or not, placing himself opposite the second file from the coverer of the company next to his own towards the base point.

S. 39. *A Battalion in Close or Quarter Distance Column deploying on the Rear Company.*—Plate XXXV.

DEPLOY ON THE REAR COMPANY.

1. *From Column Right in Front.*—Supposing the battalion to consist of six companies, on the caution the coverer and supernumerary serjeant of N° 6 will move up to the front of the column and give the base points close in front of N° 1, facing to the left, the coverer on the outer or reverse flank; the junior major placing himself on the left to dress the coverers, the adjutant marking the distant flank. The captain of N° 6 company will stand fast, the remaining

captains and covering serjeants will change their flanks.

REMAINING COMPANIES. FORM FOURS—RIGHT.

On the words FORM FOURS—RIGHT the companies, except N° 6, will form fours to the right, and the captain of N° 5 company will take one pace to his front and face to the right about to be ready to halt his men.

QUICK—MARCH.

N° 5, Halt—Front—Dress. N° 6, by the Left, Double March. N° 6. Halt-Dress up. Eyes—Front.

On the word QUICK MARCH the companies in fours will step off. As soon as the left of N° 5 company is clear of the right of N° 6, the former will be halted, fronted, and ordered to dress, by its captain, who will fall in on the left; the latter will then receive the words *N° 6 by the Left, Double—March*, and when at two paces from the alignment *Halt—Dress up*, from its captain, who will dress his company from the left, give the word *Eyes—Front*, and change to his proper place in line.

N° 4, Halt—Front—Dress. N° 5, by the Left, Quick—March. N° 5, Halt-Dress up, &c.

The moment N° 5 company is halted the captain of N° 4 will halt and allow his company to pass him, and as soon as its left flank is clear of the right of N° 5, N° 4 will be halted, fronted, and ordered to dress by its captain, on which N° 5 will receive the words *By the Left, Quick—March*, and when at two paces from the alignment it will be halted and dressed up into line, by its captain, who will run out for that purpose; and thus each company in succession will be halted and fronted, and then brought up into line as soon as its front is clear.

nd covering serjeants will
r flanks.

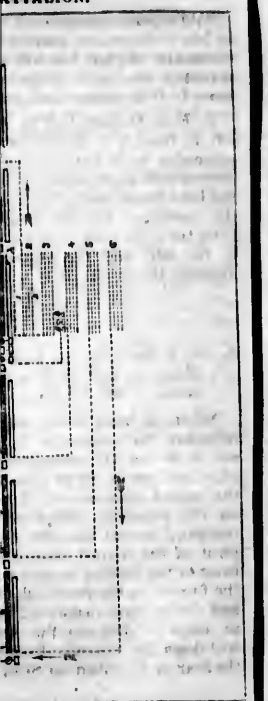
ords FORM FOURS—RIGHT the
except N° 6, will form fours to
nd the captain of N° 5 com-
ake one pace to his front and
right about to be ready to halt

word QUICK MARCH the com-
ours will step off. As soon as
N° 5 company is clear of the
° 6, the former will be halted,
nd ordered to dress, by its
o will fall in on the left; the
then receive the word N° 6
ft, *Double—March*, and when
ces from the alignment *Halt*
p, from its captain, who will
company from the left, give
Eyes—Front, and change to his
ce in line.

ment N° 5 company is halted
n of N° 4 will halt and allow
ny to pass him, and as soon as
k is clear of the right of N° 5,
be halted, fronted, and ordered
its captain, on which N° 5 will
e words *By the Left, Quick*—
d when at two paces from the
it will be halted and dressed
ne, by its captain, who will run
hat purpose; and thus each
n succession will be halted and
d then brought up into line as
front is clear.

PLATE XXXVI.

A QUARTER DISTANCE COLUMN RIGHT IN FRONT DEPLOYING ON A CENTRAL COMPANY.



The supernumerary rank will gain its distance as it halts in line; the colour party will deploy independently as the companies deploy, but will be dressed by the officer commanding the right centre company; the band, &c., will move to their places during the movement.

2. *From Column Left in Front.*—A battalion in column left in front will deploy on its rear company on the same principles as a battalion in column, right in front; the coverer and supernumerary serjeant of N° 1 company giving the base points facing to the right, the senior major dressing the coverers (who will mark the left of their companies from the right), the companies, except N° 1, forming fours to the left, and the captain of the left centre company dressing the colour party with his own men.

S. 40. *A Battalion in Close or Quarter Distance Column Right or Left in Front deploying on a Central Company.*—Plate XXXVI.

When a battalion is required to deploy on a central company, the companies (4. 5. 6.) in rear of the named one will move on the principles already described for a deployment on a front company, and those in front of the named company (1. 2.) and the company itself (3.) on the principles described for a deployment on a rear company, except that the coverer and supernumerary serjeant of the named company will give the base points in front of the leading company of the column facing inwards, the former on the reverse flank, the latter on the pivot flank, and the serjeant-major will move up to the reverse flank to assist in dressing the coverers. The senior major (s.) will dress the coverers from the centre, and then move to the rear as described in Section 5 of this Part; the junior

major and adjutant will mark the flanks of the line, as usual. The word of command will be, DEPLOY ON N°—COMPANY, REMAINING COMPANIES FORM FOURS OUTWARDS, QUICK—MARCH.

S. 41. A Battalion in Close or Quarter Distance Column deploying in Inverted Order.

A battalion in column should be practised in deploying on the leading company in inverted order, in which case the command will be, IN INVERTED ORDER—DEPLOY ON THE LEADING COMPANY.

S. 42. A Battalion in Double Column deploying.

1. *Deploying from Double Column.*—A double column at close or quarter distance may deploy on the two centre companies or subdivisions, in the same manner as a single column. The two centre companies or subdivisions opening out, on the caution, four paces by word of command from the captain of the left centre company to make room for the colours and that officer; the centre serjeant and coverers of the two centre companies giving base points. If the column is composed of subdivisions, the outward flanks only of companies, when deploying, will be marked by the coverers, and each captain will dress both subdivisions of his company from the inner flank.

2. *A Double Column deploying to One Flank.*—If a battalion in double column should move up to the extremity of the ground on which it is to deploy, it may deploy both wings in the same direction. Thus, if a double column of subdivisions moves up to the right extremity of the alignment which it is to occupy, it will deploy on the right subdivision of N° 1 company. The right wing will deploy on its rear subdivision (the right subdivision of N° 1 company) in the usual manner, the captains and lieutenants

—BATTALION.

ark the flanks of the line, as
and will be, DEPLOY ON N°—
OMPANIES FORM FOURS OUT-

---

*e or Quarter Distance Column
Inverted Order.*

ıould be practised in deploying
inverted order, in which case the
TED ORDER—DEPLOY ON THE

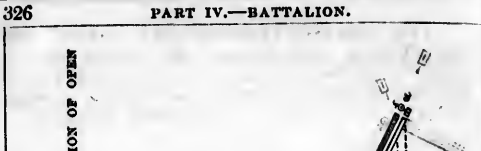
Double Column deploying.

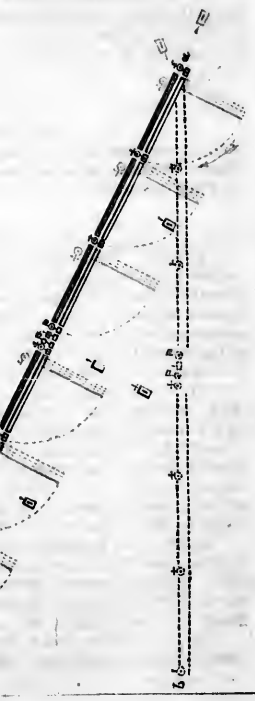
e Column.—A double column at
may deploy on the two centre
in the same manner as a single
mpanies or subdivisions opening
aces by word of command from
e company to make room for the
he centre serjeant and coverers
ies giving base points. If the
ıbdivisions, the outward flanks
eploying, will be marked by the
will dress both subdivisions of
r flank.

oying to One Flank.—If a bat-
ould move up to the extremity
s to deploy, it may deploy both
n. Thus, if a double column of
the right extremity of the align-
, it will deploy on the right sub-
. The right wing will deploy
the right subdivision of N° 1
ner, the captains and lieutenants

PLATE XXXVII.

A BATTALION IN LINE CHANGING FRONT BY THE INTERMEDIATE FORMATION OF OPEN COLUMN BY THE FLANK MARCH OF FOURS.





changing places on the caution. The left wing will take ground to the left in fours, and when the right wing has completed its deployment the left will continue the formation of the line by deploying on its leading subdivision.

S. 43. *A Battalion in Line changing Front by the intermediate Formation of open Column on any named Company.* —Plate XXXVII.

OPEN COLUMN IN FRONT OF N° 1, REMAINING COMPANIES FORM FOURS—RIGHT, QUICK—MARCH, &c.
Or,
OPEN COLUMN IN FRONT OF N° 1, WHICH WILL WHEEL BACK ON ITS RIGHT.
N° 1 on the Right backwards—Wheel, Quick—March, Halt—Dress, Eyes—front.
REMAINING COMPANIES

1. *To the Right, Left thrown Forward, on the Right Company.*—In this movement the right flank (a) of the right company, will be the fixed point of appui of the new line, that being the point of intersection of the two lines. If the change of front is to be at right angles to the old line, the right company will stand fast, but if oblique, that company will be wheeled back by the captain on its right, till perpendicular to the new alignment (a c). In the latter case the direction of the new alignment will be indicated by the supernumerary serjeant, who will, as usual, give a point at six paces from the pivot flank of N° 1 company; the captain will face towards his company, step back one pace, and give the command *N° 1 on the Right Backwards—Wheel,* &c., his covering serjeant taking his place and facing in the direction of the new alignment; after giving the word *Dress,* the captain will again take post. The adjutant will mark the distant point as usual.

FORM FOURS—RIGHT.—QUICK-MARCH, &c.

The remaining companies will then form open column left in front on the right company, as directed in Section 32 of this Part.

RIGHT WHEEL INTO LINE. QUICK-MARCH, &c.

After which the column will be wheeled into line to the right, as directed in Section 2 of this Part.

2. *To the Left, Right thrown Forward, on the Left Company.*—A line will change front to the left on the left company in the same manner as to the right on the right company, the captain of the left company changing his flank on the caution, and his company being wheeled back on its left, if the new line is to be formed obliquely to the old one. The column will then be formed on it right in front, and it will be wheeled to the left into line.

OPEN COLUMN IN REAR OF No 1, REMAINING COMPANIES FORM FOURS RIGHT, QUICK—MARCH, &c.

Or,

OPEN COLUMN IN REAR OF No 1, WHICH WILL WHEEL BACK ON ITS LEFT.

No 1 on the Left Backwards—Wheel, Quick—March, Halt—Dress, Eyes—Front.

REMAINING COMPANIES FORM FOURS—RIGHT, QUICK-MARCH, &c.

3. *To the Left, Left thrown back on the Right Company.*—In this movement, the left of No 1 company, to which flank the captain will change on the caution, will be the point of formation for the new line, it being the point of intersection of the two lines. If the change is to be at right angles to the old line, the right company will stand fast, but if oblique to it, that company will be wheeled back, by the captain, as described in No. 1 of this Section.

The remaining companies will then form open column, right in front on the right company, as directed in Section 32 of this Part.

maining companies will then
n column left in front on the
ipany, as directed in Section 32
rt.

hich the column will be wheeled
to the right, as directed in Sec-
this Part.

own Forward, on the Left Com-
front to the left on the left
ner as to the right on the right
left company changing his flank
pany being wheeled back on its
be formed obliquely to the old
be formed on it right in front,
e left into line.

3. *To the Left, Left thrown back*
the Right Company.—In this
ovement, the left of N° 1 com-
ny, to which flank the captain
ll change on the caution, will be
e point of formation for the new
ne, it being the point of intersection of the two lines. If the
ange is to be at right angles to
e old line, the right company
ill stand fast, but if oblique to
, that company will be wheeled
ck, by the captain, as described
No. 1 of this Section.

The remaining companies will
en form open column, right in
ont on the right company, as
rected in Section 32 of this Part.

LEFT WHEEL INTO LINE, QUICK—MARCH, &c.	After which the column will be wheeled into line to the left, as directed in Section 2 of this Part.

4. *To the Right, Right thrown back on the Left Company.*—A line may change front to the right on the left company, in the same manner as to the left on the right company. In this case the captain of the left company will not have to change his flank; if the new line is to be formed obliquely to the old one, his company will be wheeled back on the right, the column will be formed left in front in rear of it, and then wheeled to the right into line.

OPEN COLUMN LEFT (or RIGHT) IN FRONT ON N°—&c. Or, OPEN COLUMN LEFT (or RIGHT) IN FRONT ON N°—WHICH WILL WHEEL BACK ON ITS RIGHT OR LEFT. *N°—On the Right (or Left) Backwards—Wheel.* *Quick—March* *Halt—Dress* *Eyes—Front.* REMAINING COMPANIES FORM FOURS—INWARDS, QUICK—MARCH, &c.	5. *To the Right or Left on a Central Company.*—In this movement open column will be formed on the named company, as described in Section 32 of this Part. If the change of front is to be to the right, the column will be formed left in front; if to the left, the column will be formed right in front. When the new line is to be formed obliquely to the old one, the named company will be wheeled back until perpendicular to the new alignment, the junior major and adjutant marking the distant points, as usual.
RIGHT (or LEFT) WHEEL INTO LINE, QUICK—MARCH, &c.	After the column is formed it will wheel into line in the usual manner.

It will be useful to remember that when the change of front is to be to the right, the column will be formed left in front. When the change of front is to be to the left, the column will be formed right in front. Also, when forming in an oblique direction, if the change of front is to be to the right, the named company will wheel back on its right; if the change of front is to be to the left, it will wheel back on the left.

FORMATION OF SQUARES.

GENERAL PRINCIPLES.

I.

Use of Squares.—Men are formed into square to resist attacks of cavalry; care should always be taken not to expose men unnecessarily in this formation to the fire of artillery.

II.

The Four Deep Square.—The formation of a square four deep is the most eligible for a battalion; it is sufficiently strong to resist cavalry, and gives space for the officers, serjeants, band, &c., in the centre, and enables every man to fire.

III.

The Two Deep Square.—A battalion may be formed into square two deep to protect baggage or treasure against infantry only.

IV.

Solid Square.—Any compact mass of soldiers will be safe against cavalry if the outside men kneel down and slant their bayonets outwards.

ber that when the change of
e column will be formed left
of front is to be to the left, the
n front. Also, when forming
change of front is to be to
will wheel back on its right;
to the left, it will wheel back

OF SQUARES.

PRINCIPLES.

I.

e formed into square to resist
ould always be taken not to
this formation to the fire of

II.

—The formation of a square
le for a battalion; it is suffi-
alry, and gives space for the
in the centre, and enables every

III.

battalion may be formed into
baggage or treasure against

IV.

act mass of soldiers will be safe
men kneel down and slant their

PLATE XXXVIII.

AN OPEN COLUMN FORMING SQUARE ON THE LEADING COMPANY.

S.

ON THE L
ING COM
FORM SQU
QUICK
DOUBLE
MARC

No.—
Sections
outward

XXXVIII.

ARE ON THE LEADING COMPANY.

FORMATIONS.

S. 44. A Battalion in Column forming Square.

ON THE LEADING COMPANY FORM SQUARE. QUICK (or DOUBLE)—MARCH.

1. *Forming Square on the leading Company of an Open Column.*—On the word MARCH, the whole of the companies will step off except the leading one, which will stand fast (the flank files facing outwards); the second company will close upon it and then halt without word of command (the flank files also facing outwards). The captain, covering serjeant, and supernumeraries of the former company will run to the rear of the latter, on the above command.

No.—Sections—outwards.

The remaining companies, except the two in rear of the column, will wheel outwards by sections at the command of their captains, as they arrive successively at quarter distance from the companies that precede them; when they have wheeled the quarter circle, the flank sections will halt, without word of command, the two centre sections closing upon them, all touching towards the leading company, which will now be considered the front of the square. The two rear companies will close up and form the rear of the square, being halted and faced to the right about successively by their respective captains, the flank

No.—Halt—Right about—Face.

files facing outwards. The captains, coverers, and supernumeraries of the two rear companies will run into square the moment the third company from the rear receives the words *Sections outwards.*

During the march the colour party will incline towards the centre of the company which it is following, and on the words *Sections—outwards,* it will wheel to the right (or left) and halt in rear of the pivot subdivision.

ON THE REAR COMPANY. FORM—SQUARE. RIGHT ABOUT—FACE. QUICK (OR DOUBLE)—MARCH.

2. *Forming Square on the Rear Company of an Open Column.*—Suppose the column to consist of eight companies standing right in front. On the word FACE, the whole column will be faced to the right about, and on the word MARCH, all the companies will step off except No 8, which will stand fast, the flank files facing outwards. No 7 company will close upon it and halt without word of command, the flank files also facing outwards. No 6 company will close upon No 7, and will then receive the words *Front—Turn, Sections-Outwards,* on which it will turn to the right about and wheel outwards by sections, the flank sections halting of themselves when square, the two centre sections closing on them, the whole touching towards the formed companies. Each company in succession will close on the last halted company, and then re-

g outwards. The captains, nd supernumeraries of the two nies will run into square the ne third company from the es the words *Sections out-*

our party will incline towards ich it is following, and on the will wheel to the right (or vot subdivision.

—

ing Square on the Rear Com-an Open Column.—Suppose to consist of eight companies ight in front. On the word whole column will be faced ht about, and on the word l the companies will step off 8, which will stand fast, the facing outwards. N° 7 will close upon it and halt ord of command, the flank facing outwards. N° 6 com-close upon N° 7, and will then e words *Front—Turn, Sec-ards*, on which it will turn ht about and wheel outwards s, the flank sections halting of when square, the two centre losing on them, the whole owards the formed companies. pany in succession will close on alted company, and then re-

N° 6, Front—Turn Sections—Outwards.

N° —, Front—Turn Sections—Outwards.

N° 2, Halt—Front.

N° 1, Halt—Front.

ceive the words *Front—Turn, Sections—Outwards* in like manner, with the exception of the two last N°s 1 and 2, which will be halted and fronted in succession by their captains as they come up to the square, their flank files facing outwards. The captains, coverers, and supernumeraries of N° 7 and 8 companies will run round on the words QUICK-MARCH, and place themselves close to the proper front rank of N° 7 company; the captains, coverers, and supernumeraries of N° 1 and 2 companies will run into the square as N° 3 company receives the word *Front—Turn Sections Outwards.*

The colour party will incline towards the centre of N° 4 company during the march, and will turn to the front with it and wheel as described in N° 1 of this Section.

If a column on the march is ordered to form square, the leading company will at once receive the words *N°—, Halt—Dress*, from its captain, who will immediately run to the rear of the second company, his coverer and supernumeraries moving round to the rear at the same time. If the column is retiring, the captains, coverers, and supernumeraries of the two leading companies will run back on the words *Halt—Dress*, and form as described in N° 2 of this Section.

—

ON THE LEFT (OR RIGHT)

3. *Forming Square on the Centre from Open Column.*—When square is to be formed on the centre, if right is in front

CENTRE COMPANY FORM—SQUARE.

RIGHT (or LEFT) WING RIGHT ABOUT—FACE.
QUICK (or DOUBLE) MARCH.
Sections—Outwards.
Front—Turn Sections—Outwards.
Sections—Outwards, &c.

the left centre company will be named as the company of formation, if left is in front the right centre company will be so named.

After the caution the leading wing will be faced to the right about, and on the word MARCH the whole column will step off, the company of formation at once receiving the words *Sections outwards* from its captain; when the outward sections have wheeled the quarter circle they will halt and the centre sections will close on them, the men feeling in to the pivot flanks. The square will be completed on the company of formation, as described in Nos 1 and 2 of this Section.

---

4. *A Column taking Ground to a Flank by Fours forming Square.*—When a battalion in open column taking ground to a flank by fours, is required to form square, the commanding officer will give the words ON THE LEFT (or RIGHT) CENTRE COMPANY FORM SQUARE, WINGS INWARDS TURN, on which the wings will turn inwards, the captain of the named company will give the words *Sections outwards*, and square will be formed as already described. When the column is right in front the square will form on the left centre company, when left in front, on the right centre company.

---

5. *A Battalion in Quarter Distance Column forming Square.*—A column at quarter distance will be formed into square in the same manner as an open column,

ntre company will be named
npany of formation, if left is
e right centre company will be

e caution the leading wing
ed to the right about, and on
MARCH the whole column will
the company of formation at
ying the words *Sections out-*
a its captain; when the out-
ons have wheeled the quarter
will halt and the centre sec-
close on them, the men feeling
pivot flanks. The square will
ted on the company of forma-
escribed in Nos 1 and 2 of this

---

d to a Flank by Fours forming
in open column taking ground
ired to form square, the com-
the words ON THE LEFT (or
FORM SQUARE, WINGS IN-
wings will turn inwards, the
ny will give the words *Sections*
formed as already described.
front the square will form on
en left in front, on the right

---

ter Distance Column forming
arter distance will be formed
manner as an open column,

except that the commanding officer will give the word SECTIONS OUTWARDS to all the centre companies, as the second company closes on the first; the colours must move to the centre of the company they are following, on the caution, or close to that place if on the halt, that they may not interfere with the sections as they wheel outward.

A quarter distance column taking ground to a flank by fours, should not be ordered to form square on the centre, it should be ordered to turn to the front and then form on the leading company. A quarter distance column retiring should also be ordered to turn to the front before forming square.

S. 45. A Battalion in Double Column forming Square.

A double column of subdivisions will form square on the two leading subdivisions, in the same manner as a single column of companies forms square on the leading company. A double column of companies, when it consists of ten or more companies, may form square in a similar manner, the side faces being wheeled outwards by subdivisions instead of sections; but when it consists of less than ten companies, say six, square will be formed as follows:—The whole will form four deep and close to the centre, the two leading companies will stand fast, or halt, if on the march, forming the front face; the two next will move on, and when at subdivision distance from the front will wheel outwards by companies forming the side faces, the two rear companies will close on the flanks of the two side faces, halt, face to the right about, and thus complete the square.

S. 46. A Square preparing for Cavalry.

A square will prepare for cavalry as described in Part III., Section 9, No. 3.

S. 47. A Battalion in Square re-forming Column or Double Column.

RE-FORM—COLUMN.

QUICK-MARCH.

No—, Halt—Dress.

No—, Halt—Dress.

No—, Halt—Front—Dress.

1. *Re-forming Column or Double Column of Subdivisions.*—On the caution RE-FORM-COLUMN, the rear sections of the side faces will step back to wheeling distance, and the pivot men will face to the proper front of the column, the flank men of the two leading companies will also face to the front, and those of the two rear companies will face to the rear.

On the words QUICK—MARCH, the sections of the side faces will wheel backwards, and re-form companies, their captains giving the words, *Halt—Dress;* at the same time the front company will advance and the two rear companies will retire, receiving respectively from their captains the words *Halt—Dress,* and *Halt—Front, Dress,* when at the regular quarter distance.

The captains must run out the instant the word QUICK—MARCH is given, and take up their covering on the pivot flanks of their companies. A double column of subdivisions will be re-formed in like manner.

2. *Re-forming Double Column of Companies.*—A square formed from double column of companies, as described in Section 45 of this Part, will be reduced, when it consists of ten or more companies, and has been formed according

reparing for Cavalry.

avalry as described in Part III.,

re re-forming Column or Double olumn.

orming Column or Double Co- ubdivisions.—On the caution RE- LUMN, the rear sections of the will step back to wheeling dis- l the pivot men will face to the ont of the column, the flank men vo leading companies will also he front, and those of the two panies will face to the rear.

words QUICK—MARCH, the sec- the side faces will wheel back- nd re-form companies, their cap- ng the words, *Halt—Dress;* at e time the front company will and the two rear companies will ceiving respectively from their the words *Halt—Dress,* and *ront, Dress,* when at the regular istance.

at the instant the word QUICK— up their covering on the pivot A double column of subdivisions nner.

olumn of Companies.—A square n of companies, as described in l be reduced, when it consists of nd has been formed according

to the first method, in a similar manner to that described in No. 1 of this Section, the side faces wheeling back by subdivisions instead of sections, and the two front and four rear companies moving out to subdivision distance; but when it consists of less than ten companies, and has been formed according to the second method, the two front companies will stand fast, the flank men (on the caution) facing to their front, the side faces, on the words *Quick—March,* will wheel back by companies into column, and the two rear companies will move back, and halt and front at subdivision distance; the whole will then be formed into two deep, as described in Part I., Section 46.

S. 48. A Battalion in Line forming Square.

When a battalion in line is required to form square, it will first move into quarter-distance column on a given company, or into double column of subdivisions at quarter distance, in rear of the two centre subdivisions; after which square will be formed on the leading company, or two leading subdivisions, as described in Sections 44 and 45 of this Part.

S. 49. A Battalion forming Company Squares.

It may in certain cases be deemed expedient to form all or part of the companies of a battalion into independent company squares. In this case the commanding officer will give the caution FORM COMPANY SQUARES, on which the captains will proceed as detailed in Part II., Section 32. When the squares are to be reduced, the commanding officer will give the caution RE-FORM COMPANIES, on which the captains will re-form their companies, as detailed in the above-named section.

S. 50. *A Close Column forming Square.*

A battalion in close column should first open out to quarter distance, and then form square as described in Section 44 of this Part. In case of a sudden attack it may prepare for cavalry as a company in close column of sections.

S. 51. *A Square marching in any Direction.*

THE SQUARE WILL ADVANCE (RETIRE, OR MOVE TO THE RIGHT OR LEFT).	A battalion formed in square may be ordered to march in any direction.
INWARDS—FACE.	On the word INWARDS—FACE, the face that is to lead stands fast, and those on either side of it face to the right and left, in the direction named; the face in rear of it will face to the right about.
QUICK—MARCH.	On the word MARCH, the square will step off, great care being taken that the men of the faces that are moving in files, remain properly closed up. When the square advances it will march by the left, when it retires it will march by the right; when it moves to the right it will march by the left, and when to the left it will march by the right; the serjeant-major will move out on the caution, and place himself on the directing flank to regulate the direction.
HALT.	On the word HALT, the square will halt and face outwards, every man standing perfectly steady, unless ordered to close in any direction, or to dress.

---

umn forming Square.

mn should first open out to form square as described in case of a sudden attack it may ompany in close column of

hing in any Direction.

ion formed in square may be march in any direction.

word INWARDS-FACE, the face ead stands fast, and those on of it face to the right and left, ction named; the face in rear ace to the right about.

word MARCH, the square will eat cars being taken that the e faces that are moving in n properly closed up.

the square advances it will the left, when it retires it by the right; when it moves t it will march by the left, and he left it will march by the serjeant-major will move out tion, and place himself on the ank to regulate the direction.

word HALT, the square will halt ntwards, every man standing eady, unless ordered to close ction, or to dress.

S. 52. A Battalion forming Square Two deep, and re-forming Column.

1. *Forming Square.*—A battalion in open or half distance column may form square two deep on the same principles that it forms square four deep, the leading company only halting to form the front face, the following companies wheeling outwards by subdivisions, and the rear company forming the rear face; the caution will be ON THE LEADING COMPANY, TWO DEEP, FORM-SQUARE.

2. *Re-forming Column.*—Columns will also be re-formed on the same principle as from a square four deep, the leading company standing fast, the side faces wheeling back by subdivisions, and the rear company moving back to subdivision distance.

3, *Double Columns forming Square Two deep.*—Double columns will form square two deep in the same manner as single columns. If the double column is of companies, the two leading and two rear companies will form the front and rear faces, the remainder of the column wheeling outwards by companies.

4, *A Square Two deep Marching.*—When a square two deep is required to march, the side faces should first be ordered to form fours in the required direction, and the rear face to face about.

MOVEMENTS AND CHANGES OF FRONT IN ECHELLON.

GENERAL PRINCIPLES.

I.

Echellons.—There are two descriptions of Echellon formed from line, the Direct Echellon and the Oblique Echellon.

II.

Direct Echellon.—The direct echellon is formed by companies or parts of companies marching successively direct to the front, or rear, commencing from either flank of the battalion, at any distance from each other that may be named by the commanding officer. A direct echellon may be re-formed into a line parallel to that from which it moved, by the successive formation of its component parts on any named and halted part; but a line cannot be formed from a direct echellon at an angle to the original alignment without a fresh adjustment of the distances between the pivot flanks of its component parts.

III.

Use of Direct Echellon.—The direct echellon is formed for the purposes of advancing or refusing a flank.

IV.

Oblique Echellon.—1. The oblique echellon is formed from line by wheeling companies or parts of companies forward to either flank. Companies may be formed in oblique echellon at any angle to the original line, less than a right angle, which latter would place them in open column. The perpendicular distance between companies will of course vary, according to the angle at which the echellon is formed, but the distance from the pivot flank of one company, to the pivot flank of the next, will always be equal to the breadth of the company that would occupy that space, if wheeled back into line; consequently, a battalion in oblique echellon may be wheeled back into a line parallel to that from which it was formed, at any moment.

2. When marching in oblique echellon, the pivot files of companies or parts of companies must always be kept at the proper distances from each other, and their dressing, in

et echellon is formed by com-
marching successively direct to
ng from either flank of the
om each other that may be
fficer. A direct echellon may
el to that from which it moved,
of its component parts on any
line cannot be formed from
e to the original alignment
of the distances between the
parts.

II.

The direct echellon is formed
or refusing a flank.

V.

oblique echellon is formed from
or parts of companies forward
may be formed in oblique
original line, less than a right
place them in open column.
between companies will of
e angle at which the echellon
from the pivot flank of one
of the next, will always be
company that would occupy
nto line; consequently, a bat-
ay be wheeled back into a line
was formed, at any moment.
ique echellon, the pivot files of
panies must always be kept at
ch other, and their dressing, in

a line parallel to the original alignment, carefully preserved. The leaders of companies, or the pivot files of subdivisions or sections, will look to the flank towards which the battalion is inclining, for their distance and dressing.

3. When oblique echellon is formed of companies, the captains will always, if not there already, change to the flanks that become the pivots, but when taking ground in a diagonal direction, in echellon of subdivisions or sections, the captains will retain the places they occupy in line, to whichever flank the battalion may be ordered to incline; the pivot men of all the subdivisions or sections preserving their distances and dressing in the line of pivots, except when inclining to the right, when the captains will keep the distances and dressing of the right subdivisions or sections.

V.

Use of Oblique Echellon.—The oblique echellon is used when a battalion is required to take ground diagonally to the front and to a flank, or when a line is required to change its front. In the former case companies may be wheeled up any number of paces; but when the echellon is formed of subdivisions or sections it will be found most convenient always to wheel them up the eighth of a circle. In the latter case the formation of echellon of companies should generally be adopted. In changes of front the remaining companies must invariably be wheeled up half the angle that the company of formation is wheeled, as will hereafter be described.

VI.

Companies or Parts of Companies in Echellon to be parallel to each other.—Each company, or part of a company, will move on a line perpendicular to its own front; therefore, when moving towards a flank, all the component parts of an echellon must be parallel to each other, in order that their lines of direction may also be parallel.

VII.

Taking Ground to the Rear in Echellon.—When a battalion is to take ground in an oblique direction to the rear, or when a flank of the battalion is to be thrown back, the companies, or parts of companies, will be faced about, and then wheeled forwards, rear rank in front.

VIII.

Wheeling on Fixed and Moveable Pivots.—When great accuracy is required, companies may be wheeled into echellon from the halt on fixed pivots, the covering serjeants taking the named number of paces from the eighth file, as described in Part II., Section 6; but in general it will be found more convenient and expeditious to wheel the base company into the direction required, and then to wheel the remaining companies on moveable pivots, giving the word FORWARD, when they have gained the required angle. Subdivisions and sections should always be wheeled in this manner.

MOVEMENTS AND CHANGES OF FRONT IN ECHELLON.

S. 53. *A Battalion wheeling forward by Companies from Line into Echellon.*—Plate XXXIX.

WHEEL INTO ECHELLON OF COMPANIES TO THE RIGHT (OR LEFT).

1. *Wheeling into Echellon from the Halt.*—On the caution the captains, if not there already, will change to the named flanks of their companies.

On the word WHEEL, the covering serjeants will place themselves in front of the eighth files from the named flanks of their companies, and take the number of paces ordered, and the captains and

PLATE XXXIX.

II.

r in Echellon.—When a bat-
oblique direction to the rear,
ion is to be thrown back, the
anies, will be faced about, and
ank in front.

III.

loveable Pivots.—When great
es may be wheeled into echellon
, the covering serjeants taking
rom the eighth file, as described
n general it will be found more
o wheel the base company into
then to wheel the remaining
ts, giving the word FORWARD,
required angle. Subdivisions
e wheeled in this manner.

ES OF FRONT IN ECHELLON.

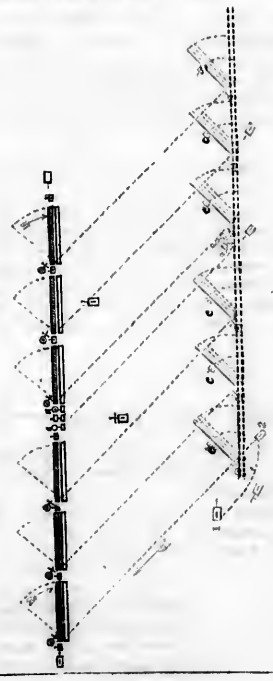
g forward by Companies from
n.—Plate XXXIX.

eling into Echellon from the
n the caution the captains, if
already, will change to the
nks of their companies.

word WHEEL, the covering
will place themselves in front of
files from the named flanks of
panies, and take the number
ordered, and the captains and

PLATE XXXIX.

WHEELING FORWARD BY COMPANIES FROM LINE INTO ECHELLON, ADVANCING, AND THEN RE-FORMING LINE.



COMPANI
PACES TO
RIGHT
LEFT) WI

QUICK
MARC

Halt—I
Eyes—

THE EC
LON W
ADVAN

QUICK
MARC

TAKE GE
TO THE
(OR LEF
ECHELL

COMPANIES — PACES TO THE RIGHT (or LEFT) WHEEL.

pivot men will move as described in Part II., Section 6. All the coverers ought thus to be in a line (c.c.c.), but if any small correction is necessary, it will be made by the major, who will move up for that purpose to the flank which is to lead. If the companies wheel to the right, the senior major will dress the coverers, if to the left, the junior major will dress them.

QUICK—MARCH.

Halt—Dress, Eyes—Front.

On the word MARCH, the companies will wheel as directed in Part II., each captain will give the words *Halt—Dress, Eyes—Front*, and then fall in on the pivot flank of his company, his covering serjeant taking post on the reverse flank of the front rank at the same time.

THE ECHELLON WILL ADVANCE.

QUICK—MARCH.

On the word QUICK—MARCH, the echellon will advance, the captain of the leading company carefully selecting points to march upon, and attention being paid to the rules laid down in the general principles of echellons. The major of the wing nearest the directing flank will place himself in rear of the captain of the leading company, and superintend his direction during the march, the other major and the adjutant will look to the covering of the line of pivots.

TAKE GROUND TO THE RIGHT (or LEFT) IN ECHELLON OF

2. *Wheeling into Echellon on Moveable Pivots.*—On the caution when the echellon is to be formed of companies, the captains, if not there already, will change

COMPANIES (SUBDIVISIONS OR SECTIONS).

to the named flanks; but if it is to be formed of subdivisions or sections they will remain in their places.

ON THE MOVE BY COMPANIES (SUBDIVISIONS OR SECTIONS) RIGHT (OR LEFT) WHEEL QUICK—MARCH. FORWARD.

On the word MARCH, the companies, subdivisions, or sections will wheel forward into echellon, and having gained the required angle, on the word FORWARD, they will move on in the new direction, the covering serjeants, if the echellon is formed of companies, falling in on their reverse flanks; the mounted officers will act as directed in the preceding number, and the leader of the leading company, subdivision, or section will select points to march on.

If a battalion is required to wheel into echellon to the rear, it will be faced about, and the companies, subdivisions, or sections will be wheeled forward rear rank in front.

TAKE GROUND TO THE RIGHT (OR LEFT) IN ECHELLON OF COMPANIES (SUBDIVISIONS OR SECTIONS). BY COMPANIES (SUBDIVISIONS OR SECTIONS) RIGHT OR LEFT—WHEEL, FORWARD.

3. *Wheeling into Echellon on the March.*—A battalion advancing or retiring in line will take ground to a flank in echellon in the manner described in No. 2 of this section, the captains if necessary changing their flanks on the caution.

In oblique echellon, the colours and centre serjeants will wheel up and form a section by themselves. Thus they will occupy the same position, whether the line takes ground to a flank by echellon of companies, of subdivisions, or of sections.

S. 54. *A Ba*
into Lin
Plate X

RE-FORM
LINE.

QUICK—
MARCH.

Halt—Dres

Eyes—Fron

The colou
anies, and
heels back
This move
aptains mar
hem into lin
ORWARD w
aptains, if t
heir flanks.

S. 55. *A Ba*
Directio
Echellon

In this m
endicular to
points of for

d flanks; but if it is to be
ubdivisions or sections they
n their places.
ord MARCH, the companies,
,or sections will wheel forward
, and having gained the re-
, on the word FORWARD, they
n in the new direction, the
eants, if the echellon is formed
s, falling in on their reverse
ounted officers will act as di-
preceding number, and the
eading company, subdivision,
ll select points to march on.
wheel into echellon to the
the companies, subdivisions,
ard rear rank in front.

ing into Echellon on the
battalion advancing or re-
will take ground to a flank
n the manner described in
his section, the captains if
anging their flanks on the

irs and centre serjeants will
themselves. Thus they will
er the line takes ground to a
f subdivisions, or of sections.

S. 54. A Battalion in Echellon of Companies wheeling back into Line parallel to that from which it has formed.—Plate XXXIX.

RE-FORM LINE.	On the caution, the pivot men will face into the line and raise their right hands, and the major will dress them from the directing flank; the captains will take one pace to their front, and face towards their companies.
QUICK—MARCH.	On the word MARCH, each company will wheel back on its pivot flank.
Halt—Dress.	On the words *Halt—Dress*, the men will halt and look towards their captains for the dressing.
Eyes—Front.	The captains will give the words *Eyes—Front*, and move to their places in line.

The colour party will wheel back into line with the companies, and take up its dressing with the company that wheels back to it from echellon.

This movement may also be performed on the march, the captains marking time and their companies wheeling back on them into line; the commanding officer will give the word FORWARD when the wheels are completed, on which the captains, if the movement has been to the left, will change their flanks.

S. 55. A Battalion in Echellon, halted, forming Line in a Direction oblique to that from which it was wheeled into Echellon.

In this movement, in order to place the companies perpendicular to the lines by which they must march to their points of formation, the chief thing to be observed is the

rule laid down in the General Principles of Echellons, N° V.; namely, that the company of formation must be wheeled up from the original alignment at double the angle that the remaining companies are wheeled, or the remaining companies must be wheeled to half the angle that the company of formation is wheeled, thus—

1st. If the company of formation (a. b.), Plate XL., is wheeled up from echellon into the new alignment, as many more paces (c. b.) as it originally wheeled from line into echellon (d. c.), the remaining companies will stand fast.

2nd. If the number of paces (b. d.), Plate XLI., wheeled by the company of formation from echellon into the new alignment exceeds the number which it wheeled from line into echellon, the remaining companies must wheel up half that excess: thus, if the companies originally wheeled up three paces into echellon, and the company of formation is wheeled five more into the new alignment, being an excess of two over the original number wheeled, and making eight in all, the remaining companies must wheel up one pace, half that excess, making four in all.

3rd. If the line is to be formed on the prolongation of the front company as it stands, Plate XLII., the remaining companies will wheel back on their pivot flanks half the number of paces they originally wheeled forward from line.

FORM LINE ON THE LEADING COMPANY, WHICH WILL WHEEL, &c. REMAINING COMPANIES—PACES TO THE RIGHT (OR LEFT), OR ON THE RIGHT (OR LEFT) BACKWARDS—WHEEL. QUICK-MARCH.

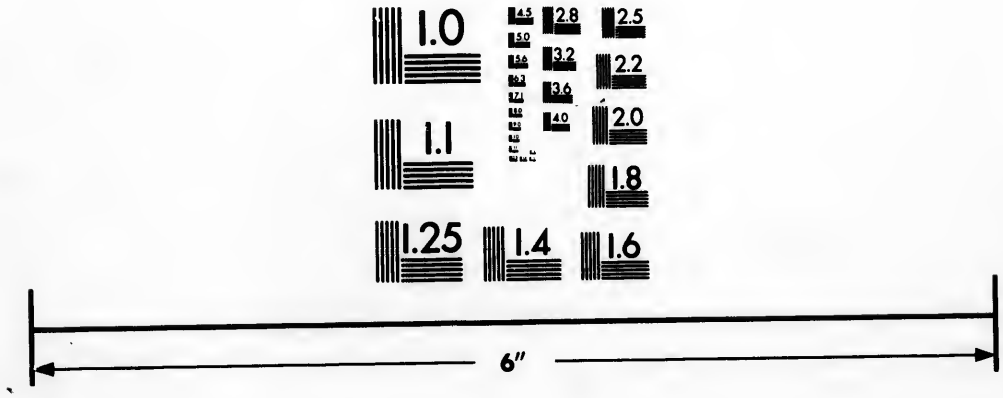
On the caution, the adjutant will mark the distant flank of the battalion, and, the companies having been wheeled according to the above rules, the coverer and supernumerary serjeant of the company of formation will give base points on its flanks, facing towards the point of appui, the coverer furthest from the captain. The major nearest to the company of formation will move up and dress the coverers.

Principles of Echellons, N° V.;
formation must be wheeled up
at double the angle that the
eeled, or the remaining com-
lf the angle that the company

rmation (a. b.), Plate XL., is
the new alignment, as many
inally wheeled from line into
companies will stand fast.
es (b. d.), Plate XLI., wheeled
n from echellon into the new
er which it wheeled from line
companies must wheel up half
npanies originally wheeled up
the company of formation is
ew alignment, being an excess
er wheeled, and making eight
nies must wheel up one pace,
in all.
rmed on the prolongation of
s, Plate XLII., the remaining
n their pivot flanks half the
ly wheeled forward from line.

aution, the adjutant will mark
flank of the battalion, and,
nies having been wheeled ac-
the above rules, the covere-
umerary serjeant of the com-
rmation will give base points
ks, facing towards the point
he coverer furthest from the
The major nearest to the com-
ormation will move up and
overers.

IMAGE EVALUATION
TEST TARGET (MT-3)



Photographic Sciences Corporation

23 WEST MAIN STREET
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580
(716) 872-4503

PLATE XL.

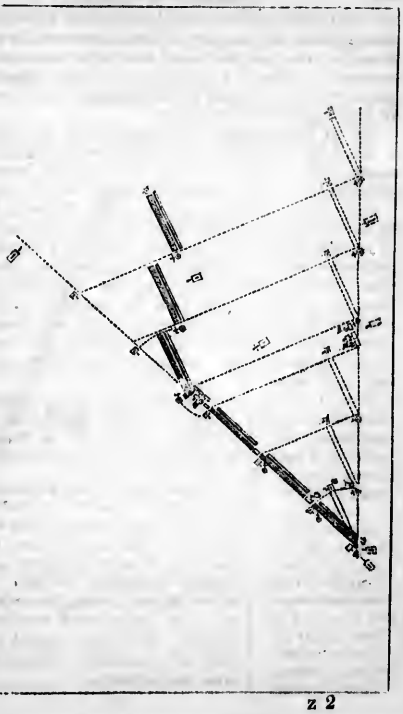


PLATE XL.

A BATTALION IN ECHELLON FORMING LINE.

PLATE XLI.

A BATTALION IN ECHELLON FORMING LINE.

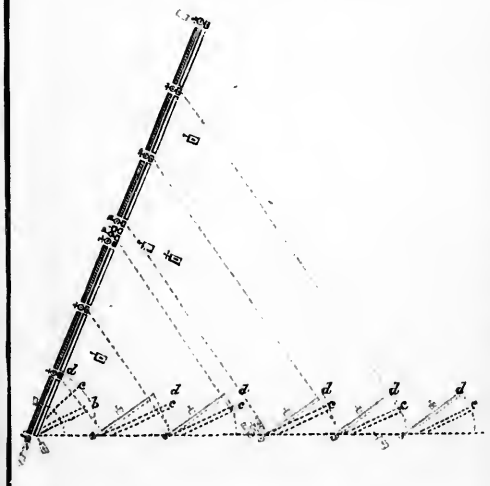


PLATE XLII.

A BATTALION IN ECHELLON FORMING LINE.

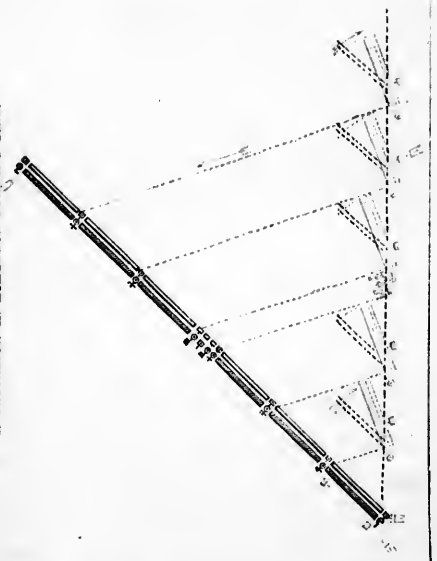


PLATE XLII.

A BATTALION IN ECHELLON FORMING LINE.

FORM
QUIC
MAR

No— *R*
Left) *W*
Halt—
up, *E*
Fr

The
and wil
that wh

S. 56. *A*
pa

CHA
FRON
THE
(or L
COM
LEF
RIG
THE
FORV

FORM LINE. QUICK—MARCH.

No— *Right* (or *Left*) *Wheel—Halt—Dress up, Eyes—Front.*

On the word MARCH, all except the company of formation will step off, the coverers being on the outward flanks until they arrive at 20 or 30 paces from the ground their companies are to occupy, when they will run on and mark the outward flanks of their respective companies. Each company in succession as it reaches the rear rank of the previously formed company will receive the words *Right* (or *Left*)—*Wheel, Halt—Dress up,* from its captain, who will then dress his men, give the words *Eyes–Front,* and take post in line, the covering serjeants taking their places in succession, according to rule.

The colour party will move up independently into line, and will be dressed by the captain of the centre company that wheels upon it into line.

S. 56. *A Battalion in Line changing Front on a Flank Company by throwing forward the rest of the Battalion.*

CHANGE FRONT ON THE RIGHT (or LEFT)—COMPANY, LEFT (or RIGHT) THROWN FORWARD.

On the caution, the adjutant will mark the distant flank of the battalion.

If the named company is on the left of the battalion the captains will change their flanks, but if on the right they will stand fast; the major of the inner wing will move up to the point of formation to dress the coverers; the commanding officer, in order to ascertain the number of paces the companies should wheel into

OR CHANGE FRONT ON THE RIGHT (or LEFT) COMPANY LEFT (or RIGHT) THROWN FORWARD THE QUARTER CIRCLE.	echelon, will place himself at the point of appui, and will direct the coverer of the named company, who will move out for that purpose, to wheel from the eighth file, as directed in Part II., Section 6, and will order him to halt when he reaches the required alignment; unless the change of front is to be a quarter circle, in which case the company will be wheeled by the captain in the usual manner.
No—To the Right (or *Left*) *Wheel*, or *No —, — paces to the Right* (or *Left*) *Wheel. Quick—March. Halt—Dress. Eyes—Front.*	The named company will then be wheeled up to the alignment by its captain, and on the word *Halt*, the coverer and supernumerary serjeant will give the base points of the battalion, the former on the outward flank, the latter on the inward flank of the company, both facing towards the point of formation.
REMAINING COMPANIES — PACES TO THE RIGHT (or LEFT)—WHEEL.	On the word WHEEL from the commanding officer, the remaining covering serjeants will move out in front of the eighth files from the pivot flanks of their companies, and take the named number of paces, which will be half the number stepped by the coverer of the company of formation; the captains and pivot men will face, as directed in Part II., Section 6.
QUICK—MARCH, &c. FORM LINE—QUICK—MARCH, &c.	The companies will then wheel into echelon, and form from echelon into the new line, as directed in the preceding section.

will place himself at the point
, and will direct the coverer of
ed company, who will move out
purpose, to wheel from the eighth
directed in Part II., Section 6,
l order him to halt when he
the required alignment; unless
ıge of front is to be a quarter
ı which case the company will
ed by the captain in the usual

ıamed company will then be
up to the alignment by its
and on the word *Halt*, the
and supernumerary serjeant will
base points of the battalion,
ner on the outward flank, the
n the inward flank of the com-
oth facing towards the point of
n.

he word WHEEL from the com-
g officer, the remaining covering
will move out in front of the
iles from the pivot flanks of their
ies, and take the named number
, which will be half the number
by the coverer of the company of
on; the captains and pivot men
, as directed in Part II., Section 6.

companies will then wheel into
, and form from echellon into the
e, as directed in the preceding

S. 57. A Battalion in Line changing Front on a Flank Company by throwing back the rest of the Battalion.

CHANGE FRONT ON THE LEFT (or RIGHT) COMPANY RIGHT (or LEFT) THROWN BACK, OR CHANGE FRONT ON THE LEFT (or RIGHT) COMPANY, RIGHT (or LEFT) THROWN BACK THE QUARTER CIRCLE.

On the caution, the adjutant will move out and mark the distant flank of the battalion.

The captains, and the major of the inner wing, will act as directed in the preceding section, and the commanding officer will ascertain the number of paces to be wheeled in the manner therein described, the coverer wheeling from the rear of the eighth file (unless the wheel .. a quarter circle), and being halted at sufficient distance beyond the alignment to allow for the depth of the two ranks.

No.—On the Right (or Left) Backwards—Wheel, or *No.—, — paces on the Right (or Left) Backwards—Wheel. Quick—March. Halt—Dress*; or *Right about—Face, Quick—March. Halt—Front—Dress. Eyes—Front.*

The named company will then be wheeled back by its captain to the required direction, and on the word *Halt*, the coverer and supernumerary serjeant will give the base points of the battalion, the former on the outward flank, the latter on the inward flank of the company, both facing towards the point of *appui*.

REMAINING COMPANIES RIGHT ABOUT

The battalion will be faced about, and on the word WHEEL from the commanding officer, the remaining coverers will

FACE, — PACES, RIGHT (or LEFT) WHEEL.

move to the eighth files from the pivot flanks of their companies, and will take the named number of paces, which, as usual, will be half the number taken by the coverer of the company of formation; and the captains and pivot men will face as directed in Part II., Section 6.

QUICK—MARCH.

N°—, Halt—Dress, Eyes—Front.

On the word MARCH, the remaining companies will wheel the named number of paces and be halted and dressed rear rank in front by their respective captains, who, on the words, *Eyes—Front*, will fall in on the inner flanks of their companies, the coverers taking post on the reverse flanks.

FORM LINE, QUICK—MARCH.

N°—, Right (or *Left*) *Wheel, Forward. Halt—Front, Dress up.*

On the words FORM LINE, QUICK—MARCH, all the companies except the company of formation, will step off, and as each in succession arrives at the outward flank of the last formed and halted company, it will receive the words *Right* (or *Left*) *Wheel*, and when on the alignment, *Forward*, and when its proper front rank is in line with the rear rank of the halted company it will be halted, fronted, and dressed up; the captain will then give the word *Eyes—Front*, and take post in his proper place in line. Each coverer in succession as he arrives at 20 or 30 paces from the ground his company is to occupy will run out and mark the outward flank of his company, facing towards the point of *appui*, leaving room for his company to pass clear of him, and

he eighth files from the pivot
their companies, and will take
l number of paces, which, as
be half the number taken by
r of the company of formation;
ptains and pivot men will face
l in Part II., Section 6.

word MARCH, the remaining
will wheel the named number
nd be halted and dressed rear
nt by their respective captains,
e words, *Eyes—Front*, will fall
nner flanks of their companies,
ers taking post on the reverse

words FORM LINE, QUICK—
l the companies except the com-
ormation, will step off, and as
cession arrives at the outward
he last formed and halted com-
ill receive the words *Right* (or
el, and when on the alignment,
and when its proper front
line with the rear rank of the
npany it will be halted, fronted,
ed up; the captain will then
word *Eyes—Front*, and take
is proper place in line. Each
succession as he arrives at 20
es from the ground his com-
occupy will run out and mark
rd flank of his company, facing
e point of *appui*, leaving room
npany to pass clear of him, and

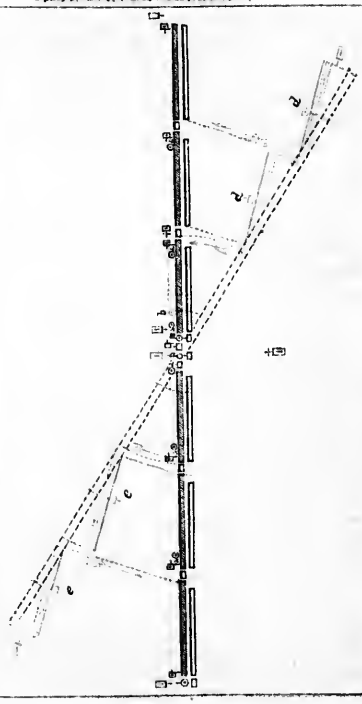


PLATE XLIII.

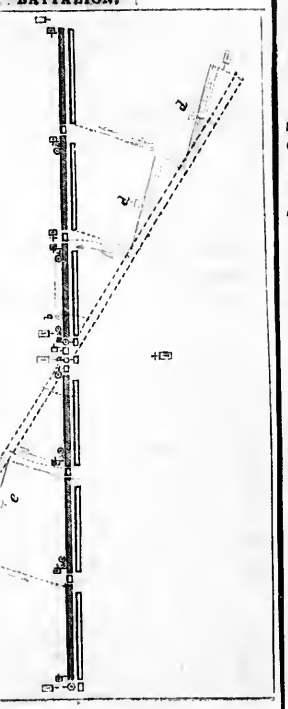
A BATTALION IN LINE CHANGING FRONT TO THE LEFT ON THE CENTRE.

The
section
of the

S. 58.
p
W

CH
FRO
THE
(or c
COM
RIG
LEFT)
FOR
or c
FRON
CENT
No.
PANY
(or
THRO
WAI
QUA
CI

Comp
the
Right



when it has gone to the rear taking a pace to his front without losing his covering, in order not to interfere with the pivot flank of the next company.

The colour party will move into line as an independent section in the echellon, and will be dressed by the captain of the centre company that wheels upon it into line.

S. 58. *A Battalion in Line changing Front on a Centre Company, or on the two Centre Companies by advancing one Wing and retiring the other.*—Plate XLIII.

CHANGE FRONT ON THE CENTRE (OR ON N°— COMPANY), RIGHT (or LEFT) THROWN FORWARD. or CHANGE FRONT ON THE CENTRE (OR ON N°— COMPANY), RIGHT (or LEFT) THROWN FORWARD THE QUARTER CIRCLE.

On the caution the junior major and adjutant will move out to mark the left and right of the line.

The commanding officer will ascertain the number of paces to be wheeled in the manner described in Section 57 of this part, the covering serjeant wheeling from the eighth file from the pivot, counting towards the flank of the company or subdivision that wheels forward; unless the wheel is to be a quarter circle.

The senior major will move to the centre to dress the coverers, and the captains on the right of the company or companies of formation will change their flanks.

Companies on the centre Right (or *Left*)

If the change of front is to be on the two centre companies, they will be wheeled by command of the captain of the left centre company; the front rank

Wheel, or
— paces
Right (or *Left*)
Wheel.
Quick—March.
Halt—Dress.
Eyes—Front.

No—on the
Right (or *Left*)
centre
Wheel,
or
— paces
Right (or *Left*)
Wheel.
Quick—March.
Halt—Dress.
Eyes—Front.

man of the inner file of the company that wheels forward will be the pivot. On the word *Halt,* from the captain of the left centre company, the centre serjeant will step out and face to his right to give a centre point, his rear rank man taking his place; the two covering serjeants of the centre companies will give points on the outward flanks of their companies facing inwards; the two captains will then dress their companies from the centre.

If the change of front is to be on the centre of a company, that company will be wheeled on its centre into the required alignment by its captain, and, on the word *Halt,* the coverer and supernumerary serjeant will give the base points, as directed in Part II., Section 7.

LEFT (OR RIGHT) WING, RIGHT ABOUT—FACE, OR COMPANIES ON THE LEFT (OR RIGHT) RIGHT ABOUT —FACE.
COMPANIES—PACES RIGHT (OR LEFT) WHEEL.

The companies which are to be wheeled back will next be faced to the right-about by the commanding officer, and on the word WHEEL, the coverers, except those of the company or companies of formation, will move to the eighth files, and step the ordered number of paces; the captains and pivot men will face as directed in Part II., Section 6.

QUICK-MARCH.
FORM LINE.
QUICK-MARCH, &c.

On the word MARCH, the battalion will wheel into echellon, after which line will be formed as described in Sections 56 and 57 of this Part.

the inner file of the company
eels forward will be the pivot.
word *Halt*, from the captain of
centre company, the centre ser-
ill step out and face to his right
a centre point, his rear rank man
his place; the two covering ser-
of the centre companies will give
on the outward flanks of their
ies facing inwards; the two cap-
vill then dress their companies
e centre.

e change of front is to be on the
of a company, that company will
eled on its centre into the required
ent by its captain, and, on the
Halt, the coverer and supernu-
serjeant will give the base points,
cted in Part II., Section 7.

companies which are to be wheeled
ill next be faced to the right-about
commanding officer, and on the
VHEEL, the coverers, except those
company or companies of for-
, will move to the eighth files,
ep the ordered number of paces;
otains and pivot men will face as
d in Part II., Section 6.

the word MARCH, the battalion will
into echellon, after which line will
med as described in Sections 56
7 of this Part.

A battalion on the march may be ordered to change front on a flank company in echellon, without halting, the companies wheeling on moveable pivots; in this case the flank company of formation will wheel at the double, in order that it may be halted and dressed in time for the remaining companies to form upon it. When a change of front in echellon is made from the halt, on a flank or on the centre, or on a central company, the company or companies of formation may be wheeled into the required alignment by command of the captain, either on a halted or moveable pivot, the remaining companies will be wheeled on moveable pivots by the commanding officer, who will give the word FORWARD when they have gained the proper direction, no coverers marking the paces they are to wheel; in practice this method should generally be adopted, as it is the most expeditious and convenient. When companies wheel into echellon on the march, the coverers will take post on the reverse flanks at the word FORWARD.

When a line is ordered to change front at right angles, the company or companies of formation will wheel to the right, or left,—to the right, or left, backwards,—or on the centre to the right, or left, as may be required, in the usual manner; the remaining companies wheeling four paces into echellon, or the eighth of a circle on the move, as may be ordered. The commanding officer will state in his caution that the right or left will be thrown forward or back THE QUARTER CIRCLE.

During a change of front, as described in the preceding sections, the part of a battalion that is in echellon may, if required, be halted, and wheeled back into a line, parallel to the original line, at any moment; thus forming the two parts of the battalion in lines at an angle to each other, after which the companies may again be wheeled forward into echellon and the movement completed.

At any time during a change of front in echellon, all the companies of the battalion may be wheeled up into open column towards the point of formation, and then ordered to form square on the leading company, or the companies in echellon may be formed into company squares.

S. 59. A Battalion in Line advancing or retiring in direct Echellon of Companies from either Flank.—Plate XLIV.

If it is intended to re-form line parallel to the original alignment, the companies may be ordered to march off at any named distance from each other, but if it is intended to change front to either flank at right angles, they must be marched off at wheeling distance from each other.

THE BATTALION WILL ADVANCE (or RETIRE) IN DIRECT ECHELLON OF COMPANIES AT WHEELING (or — PACES) DISTANCE, FROM THE RIGHT (or LEFT).
No—By the Right (or *Left*), *Quick—March.*
No—Right about Face.
By the Right (or *Left*) *Quick—March.*

On the caution, if the movement is to be from the proper left, either in advancing or retiring, the captains will change their flanks, if from the right they will stand fast. The captain of the company on the named flank, if the battalion is to advance, will then give his word *Quick—March*, and will move straight to his front; when he has gained the ordered distance, the next company will receive the words *Quick—March* from its captain, and so on in succession till all are in motion. If the movement is to be made to the rear, the companies will be faced about in succession, and marched off one after the other at the ordered distance as above described.

ange of front in echellon, all the
ı may be wheeled up into open
of formation, and then ordered
ling company, or the companies
into company squares.

---

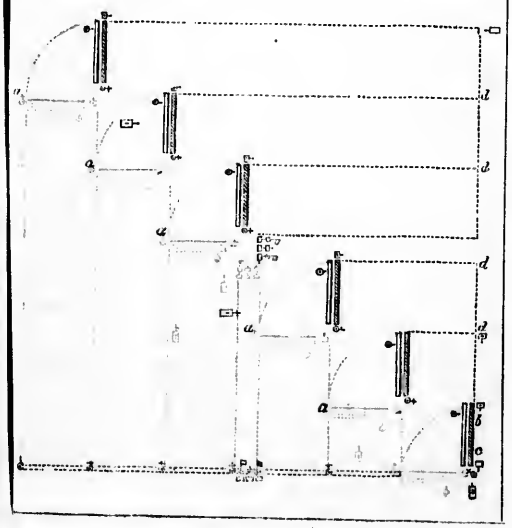
*e advancing or retiring in direct
om either Flank.*—Plate XLIV.

orm line parallel to the original
may be ordered to march off at
each other, but if it is intended
flank at right angles, they must
distance from each other.

ıe caution, if the movement is to
the proper left, either in advanc-
etiring, the captains will change
nks, if from the right they will
ast. The captain of the com-
ı the named flank, if the bat-
ı to advance, will then give his
Quick—March, and will move
to his front; when he has
the ordered distance, the next
y will receive the words *Quick*—
from its captain, and so on in
on till all are in motion. If the
ent is to be made to the rear, the
ies will be faced about in suc-
and marched off one after the
t the ordered distance as above
d.

PLATE XLIV.

A BATTALION ADVANCING IN DIRECT ECHELLON OF COMPANIES FROM THE LEFT, AND CHANGING DIRECTION TO THE RIGHT PREPARATORY TO FORMING LINE, AT RIGHT ANGLES TO THE FORMER ALIGNMENT.



The
flanks
the p
clear o
reverse
proper

RE-FO
ON TH
ING CO

REM
COM
QU
MA

RE-FO
ON TH
COM
REM
COM
RIGHT
—

QU
MA

Halt—
Dr
Eyes

The coverers, when it is necessary, will change their flanks on the caution, but they will invariably remain in the proper rear until their respective companies move out clear of the rest of the line, they will then take post on their reverse flanks. The captains will move in line with the proper rear rank when retiring.

S. 60. Re-forming Line from Direct Echellon.

RE-FORM LINE ON THE LEADING COMPANY.

1. *Forming Line on the Leading Company.*—If the line is to be formed on the leading company, the coverer and supernumerary serjeant of that company will give the base points.

REMAINING COMPANIES QUICK—MARCH.

On the word MARCH, the remaining companies will move up in succession into line, the covering serjeants marking their outward flank.

RE-FORM LINE ON THE REAR COMPANY. REMAINING COMPANIES RIGHT ABOUT—FACE.

2. *Forming Line on the Rear Company.*—If line is to be formed on the rear company, the coverer and supernumerary serjeant of that company will give the base points, and the company will be dressed. The remaining companies will then be faced to the right about; the captains and coverers changing flanks.

QUICK—MARCH.

Halt—Front—Dress up. Eyes—Front.

On the word MARCH, the companies facing to the rear will step off and form in succession on the rear company, each receiving the words *Halt—Front—Dress up,* when its proper front rank is in line with the rear rank of the last halted company, the coverers running out to mark the outward flanks of their respective companies in the usual manner.

RE-FORM LINE ON N°— COMPANY.
COMPANIES IN FRONT, RIGHT ABOUT—FACE.
FORM LINE—QUICK-MARCH.
Halt—Front—Dress.
Eyes—Front—Halt—Dress.
Eyes Front.

3. *Forming Line on a Central Company.*—When line is to be formed on a central company, the coverer and supernumerary serjeant of that company will give the base points, as usual, facing inwards. The companies in front of the named company will then be faced to the right about, their captains and coverers changing flanks, and on the word QUICK-MARCH, line will be formed, as described in the two first numbers of this section.

In these movements the distant flank or flanks will be marked by the adjutant, or the junior major and adjutant, as usual.

4. *Forming on the March.*—A battalion in direct echellon on the march may form line in like manner; if to the front, the leading company will be halted on the caution; if on the rear or a central company, the named company will be halted on the words REMAINING COMPANIES, or COMPANIES IN FRONT, RIGHT ABOUT TURN.

FORM LINE TO THE RIGHT.
BY COMPANIES, RIGHT—WHEEL, FORWARD, &c.

5. *Forming Line at Right Angles to the original Alignment.*—If the battalion has advanced in direct echellon of companies (a.a.a.), Plate XLIV., from the left, at wheeling distance, and is required to form line to the right (d.d.d.), the companies will be wheeled the quarter circle to that flank, the captains changing their flanks during the wheel, after which line will be formed on the leading company (b.c.), as already described.

When the advance has been made from the right, line may be formed to the left in like manner.

ming Line on a Central Com-
When line is to be formed on a
ompany, the coverer and super-
y serjeant of that company will
base points, as usual, facing
The companies in front of the
ompany will then be faced to
t about, their captains and
changing flanks, and on the
ICK-MARCH, line will be formed,
bed in the two first numbers
ection.

e distant flank or flanks will be
the junior major and adjutant,

.—A battalion in direct echellon
e in like manner; if to the front,
be halted on the caution; if on
pany, the named company will
MAINING COMPANIES, OR COM-
T ABOUT TURN.

ming Line at Right Angles to
nal Alignment.—If the battalion
anced in direct echellon of com-
(a.a.a.), Plate XLIV., from the
wheeling distance, and is required
line to the right (d.d.d.), the com-
vill be wheeled the quarter circle
flank, the captains changing their
uring the wheel, after which line
formed on the leading company
already described.
been made from the right, line
in like manner.

S. 61. A Battalion in Direct Echellon forming Line in an Oblique Direction.

When it is necessary to form line from direct echellon, at an angle to the original alignment, the echellon will be wheeled forward into open column, and the captains will be ordered to correct their distances, and their covering in the required direction; after which the column will be wheeled into line.

S. 62. Exceptional Combinations of Manœuvres.

The simple manœuvres explained in this book will be found sufficient for all the ordinary movements of troops, and no others must be practised; it may, however, occasionally happen that a single manœuvre will not place a battalion in the exact position or formation required, and the commanding officer must in such a case be prepared to effect his object by a combination of two or more manœuvres. This may always be done without deviating in any way from the principles laid down, as there is no position or formation which cannot be attsined by their proper application. For instance, a battalion in line may change front to the rear on the centre, still preserving its usual order, as follows:—Countermarch the colour party, direct the left wing to face about and retire, and the right wing to advance (Part IV., Section 5); when they have marched about four paces wheel both wings by sections to the left (Part II., Section 10), give the word FORWARD, and then order both wings to form line to the reverse flank (Part II., Section 16, and Part IV., Section 35). Again, a double column of subdivisions may be converted into a single column at quarter distance as follows:—Direct each wing to form companies (Part II., Section 29), then give the

caution that on the words QUICK MARCH the left wing will close to quarter distance on its leading company (Part IV., Section 12), and the right wing will advance, each company in succession moving into its place in front of the left wing by the flank march of fours at the double. Quarter distance column may also be formed by ordering the men to break off and reassemble on their coverers, the latter being previously placed in their proper order.

The instruction of the officers, non-commissioned officers, and men being thoroughly provided for in the manœuvres laid down in the Field Exercise, such combinations of those movements as are above alluded to, and all of which depend solely on the intelligence of the commanding officer, should never be practised in the ordinary parades and drills of a battalion.

ıUICK MARCH the left wing will
its leading company (Part IV.,
ving will advance, each company
ts place in front of the left wing
rs at the double. Quarter dis-
formed by ordering the men to
ı their coverers, the latter being
roper order.
lcers, non-commissioned officers,
provided for in the manœuvres
cise, such combinations of those
uded to, and all of which depend
the commanding officer, should
ordinary parades and drills of a

PART V.

LIGHT INFANTRY.

GENERAL PRINCIPLES.

I.

Object of Light Infantry Movements.—The duties of troops employed as light infantry in the field, are both varied and important; to them the safeguard of the camp is usually entrusted, and by them, the cantonments of the army are protected from the sudden or unexpected approach of the enemy. When the army is in motion, the light infantry reconnoitre the country in its front, feel for the enemy, or clear the way for the columns when advancing, and protect them from being too closely pressed upon or harassed when retreating; they conceal and cover the movements and manœuvres of the line, watch the motions of the enemy, and ascertain the nature of the ground and country in advance of the main body; upon their efficiency, the General often very much depends for the necessary information to enable him to regulate and direct his columns.

II.

All Regiments to be instructed in Light Infantry Movements.—Although certain regiments are styled "light infantry," every corps of infantry, without exception, must be fully instructed in this important branch of its duty.

III.

Division of Light Troops.—When a regiment is employed as light infantry, it is usually divided into three

parts,—skirmishers, supports, and reserve; but it may frequently be deemed advisable to cover the movements of a line with skirmishers and supports, or skirmishers only.

IV.

Relative Strength of Skirmishers, Supports, and Reserves.—The supports should always be composed of numbers equal to the line of skirmishers; thus, each company that is extended should have a company to support it. The reserve should be at least one third part of the whole body.

2. If a single company is detached to skirmish at a distance from the main body, not more than half of the men should ever be sent forward to skirmish at a time: the other half must remain formed in support.

V.

1. *Relative Duties of Skirmishers, Supports, and Reserves.*—The movements of the skirmishers must depend in a great measure on the position and movements of the enemy. Care must be taken that the skirmishers protect and overlap the flanks of the main body they are intended to cover.

2. It is the duty of the supports to assist and support the skirmishers in every way. The movements of the former must therefore correspond with those of the latter. Each support should be, as nearly as possible, in rear of the centre of its own skirmishers. The reserve is the point on which both supports and skirmishers may rally. It will also send relief to them when necessary; it should therefore be placed as nearly as possible in rear of the centre of the formation.

3. When the skirmishers are sent out to a distance, the field officers must take care that they are always so situated as to protect, in the most effectual manner, the front and flanks of the main body.

rts, and reserve; but it may fre-
ble to cover the movements of
l supports, or skirmishers only.

IV.

rmishers, Supports, and Reserves.
lways be composed of numbers
ishers; thus, each company that
company to support it. The re-
e third part of the whole body.
is detached to skirmish at a dis-
, not more than half of the men
ard to skirmish at a time: the
med in support.

V.

irmishers, Supports, and Reserves.
kirmishers must depend in a great
d movements of the enemy. Care
irmishers protect and overlap the
ey are intended to cover.
upports to assist and support the
The movements of the former
with those of the latter. Each
ly as possible, in rear of the centre
The reserve is the point on which
nishers may rally. It will also
necessary; it should therefore be
ible in rear of the centre of the

rs are sent out to a distance, the
re that they are always so situated
t effectual manner, the front and

VI.

Relative Distances.—The distance of supports from the skirmishers, and reserves from supports, must depend on circumstances and the nature of the ground. The supports should always be in the most convenient position to assist the skirmishers, without being unnecessarily exposed to fire. For instance, when skirmishers have ascended a bank or hill, and are halted on the summit, it is evident that the supports may approach close to them, without being exposed to fire; but, on a plain, they must necessarily be kept at a greater distance; the same remark applies to the reserve. As a general rule, on a plain the distance between skirmishers and supports should be about 200 yards; between supports and reserves, about 300 yards; between the reserve and main body, 500 yards.

VII.

Cover.—1. When under fire, skirmishers, whether halted or in motion, must take advantage of all cover, and although they are not required to preserve their distances and dressing while so doing, they must, when advancing or retiring, take care that they never get in front of each other, and that they never retain their places of cover so long as to interfere either with their own fire or with that of their comrades.

2. Officers commanding supports must, with due regard to the assistance they should afford to the skirmishers, take advantage of all inequalities of ground and other objects affording cover to protect their men, and should make them lie down when cover can be obtained by so doing; they must examine the ground well, and select positions that will protect them from cavalry, in case of attack, without preventing the skirmishers from forming upon them.

3. The officer commanding the reserve should also keep his men under cover when practicable; but, as the reserve

is not immediately under fire, his attention should principally be directed to the selection of positions, favourable to the relief and assistance of the skirmishers and supports, with due regard to the protection of the main body.

4. When in the presence of cavalry, the reserve should be kept in column; but under the fire of artillery, it should be deployed into line.

VIII.

Time of Movement.—Light infantry movements will usually be performed in quick time, except extensions or closings on the march, the formation of company square from extended order, or rallying squares, and changes of front from the halt, which will be in double time. When more than usual rapidity is required in other movements, the men may be directed to double by word of command or bugle sound. Although 150 steps are taken in a minute in the ordinary double time, in light infantry movements the speed may be increased when necessary, as will be the case when skirmishers close on files that are moving at the double.

IX.

Points of Direction.—All lines of skirmishers move by their centre, except when inclining to a flank, in which case they move by the flank to which they are inclining.

X.

How Arms are carried.—The skirmishers and supports will move with trailed arms, except in close column of sections, or in close files, when they will move as directed in Part II., Section 32, and Part III., Sections 1 and 2, No. 3. Reserves armed with long rifles will move with sloped arms and unfixed bayonets; those armed with short rifles, with trailed arms and unfixed swords.

fire, his attention should prin-
selection of positions, favourable
of the skirmishers and supports,
ection of the main body.
e of cavalry, the reserve should
der the fire of artillery, it should

VIII.

nt infantry movements will usually
, except extensions or closings on
of company square from extended
, and changes of front from the
ble time. When more than usual
ther movements, the men may be
rd of command or bugle sound.
aken in a minute in the ordinary
antry movements the speed may
sary, as will be the case when
that are moving at the double.

IX.

All lines of skirmishers move by
inclining to a flank, in which case,
which they are inclining.

X.

d.—The skirmishers and support
ms, except in close column of sec
hen they will move as directed in
Part III., Sections 1 and 2, No. 3
g rifles will move with sloped arm
hose armed with short rifles, with
swords.

XI.

Officers and Connecting Links.—1. When a company is extended, the captain should generally be at a convenient distance in rear of the centre; the supernumeraries must be placed at equal distances along the rear of the line of skirmishers, the lieutenant being always near the outer flank of a flank company. When a company is in support, the captain should be in its proper front, whether it is advancing or retiring, he will thus lead his company when it advances, and follow it when it retires. The supernumeraries of a support will be in the rear as usual. The officers of a reserve will always be placed as in column, right in front.

2. A non-commissioned officer, or more, if necessary, may frequently be sent out with advantage from a support to keep up the connexion with its skirmishers. Non-commissioned officers may also be sent out from the reserve to keep up the connexion between it and each support; these men will be called connecting links.

XII.

Words of Command and Bugle Sounds.—1. Light infantry movements must in general be regulated by word of command. Commands must be repeated by the captains and every supernumerary belonging to the line of skirmishers. The connecting links may be employed, when necessary, to pass words of command, or convey intelligence backwards and forwards between the reserve and supports, and between the supports and skirmishers. When on account of the distance, or from noise or wind, the voice cannot be distinctly heard, the connecting links should run up and deliver their orders to the officers for whom they are intended, and then resume their places.

2. Calls on the bugle may occasionally be necessary as substitutes for the voice, but as they are liable to be misunderstood, and as they reveal intended movements to the

enemy, who will soon become acquainted with them, they should seldom be used, unless for purposes of drill.

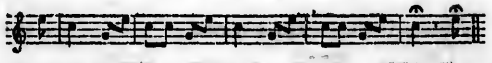
3. Bugle sounds must be as few and as simple as possible. None but the following sounds must ever be used in light drill:

4. One G sounded on the bugle denotes the right of the line. Two G's the centre. Three G's the left.

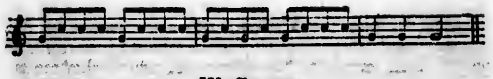
5. The G's preceding any sound denote the part of the line to which it applies. For instance; two G's before the Extend, signifies to extend from the Centre. One G followed by the Close, to close to the Right. One G followed by the Incline, to incline to the right. Three G's, followed by the Wheel, to wheel to the left.

I. EXTEND.

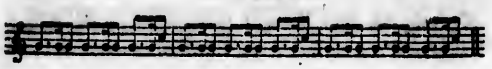
II. CLOSE.



III. ADVANCE.



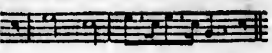
IV. RETIRE.



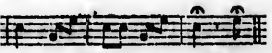
ome acquainted with them, they
less for purposes of drill.
e as few and as simple as possible.
unds must ever be used in light

e bugle denotes the right of the
Three G's the left.
ny sound denote the part of the
For instance; two G's before the
l from the Centre. One G fol-
e to the Right. One G followed
the right. Three G's, followed
the left.

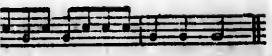
EXTEND.



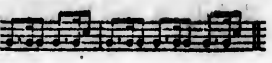
CLOSE.



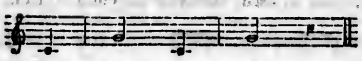
ADVANCE.



. RETIRE.



V. HALT.



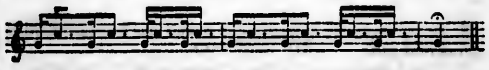
The Halt annuls all previous Sounds except the Fire.

VI. COMMENCE FIRING.

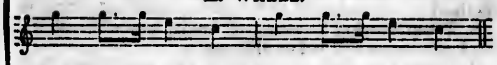
VII. CEASE FIRING.

VIII. ASSEMBLE.

IX. INCLINE.

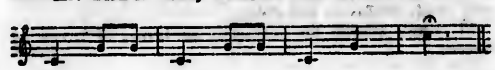


X. WHEEL.

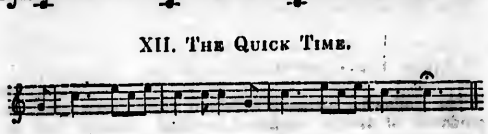


The calls IX. and X. must be preceded by the distinguishing G's.

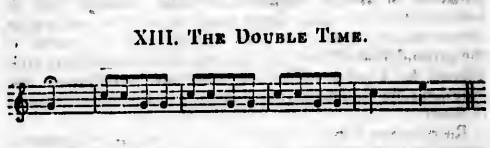
XI. The Alarm, or Look out for Cavalry.



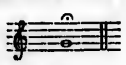
XII. The Quick Time.



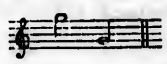
XIII. The Double Time.



XIV. Lie Down.



XV. Rise.



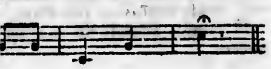
6. Every regiment should have a well marked and simple regimental call.

7. The Advance or the Retire sounded when inclining to the flank, indicates that the original direction is to be resumed.

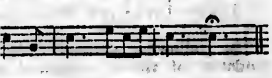
8. When moving by sound of bugle, men will wait till the bugle has ceased before they move.

9. When The Fire is combined with any other call, it should always be the last sounded, for if the men commenced firing they would not hear the second call.

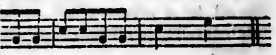
. LOOK OUT FOR CAVALRY.



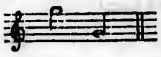
E QUICK TIME.



E DOUBLE TIME.



XV. RISE.



ld have a well marked and simple

Retire sounded when inclining to
the original direction is to be

ound of bugle, men will wait till
re they move.
combined with any other call, it
st sounded, for if the men com-
not hear the second call.

10. The commanding officer's bugle will generally be found sufficient in light infantry drill; repeated sounds only create confusion and delay.

11. Bugle sounds do not apply to bodies of troops in reserve.

LIGHT INFANTRY MOVEMENTS OF A COMPANY.

The following general rules are laid down for the guidance of troops employed as light infantry, but all movements in extended order must depend so much upon circumstances, which are ever varying, and the nature of the ground, that officers and non-commissioned officers must depend to a great extent on their own intelligence and judgment, for the effectual performance of the duties required of them.

Recruits must first be instructed in the following movements on level ground, and be made to keep their distances and dressing in extended order; when more advanced they must be taught to apply them practically.

S. 1. *Extending.*

In extending, as a general rule, it is the business of the rear rank man of each file to regulate the distance, and of the front rank man to look to the direction.

The number of paces that files are to extend from each other may be specified in the caution by the commander, thus:—THREE PACES FROM THE RIGHT—EXTEND. When no number is specified, six paces will be the regulated distance between files.

COMPANY FROM THE RIGHT, (LEFT CENTRE, or Nº—, FILE,)—EXTEND.
Bugle Call, G. (G, G, G. or G, G.)
EXTEND Nº 1.

1. *From the Halt.*—On the word EXTEND, or on the last sound of the bugle, the captain will place himself in rear of the centre of the company, the senior supernumerary in rear of the right, and the second senior in rear of the left.

The file on the named flank, or the centre or named file, will stand fast, the remainder will advance arms (or shoulder with the short rifle), face outwards, and extend in quick time.

The front rank men will move direct to the flank, covering correctly on the march, the rear-rank men will cast their eyes over the inward shoulder, and tap their respective front-rank men as a signal to halt, front, and stand at ease, when they have gained their proper distances.

Men must be taught to extend from any file of a close column of sections, without previously re-forming company; the named file will stand fast, the remainder will face outwards and extend as already described.

FROM THE RIGHT, (LEFT, CENTRE, or Nº—, FILE.)—EXTEND.
Bugle Call, G. (G, G, G. or G, G.)
EXTEND Nº 1.

2. *On the March.*—On the word EXTEND or on the last sound of the bugle, the file on the named flank, or the centre or named file, will continue to move straight forward in quick time, the remainder will make a half turn to the flank to which they are ordered to extend, and move off in double time. As soon as each file has extended to its proper distance, it will turn to its front and resume the quick time; the rear-rank men covering their front-rank men, and the whole keeping in line with the directing file.

om the Halt.—On the word EX-
r on the last sound of the bugle,
ain will place himself in rear of
re of the company, the senior
merary in rear of the right, and
nd senior in rear of the left.
ile on the named flank, or the
or named file, will stand fast,
ainder will advance arms (or
with the short rifle), face out-
nd extend in quick time.
front rank men will move direct
flank, covering correctly on the
the rear-rank men will cast their
er the inward shoulder, and tap
spective front-rank men as a sig-
alt, front, and stand at ease, when
ve gained their proper distances.
o extend from any file of a close
t previously re-forming company;
nd fast, the remainder will face
ready described.
the March.—On the word EXTEND
ne last sound of the bugle, the file
named flank, or the centre or named
l continue to move straight for-
n quick time, the remainder will
half turn to the flank to which
e ordered to extend, and move off
le time. As soon as each file has
d to its proper distance, it will
its front and resume the quick
the rear-rank men covering their
nk men, and the whole keeping in
h the directing file.

3. *Increasing Distance between Files.*—Men in extended order may be directed to increase the distance between their files any given number of paces, from either flank, the centre, or any named file. The command will be given thus, TO EIGHT PACES FROM THE RIGHT,—EXTEND; if no number of paces is specified, or if the bugle sounds the EXTEND, the skirmishers will open out one half more than their original extension; thus, if they are at six paces distance, they will open to nine.

4. *A Company halted while extending on the March.*—When a company, extending on the march, is halted before all the files are extended, the remainder will make a half turn outwards into file, break into quick time, advance arms, or shoulder arms with the short rifle, and complete their extension as from the halt.

5. *Extending from the Echellon March of Sections.*—A company while moving to a flank in echellon of sections should be practised in extending on the march without previously forming company, the echellon moving on in double time, each file as it gains its distance turning to the front and breaking into quick time, as directed in No. 2 of this section.

6. *Skirmishers to kneel or lie down by Order.*—Soldiers in extended order, though not firing, may be ordered to kneel or to lie down, when it is deemed advisable that they should do so.

S. 2. Closing.

SKIRMISHERS ON THE RIGHT (LEFT, CENTRE, or N°—, FILE)—CLOSE.

Bugle Call, G. (G, G, G. or

1. *On the Halt.*—On the word CLOSE, or on the last sound of the bugle, the file on the named flank, or the centre, or named file, will stand at ease; the remainder will face towards it, and close at quick time, halting, fronting, ordering arms, and standing at ease in succession

G, G.)
CLOSE, N° II.

as they arrive at their places; the officers will remain in the rear unless directed to take post.

The file on which the skirmishers close may be faced in any direction; the remainder will form upon it, facing in the same direction.

ON THE RIGHT (LEFT, CENTRE, or N°—, FILE)—CLOSE.
Bugle Call, G. (G, G, G. or G, G.)
CLOSE, N° II.

2. *On the March.*—On the word CLOSE, or on the last sound of the bugle, the file on the named flank or centre, or the named file, will move steadily on in quick time; the remainder will make a half turn towards it and close in double time, turning to the front and resuming the quick time as they arrive at their places.

When a company, closing on the march, is halted before all the files are closed, the remainder will make a half turn inwards into file, break into quick time, and complete the formation as from the halt. Skirmishers must also be taught to close while moving at the double, in which case the files that are closing must increase their speed.

S. 3. *Squares.*

Company Squares.

In light infantry movements, company squares will be formed as laid down in Part II., Section 32; when soldiers run in from extended order, they will order arms and fix bayonets or swords independently as they halt and front in their places. A company must be practised in closing from extended order into close column of sections on any named file; when no file is named they will close on the left file of the second section. If much pressed by cavalry, the first section formed may commence firing and the remainder form in rear of it, the sections passing each other left arm to left arm.

rrive at their places; the officers
ain in the rear unless directed to
.

le on which the skirmishers close
faced in any direction; the re-
will form upon it, facing in the
ection.

the March.—On the word CLOSE,
ie last sound of the bugle, the
he named flank or centre, or the
le, will move steadily on in quick
he remainder will make a half
ards it and close in double time,
to the front and resuming the
ne as they arrive at their places.
g on the march, is halted before
remainder will make a half turn
to quick time, and complete the
alt. Skirmishers must also be
ing at the double, in which case
iust increase their speed.

---

3. *Squares.*

any Squares.

ments, company squares will be
art II., Section 32; when soldiers
rder, they will order arms and
independently as they halt and
company must be practised in
der into close column of sections
no file is named they will close on
id section. If much pressed by
formed may commence firing and
r of it, the sections passing each

The Rallying Square.

When the men of different companies are mixed together in extended order, or when detached skirmishers are overtaken by cavalry, they will form rallying squares, as explained in Part II., S. 33. Two men placed back to back can keep off several cavalry soldiers; half a dozen stout-hearted men formed into a rallying square would be safe against a body of cavalry. When skirmishers of different companies mixed together are ordered to form rallying squares, they will run to the nearest officer standing as a rallying point, whether he belongs to their own company or not.

S. 4. Advancing in Skirmishing Order.

COMPANY ADVANCE. Bugle Call, ADVANCE, N° III.	On the word ADVANCE, or on the last sound of the bugle, the men will step off in quick time with trailed arms, keeping their distance from the centre.

S. 5. Retiring in Skirmishing Order.

COMPANY—RETIRE. Bugle Call, RETIRE, N° IV.	On the word RETIRE, or on the last sound of the bugle, the men will face to the right about, and step off in quick time, rear rank in front, keeping their distance from the centre.

Men in extended order will invariably face or turn to the right about, whether they are advancing, retiring, firing, or not firing.

S. 6. Passing Obstacles in Skirmishing Order.

Men in extended order must frequently be practised in passing obstacles both in advancing and retiring. When an obstacle, such as a pond or a marsh, presents itself in front

of a line of skirmishers, the files opposite to it will open out gradually as they approach, and will pass on either side of it, closing upon the remaining files, which will continue moving straight to their front. Having passed the obstacle, the files that have been diverted from their direction, will again extend and fill up the interval in the line.

A company advancing or retiring in skirmishing order, should also be practised in closing on the centre files of subdivisions or sections, those files continuing to march straight to their front; after which, the company should be again extended from the same files, and if the direction has been properly kept, the intervals between files will still be found correct.

S. 7. *Inclining to a Flank.*

TO THE RIGHT (OR LEFT)—
INCLINE.
Bugle Call,
G. (or G, G, G)
INCLINE,
Nº IX.
ADVANCE.
Bugle Call,
ADVANCE,
Nº III.
RETIRE.
Bugle Call,
RETIRE, Nº IV.
HALT.
Bugle Call,
HALT, Nº V.

On the word INCLINE, or on the last sound of the bugle, the skirmishers will make a half turn to the flank to which they are ordered to incline, and move in a diagonal direction, until they are ordered to resume their original direction to the front or rear, by the word or sound advance or retire. If the skirmishers have made a half turn, and are again ordered to incline in the same direction, or the bugle sounds the INCLINE a second time, they will complete the turn by making a second half turn and will take ground to the flank in file.

If the word or bugle sound HALT is given when men are inclining, they will halt and front.

---

files opposite to it will open out
, and will pass on either side of
aining files, which will continue
ont. Having passed the obstacle,
liverted from their direction, will
e interval in the line.

or retiring in skirmishing order,
closing on the centre files of sub-
files continuing to march straight
h, the company should be again
les, and if the direction has been
s between files will still be found

---

ining to a Flank.

e word INCLINE, or on the last
of the bugle, the skirmishers will
half turn to the flank to which
ordered to incline, and move in
nal direction, until they are or-
o resume their original direction
ront or rear, by the word or sound
or retire. If the skirmishers
ade a half turn, and are again
to incline in the same direction,
bugle sounds the INCLINE a
time, they will complete the turn
ing a second half turn and will
ound to the flank in file.

e word or bugle sound HALT is
when men are inclining, they will
l front.

S. 8. Skirmishers changing Front or Direction.

A line of skirmishers halted, can change front on any two named files that may be placed as a base for the rest to form upon.

A change of front in this manner may be made at any angle, but it is not likely to be required to a greater extent than the sixteenth, or at most the eighth of a circle.

SKIRMISHERS CHANGE FRONT TO THE RIGHT (OR LEFT) ON THE TWO CENTRE (OR ON N°–, AND N°–,) FILES.

1. *From the Halt.*—On the caution, the captain will dress the two named files in the direction required.

DOUBLE MARCH.

On the word MARCH, if all the files are to be thrown forward on a flank, they will make a half-face inwards, and move across by the shortest way to their places in the new line, dressing on the two base files, as they successively halt.

If all the files are to be thrown back on either flank, they will make a three-quarters face in the direction of the base files, then move across and halt and front as they arrive at their places in the new line.

If the change is on two central files, part of the company will be thrown forward and the rest back, as above described.

Recruits should first be taught this movement in quick time, and by separate words of command; thus, after placing the base files, LEFT SUBDIVISION RIGHT HALF-FACE; RIGHT SUBDIVISION LEFT ABOUT THREE QUARTERS—FACE, THE WHOLE, QUICK-MARCH.

(RIGHT OR LEFT) WHEEL. Bugle Call, G. (or G, G, G.) WHEEL, N° X.

2. *On the March.*—A line of skirmishers on the march may change their direction gradually, on the same principles as a company wheels on a moveable pivot. On the word WHEEL, or on the last sound of the bugle, the pivot file will halt, and the remainder will circle round it, the front-rank men looking outwards for the dressing, and the rear-rank men keeping the distances from the pivot flank.

FORWARD. Bugle Call, ADVANCE, N° III.

On the word FORWARD, the whole line will advance by the centre.

S. 9. *Firing in Skirmishing Order.*

The men of a file must always work together. Both men should never be unloaded at the same time; they should load, when practicable, under cover; before moving to the front, when advancing; and after falling back, when retiring.

When troops in extended order at the halt are ordered to commence firing, whether by word or bugle sound, they will drop on the knee or lie down if cover can be more effectually obtained by so doing; when they cease to fire they will rise. When troops firing on the march are halted they will kneel.

Soldiers, after firing in extended order, will invariably come to the capping position and shut down the flap, if it

be taught this movement in quick
rds of command; thus, after plac-
UBDIVISION RIGHT HALF-FACE;
IFT ABOUT THREE QUARTERS—
CK-MARCH.

s the March.—A line of skirmishers
march may change their direction
lly, on the same principles as a
ny wheels on a moveable pivot.
e word WHEEL, or on the last
of the bugle, the pivot file will
nd the remainder will circle round
front-rank men looking outwards
e dressing, and the rear-rank men
g the distances from the pivot

the word FORWARD, the whole line
vance by the centre.

---

in Skirmishing Order.

always work together. Both men
ed at the same time; they should
nder cover; before moving to the
nd after falling back, when retiring.
led order at the halt are ordered to
er by word or bugle sc d, they
or lie down if cover can be more
o doing; when they cease to fire
ops firing on the march are halted

in extended order, will invariably
tion and shut down the flap, if it

has been raised; if required to re-load on the march they will then bring the rifle to the trail in the left hand, the sling upwards and the muzzle inclining up to the right, and proceed with their loading.

COMMENCE FIRING. Bugle Call, COMMENCE FIRING, N° VI.

1. *Firing on the Halt.*—On the words COMMENCE FIRING, or on the last sound of the bugle, the whole will drop on the knee, the front-rank men will then make ready, fire, and load; the rear-rank men when their front-rank men are in the act of capping, will make ready, fire, and then load.

A line of skirmishers may be ordered to lie down, or single soldiers may lie down for the sake of cover. When firing in this position both elbows must rest on the ground to support the body and rifle; the men will load on their knees. Riflemen may fire on their backs in favourable situations; in this position the feet are to be crossed, the right foot passed through the sling of the rifle, and the piece supported by it. If in very exposed situations a soldier wishes to load lying, he will roll over on his back, and place the butt of his rifle between his legs, the cock upwards, and the muzzle a little elevated.

COMMENCE FIRING. Bugle Call, COMMENCE FIRING, N° VI.

2. *Firing when Advancing.*—On the words COMMENCE FIRING, or on the last sound of the bugle, the whole of the skirmishers will make a momentary halt, the front-rank man of each file will fire (kneeling if preferred), and take a side pace to his left; the rear-rank man will then pass on, and the front-rank man will follow close behind him, loading on the march; when in the act of capping

he will give the word "Ready" in an under tone of voice, on which the proper rear-rank man will fire, and both men will proceed as above described.

When men find difficulty in loading on the march, they may halt and load, and then double up to their file leaders.

When cover presents itself, the men must be taught to take advantage of it, by running forward from place to place as soon as they are loaded; when any large object affording considerable cover comes in their way, several files may run up behind it, fire, load, and then move on and regain their distances and places in the general line.

COMMENCE FIRING. Bugle Call, COMMENCE FIRING, No VI.

3. *Firing when Retiring.* — On the words COMMENCE FIRING, or on the last sound of the bugle, both ranks will halt, front, and kneel, the front-rank man of each right file will then fire, rise, face to the right about, and retire in quick time, passing by the left of his rear-rank man, and loading as he retires; the rear-rank man will continue to look to the front till his front-rank man has passed him, and will then rise, face to the right about and follow him. As soon as the left files hear the ramrods of the right files working they will proceed in like manner as the right files. When the loading of the front-rank man of a file is completed, both ranks will halt, front, and kneel, the rear-rank man will then fire and proceed as above described. After the first round the files will continue to fire and retire, without reference to each other.

give the word "Ready" in an
ne of voice, on which the proper
: man will fire, and both men
eed as above described.

r in loading on the march, they
n double up to their file leaders.

self, the men must be taught to
ning forward from place to place
when any large object affording
their way, several files may run
d then move on and regain their
general line.

ring when Retiring. — On the
OMMENCE FIRING, or on the last
f the bugle, both ranks will halt,
nd kneel, the front-rank man of
ht file will then fire, rise, face to
t about, and retire in quick time,
by the left of his rear-rank man,
ling as he retires; the rear-rank
l continue to look to the front
front-rank man has passed him,
l then rise, face to the right
nd follow him. As soon as the
s hear the ramrods of the right
rking they will proceed in like
as the right files. When the
of the front-rank man of a file
leted, both ranks will halt, front,
eel, the rear-rank man will then
l proceed as above described.
e first round the files will con-
fire and retire, without reference
other.

On rough ground, files will run back from one place of cover to another, taking care before they leave one station, to select another to fall back upon. One man of each file should fire previous to moving, and re-load when he is again under cover. As the principal object is to keep the enemy in check, skirmishers when retiring, should hold each station as long as possible without risk of being cut off by the enemy, or of being shot by their comrades.

When a line of skirmishers halted, is ordered to advance firing, the front-rank men will first fire, the whole will then rise, and proceed as already described.

4. *Firing while inclining to a Flank, or taking Ground to a Flank in Files.*

When skirmishers are ordered to fire, or the bugle sounds the fire, while they are inclining to the right or left, or taking ground to a flank in files, the front-rank men will halt, take steady aim and fire, the rear-rank men moving on; having fired, the front-rank men will double up to the proper rear of their rear-rank men, and then load on the march, or load at the halt, and then double up. When their loading is completed, the rear-rank men will proceed in like manner.

When skirmishers either halted, or on the march, are directed to CEASE FIRING, they will complete their loading, and the rear-rank men will resume their places in the proper rear of their front-rank men, if not there already.

Whenever skirmishers are directed to halt, by word of command or bugle sound, they will halt facing to their proper front, and if firing, they will drop on the knee and continue firing.

MOVEMENTS OF A BATTALION.

S. 10. *A Battalion extending in Skirmishing Order from Quarter Distance Column.*

1. *A Battalion of Ten Companies, extending from Quarter Distance Column right in front.*—Plate XLV.

Caution, THE BATTALION WILL SKIRMISH, THREE COMPANIES—EXTEND.

Movements of Left Skirmishers.	Movements of Centre Skirmishers	Movements of Right Skirmishers.
No. 3. *Double-March, By Sections Left-Wheel, Forward* (in echellon); and as soon as they are clear of the centre skirmishers, *From the Right—Extend.*	No. 1. *Quick-March, from the Centre—Extend.*	No. 2. *Double-March, By Sections, Right-Wheel, Forward* (in echellon); and as soon as they are clear of the centre skirmishers, *From the Left—Extend.*
Movements of Left Support.	**Movements of Centre Support.**	**Movements of Right Support.**
No. 6. *Quick-March, By Sections Left-Wheel, Forward* (in echellon); and when in rear of the centre of the left skirmishers *Re-form Company, Forward.*	No. 4. *Quick-March.*	No. 5. *Quick-March, By Sections Right-Wheel, Forward* (in echellon); and when in rear of the centre of the right skirmishers, *Re-form Company, Forward.*

Movements of Reserve.
Nos. 7, 8, 9, and 10 Companies form the reserve, remaining in column, or deploying into line, as the situation may require.

2. *A Battalion of Ten Companies, extending from Quarter Distance Column left in front.*—In this case No. 10 Company will form the centre skirmishers, No. 9 the right skirmishers, No. 8 the left skirmishers, No. 7 the centre support, No. 6 the right support, No. 5 the left support; the remainder will form the reserve. The extension will be performed in the same manner as it is performed from a column right in front.

PLATE XLV.

OF A BATTALION.

ding in Skirmishing Order from Distance Column.

mpanies, extending from Quarter ight in front.—Plate XLV.

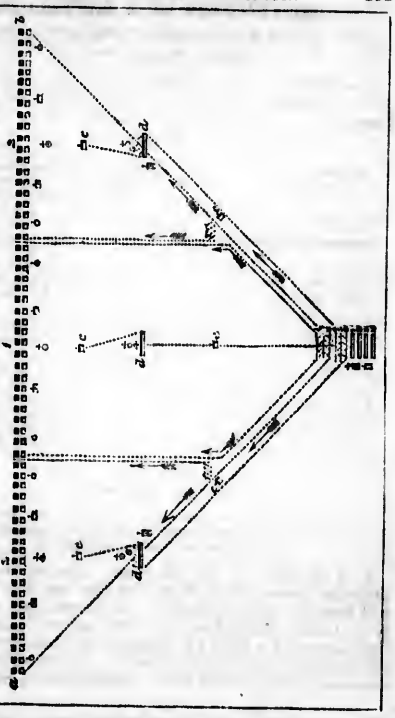
ILL SKIRMISH, THREE COMPANIES—EXTEND.

ovements of re Skirmishers	Movements of Right Skirmishers.
1. *Quick-larch, from e Centre—xtend.*	*No. 2. Double-March, By Sections, Right-Wheel, Forward* (in echelon); and as soon as they are clear of the centre skirmishers, *From the Left—Extend.*
ovements of ntre Support.	Movements of Right Support.
4. *Quick-larch.*	*No. 5. Quick-March, By Sections Right-Wheel, Forward* (in echelon); and when in rear of the centre of the right skirmishers, *Re-form Company, Forward.*
nents of Reserve.	
d 10 Companies form the ing in column, or deploying situation may require.	

Companies, extending from Quarter ront.—In this case No. 10 Company ishers, No. 9 the right skirmishers, No. 7 the centre support, No. 6 the ft support; the remainder will form sion will be performed in the same from a column right in front.

PLATE XLV.

A BATTALION OF TEN COMPANIES EXTENDED IN SKIRMISHING ORDER FROM QUARTER DISTANCE COLUMN.



3. *A Battalion of Eight or Six Companies, extending from Quarter Distance Column right in front.*

Caution, THE BATTALION WILL SKIRMISH, TWO COMPANIES—EXTEND.

Movements of Left Skirmishers.	Movements of Right Skirmishers.
No. 2. Quick-March, From the Right—Extend, the whole will make a half turn to the left and move on till clear of the left of No. 1, then extend as usual.	*No. 1. Quick-March, From the Left—Extend.*
Movements of Left Support.	**Movements of Right Support.**
No. 4. Quick March, By Sections Left-Wheel, Forward (in echelon); and when in rear of the centre of the left skirmishers, *Re-form Company, Forward.*	*No. 3. Quick-March, By Sections Right-Wheel, Forward* (in echelon); and when in rear of the centre of the right skirmishers, *Re-form Company, Forward.*

Movements of Reserve.
No. 5 and 6 in a six Company Battalion, and Nos. 5, 6, 7, and 8 in an eight Company Battalion, form the Reserve, in line or column.

4. *A Battalion of Eight or Six Companies, extending from Quarter Distance Column left in front.*—In this case the companies will move out as above described, but in the following order :—From a battalion of eight companies, No. 8 will form the right skirmishers, No. 7 the left skirmishers, No. 6 the right support, No. 5 the left support; the remainder will form the reserve. From a battalion of six companies, No. 6 will form the right skirmishers, No. 5 the left skirmishers, No. 4 the right support, No. 3 the left support; the remainder the reserve.

S. 11. A Battalion in Quarter Distance Column extending to a Flank.

Although the foregoing methods will usually be adopted in extending a battalion in skirmishing order, it may occasionally be necessary when covering a division or brigade to extend all the companies in the same direction, which will be performed as follows :

1. *A Battalion of Ten Companies, formed in Quarter Distance Column, extending from the Left.* If the column is right in front it will extend as follows :—

Caution, THE BATTALION WILL SKIRMISH, THREE LEADING COMPANIES, FROM THE LEFT, EXTEND.

Movements of Left Skirmishers.	Movements of Centre Skirmishers.	Movements of Right Skirmishers.
No. 1. *Quick-March, From the Left—Extend.*	No. 2. *Double-March, By Sections, Right-Wheel, Forward* (in echellon), when clear of the left skirmishers, *From the Left—Extend.*	No. 3. *Double-March, By Sections Right-Wheel Forward* (in echellon), when clear of the centre skirmishers, *From the Left—Extend.*
Movements of Left Support.	**Movements of Centre Support.**	**Movements of Right Support.**
No. 4. *Quick-March, By Sections Right-Wheel, Forward* (in echellon), when in rear of the centre of left skirmishers, *Re-form-Company, Forward.*	No. 5. *Quick-March, By Sections Right-Wheel, Forward* (in echellon), when in rear of the centre of centre skirmishers, *Re-form-Company, Forward.*	No. 6. *Quick-March, By Sections Right-Wheel, Forward* (in echellon), when in rear of the centre of the right skirmishers, *Re-form-Company, Forward.*
	Movements of Reserve.	
	No. 7, 8, 9, and 10 will take ground to the right by fours and form the reserve, as already described.	

If the column is left in front, No. 10 company will form the left skirmishers, No. 9 the centre skirmishers, No. 8 the right skirmishers, No. 7 the left support, No. 6 the centre support, and No. 5 the right support ; the remainder the reserve.

2. *A Battalion of Ten Companies, formed in Quarter Distance Column extending from the Right.*—In this case, whether the

rter Distance Column extending to
Flank.

nethods will usually be adopted in rmishing order, it may occasionally division or brigade to extend all the ction, which will be performed as

mpanies, formed in Quarter Distance Left. If the column is right in front

WILL SKIRMISH, THREE LEADING OM THE LEFT, EXTEND.

ovements of re Skirmishers.	Movements of Right Skirmishers.
Double-March, By s, Right-Wheel, rd (in echelon), clear of the left hers, *From the Extend.*	No. 3. *Double-March, By Sections Right-Wheel Forward* (in echelon), when clear of the centre skirmishers, *From the Left—Extend.*

ovements of ntre Support.	Movements of Right Support.
Quick-March, By s Right-Wheel, rd (in echelon), in rear of the of centre skir-s, *Re-form-Com-Forward.*	No. 6. *Quick-March, By Sections Right-Wheel, Forward* (in echelon), when in rear of the centre of the right skir-mishers, *Re-form-Com-pany, Forward.*

ponents of Reserve.
d 10 will take ground to y fours and form the already described.

ront, No. 10 company will form the centre skirmishers, No. 8 the right support, No. 6 the centre support, the remainder the reserve.

mpanies, formed in Quarter Distance Right.—In this case, whether the

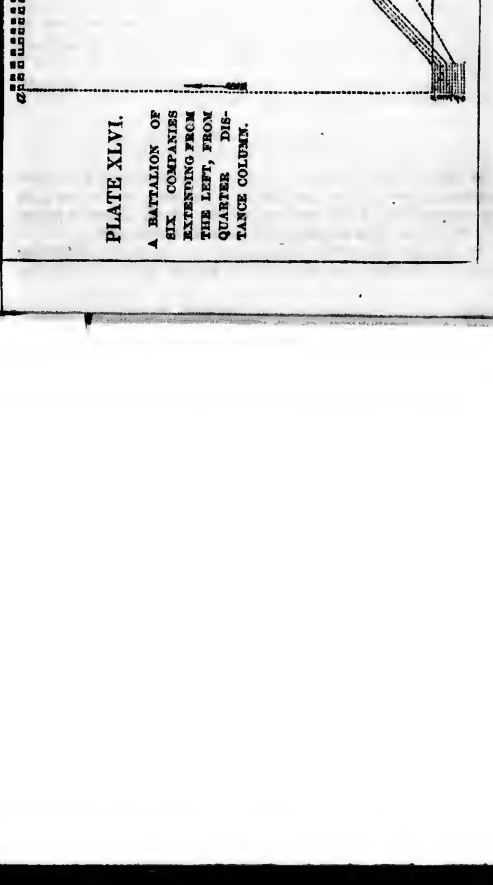


PLATE XLVI.

A BATTALION OF SIX COMPANIES EXTENDING FROM THE LEFT, FROM QUARTER DISTANCE COLUMN.

right c
skirmi
third c
and so
Wh
ports r
of sect
3. A
Right
compa
above

S. 15

1.
comp
the se
comp
right,
suppo
suppo
pany,
comp
the e
WILL
of eig
when
leadin
its rig
2.
panie
advan
ing co
on th
form
ing w

right or left is in front, the leading company will form the right skirmishers, the second company the centre skirmishers, the third company the left skirmishers, the fourth the right support, and so on.

When it is more convenient, the outward skirmishers and supports may move out from the column in fours instead of echellon of sections.

3. *A Battalion of Eight or Six Companies extending from the Right or Left.*—Plate XLVI. A battalion of eight or six companies will extend in either direction on the principles above described.

S. 12. A Battalion in Quarter Distance Column extending, Half its Companies skirmishing, Half in Support.

1. *Extending from the Centre.*—If the battalion is of ten companies, the leading company will extend from the centre, the second company will extend on the right of the leading company, the third on its left, the fourth on the extreme right, the fifth on the extreme left; the sixth company will support the company that is in the centre, the seventh will support the company next on the right of the centre company, the eighth the company next on its left, the ninth the company on the extreme right, the tenth the company on the extreme left; the command will be THE BATTALION WILL SKIRMISH, FIVE COMPANIES—EXTEND. A battalion of eight or six companies will extend in a similar manner; when the number of companies to be extended is even, the leading company will extend from its left, the second from its right.

2. *Extending from a Flank.*—In this movement the companies of the leading wing will skirmish, the front company advancing and extending from the named flank, the remaining companies in succession extending the line of skirmishers on the outward flank; the companies of the rear wing will form supports for the corresponding companies of the leading wing.

S. 13. *A Battalion extending in Skirmishing Order from Line.*

When a battalion is directed to extend from line, the skirmishers may be taken from either flank; the companies next to them will form the supports, the remaining companies the reserve. The extension will be performed as follows:—

1. *A Battalion of Ten Companies extending from Line, Three Companies skirmishing.*

Caution, THE BATTALION WILL SKIRMISH, THREE COMPANIES ON THE RIGHT, FROM THE CENTRE EXTEND.

Movements of Left Skirmishers.	Movements of Centre Skirmishers.	Movements of Right Skirmishers.
No. 3. *Double March, By Sections, Left-Wheel, Forward* (in echelon), as soon as the centre skirmishers are extended—*From the Right Extend.*	No. 2. *Quick-March, From the Centre—Extend.*	No. 1. *Double March, By Sections Right-Wheel, Forward* (in echelon), as soon as the centre skirmishers are extended—*From the Left—Extend.*
Movements of Left Support.	**Movements of Centre Support.**	**Movements of Right Support.**
No. 6. *Quick March,* and move in rear of the centre of the left skirmishers.	No. 5. *Quick-March, By Sections Right-Wheel, Forward* (in echelon), when in rear of the centre of the centre skirmishers, *Re-form-Company, Forward.*	No. 4. *Quick-March, By Sections Right-Wheel, Forward* (in echelon) when in rear of the centre of the right skirmishers, *Re-form-Company, Forward.*
	Movements of Reserve.	
	Nos. 7, 8, 9, and 10 Companies will form the reserve, in line or column, and will move in rear of the centre by fours.	

tending in Skirmishing Order from Line.

directed to extend from line, the skir-
rom either flank; the companies next
supports, the remaining companies the
will be performed as follows:—

Companies extending from Line, Three

N WILL SKIRMISH, THREE COMPANIES
FROM THE CENTRE EXTEND.

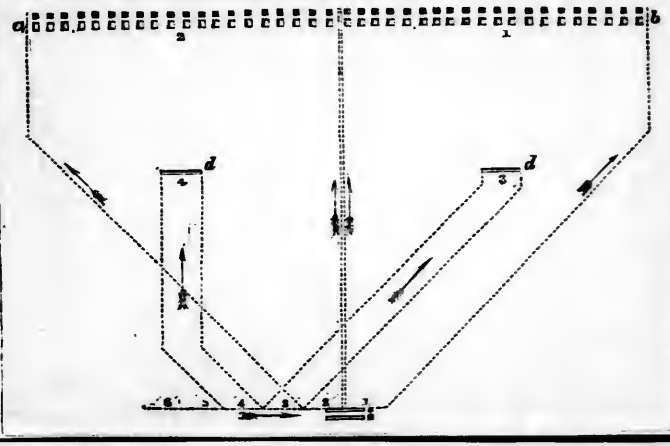
Movements of Centre Skirmishers.	Movements of Right Skirmishers.
1. *Quick-March, From Centre—Extend.*	*No.* 1. *Double March, By Sections Right - Wheel, Forward* (in echelon), as soon as the centre skirmishers are extended—*From the Left—Extend.*

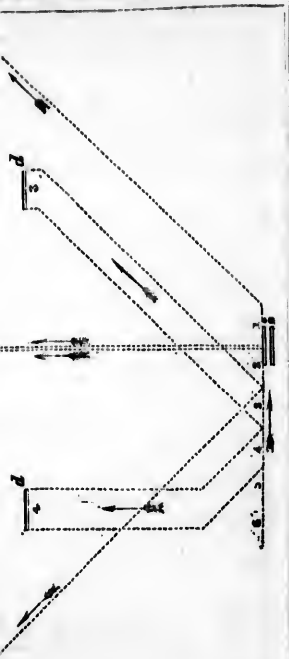
Movements of Centre Support.	Movements of Right Support.
5. *Quick-March, By tions Right - Wheel, rward* (in echelon), en in rear of the tre of the centre rmishers, *Re-form-mpany, Forward.*	*No.* 4. *Quick-March, By Sections Right - Wheel, Forward* (in echelon) when in rear of the centre of the right skirmishers, *Re-form-Company, Forward.*

vements of Reserve.
9, and 10 Companies will reserve, in line or column, move in rear of the centre

PLATE XLVII.

A BATTALION OF SIX COMPANIES EXTENDING IN SKIRMISHING ORDER FROM LINE.





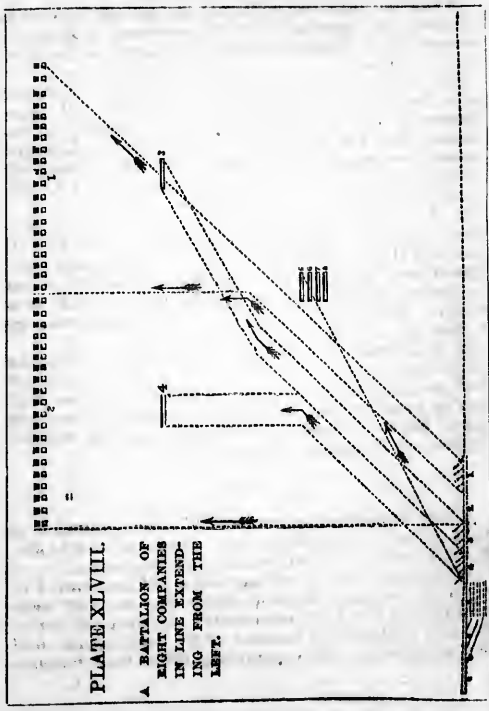
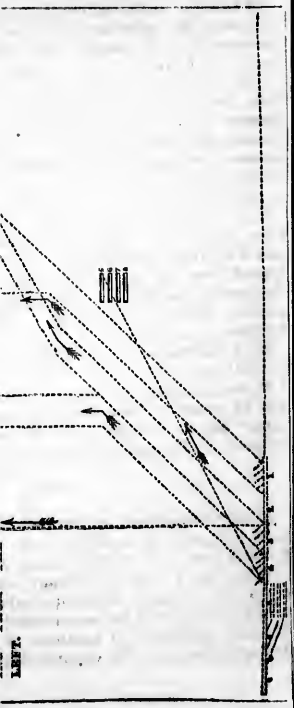


PLATE XLVIII.

A BATTALION OF EIGHT COMPANIES IN LINE EXTENDING FROM THE LEFT.



When the three companies on the left are ordered to skirmish, the extension will be performed in a similar manner, No. 8, 9, and 10 companies skirmishing, No. 5, 6, and 7 in support, and 1, 2, 3, and 4 in reserve.

The skirmishing companies may be directed to extend from their right or left, or from any named file, in the same manner as they extend from the centre, according to the ground they are intended to cover; the supports and reserve conforming to their movements. This method will be found useful when a battalion on the flank of a brigade or division is ordered to cover the rest of the line.

2. *A Battalion of Eight or Six Companies extending from Line, Two Companies skirmishing.*—Plate XLVII. and XLVIII.—A battalion of eight or six companies will extend from line in the same manner as a battalion of ten companies, the two companies on the right (or left) skirmishing, the two next companies in support, the remainder in reserve.

3. *A Battalion extending from Line, half its Companies skirmishing.*—A battalion may be required to send out half its companies to skirmish, in which case either wing may be extended from the right, left, centre, or from any named file, the companies of the remaining wing forming supports, in the manner above described.

It may occasionally be necessary to order a battalion of eight companies to send out three companies to skirmish, in which case only two will remain with the reserve.

When more than a company and a half are ordered to extend in the same direction, unless they are very weak companies, it would be unreasonable to expect the men of the outer companies to continue at the double march until they are extended; the commanding officer must therefore

use his discretion in ordering them to move out from line or column, in quick time, and in directing the company of formation, when extended, to halt for the remainder to move up.

Before a retreat, if necessary, the skirmishers of a battalion may be extended from the halt on their own ground, the support and reserve retiring to their proper distances and places.

S. 14. *Relieving Skirmishers.*

When skirmishers have suffered considerable loss, when they are fatigued by continued rapid movements, or when their supply of ammunition is getting low, it will be advisable to relieve them.

The most convenient method of effecting the relief, is to order the supports to extend and relieve their own skirmishers.

When retiring, the successive relief of the skirmishers by supports, is the most effectual manner of keeping an enemy in check: the officer commanding a support, should, therefore, be constantly on the look-out for good positions, in which he may extend his men with advantage, such as a bank, a ditch, a wall, or such like cover. After relieving, the new skirmishers must hold their position until ordered to continue the retreat.

The following general rules are laid down for relieving skirmishers under different circumstances.

1. ***Relieving Skirmishers that are halted.***—To relieve skirmishers that are halted, the supports will extend in the rear, out of immediate reach of the enemy's fire, and then run up to the old line. The old skirmishers on being relieved will run straight to their rear, and when out of immediate

ring them to move out from line
e, and in directing the company
ded, to halt for the remainder to

---

essary, the skirmishers of a batta-
on the halt on their own ground,
retiring to their proper distances

---

lieving Skirmishers.

e suffered considerable loss, when
tinued rapid movements, or when
tion is getting low, it will be ad-

method of effecting the relief, is to
xtend and relieve their own skir-

cessive relief of the skirmishers by
ctual manner of keeping an enemy
mmanding a support, should, there-
he look-out for good positions, in
his men with advantage, such as
or such like cover. After relieving,
st hold their position until ordered

l rules are laid down for relieving
ent circumstances.

ers that are halted.—To relieve skir-
the supports will extend in the rear,
of the enemy's fire, and then run
e old skirmishers on being relieved
ir rear, and when out of immediate

reach of the enemy's fire, will close on the centres of companies and form supports. The new skirmishers will usually be extended from the halt on their own ground, but under some circumstances, when they are completely hidden from the enemy, they may be ordered to advance and to extend on the march.

Should an immediate advance be intended, the old skirmishers on being relieved, will remain lying down till the new skirmishers have gained sufficient distance to their front; they will then rise, close on the centres of companies, and form supports.

2. *Relieving Skirmishers that are advancing.*—To relieve skirmishers that are advancing, the supports will extend on the march, and then double up to the old skirmishers, changing into quick time as they pass through them, on which, the old line will lie down and wait till the new skirmishers are sufficiently advanced to protect them from immediate fire, when they will rise, and each company will close to its centre, forming supports.

3. *Relieving Skirmishers that are retiring.*—To relieve skirmishers that are retiring, the supports will halt, front, and extend, each man if possible getting under cover. When the old skirmishers arrive within about 20 or 30 paces of the new, they will run through them to the rear, until they are out of immediate reach of the enemy's fire, and then close on the centres of companies and form supports. The new skirmishers should be extended at a considerable distance in rear of the old line, in order that they may have time to complete their extension and get under cover before they are required to check the enemy.

When skirmishers are relieved, and they find that fresh supports have been sent out from the reserve, they will form in rear of them, and afterwards proceed to join the reserve,

forming fours inwards and moving in quick time. If necessary, their supply of ammunition can then be replenished.

Fresh companies may be sent out at any time from the reserve to relieve the supports.

S. 15. *Reinforcing, or extending a Line of Skirmishers to a Flank.*

1. *Reinforcing.*—Any part of a line of skirmishers may be reinforced, by throwing forward the supports or part of them, in the same manner as they are thrown forward when relieving skirmishers, but on joining the old line, both will remain and skirmish together, dividing the distances. The strength of a line may be diminished by calling in any portion of the skirmishers, who will retire in the same manner as they are brought in when relieved. In this case, the remaining skirmishers will divide the space left by those who have retired.

2. *Extending.*—When it is necessary to extend skirmishers to a flank, without weakening the rest of the line, fresh skirmishers, with supports of equal strength, may be extended in the rear, and then ordered to double up and join the general line; or a support may be ordered to extend and move up on the flank of the skirmishers; in this case fresh supports must at once be sent out from the reserve.

When a captain brings up his company to relieve or reinforce another that is extended, he must call out for what purpose he is come, that the captain of the old skirmishers may know how to act.

---

moving in quick time. If neces-
nition can then be replenished.
e sent out at any time from the
orts.

---

ending a Line of Skirmishers to a Flank.

part of a line of skirmishers may
g forward the supports or part of
r as they are thrown forward when
on joining the old line, both will
ether, dividing the distances. The
be diminished by calling in any
ers, who will retire in the same
ought in when relieved. In this
nishers will divide the space left by

t is necessary to extend skirmishers
xening the rest of the line, fresh
rts of equal strength, may be ex-
hen ordered to double up and join
upport may be ordered to extend
lank of the skirmishers; in this
st at once be sent out from the

s up his company to relieve or rein-
tended, he must call out for what
the captain of the old skirmishers

S. 16. The Alarm, or Look out for Cavalry.

When skirmishers are unexpectedly attacked by cavalry, the bugle will sound the ALARM, or the words LOOK OUT FOR CAVALRY will be given, on which the skirmishers will at once form close column of sections, and prepare for cavalry, unless in disorder or scattered, in which case they will form rallying squares, which may be signified for parade purposes by the DOUBLE being sounded after the ALARM. The supports will form close columns of sections and advance by command of their captains; the reserve will also advance, the companies forming four deep on the march and closing on their centre by word of the commanding officer. As soon as the cavalry approach the skirmishers' squares, which will be signified when at drill by the sound COMMENCE FIRING, the supports will be halted and ordered to prepare for cavalry, and together with the skirmishers will commence firing; the reserve will also be ordered to form square on the leading company, which will be halted by its captain; the centre companies will be wheeled outwards by subdivisions, the rear company will close up, and will then be halted and faced to the right about. If only two companies are in reserve, they will form four deep as above directed, and when near the supports will halt at quarter distance, the rear company being faced about, and the flanks of both dressed back till they meet, forming an oval.

The squares of skirmishers and supports will rarely be found in straight lines or directly one behind another; but, when such is the case, the captains, if time will permit, must endeavour to move them into echellon, in order that they may protect each other mutually by their fire.

In the event of the squares being formed exactly in line or one behind another, the observance of the following

general rule will prevent officers from acting at cross purposes. The skirmishers' squares, which will have but very little time to move, will look only to each other, and if in line the centre and right squares will retire into echellon, the left square standing fast. The supports, which will have more time, will move not only into echellon with each other but also with the skirmishers' squares; as regards each other, the centre and left supports should advance into echellon, either by continuing to move on after the right support has halted, or by moving to the front at the double; as regards the skirmishers' squares the right and left supports will take ground outwards, the centre support to the left; the reserve will incline to the right (Plate XLIX. Fig. 1). The same rule will equally apply when only two companies are skirmishing, by omitting the directions to the centre skirmishers and support, and causing the reserve to move straight to its front. (Plate XLIX. Fig. 2.)

If a battalion is required to extend again from this formation, the skirmishers will extend from the files on which they closed. The supports will re-form companies and resume their former places, and the reserve will fall back to its original position, unless the skirmishers are about to advance, in which case, the supports and reserve may lie down till at sufficient distance from the front.

S. 17. *Closing on Supports.*

1. *The Close.*—When skirmishers are to be brought in and collected on the supports (Plate L.), the word of command to CLOSE ON SUPPORTS, or the Bugle sound CLOSE (No. II.), will be given, on which they will rise, face to the right about, and retire, the inner files of subdivisions moving at quick time, so as to clear the flanks of the supports, the remainder closing upon them in the usual manner as they retire. When at quarter distance in rear of the

ent officers from acting at cross pur-
rs' squares, which will have but very
ill look only to each other, and if in
ght squares will retire into echellon,
ng fast. The supports, which will have
not only into echellon with each other
nishers' squares; as regards each other,
pports should advance into echellon,
o move on after the right support has
to the front at the double; as regards
es the right and left supports will take
centre support to the left; the reserve
t (Plate XLIX. Fig. 1). The same rule
en only two companies are skirmish-
directions to the centre skirmishers
ing the reserve to move straight to its
Fig. 2.)
quired to extend again from this for-
rs will extend from the files on which
pports will re-form companies and
places, and the reserve will fall back
, unless the skirmishers are about to
se, the supports and reserve may lie
distance from the front.

. *Closing on Supports.*

en skirmishers are to be brought in
supports (Plate L.), the word of com-
UPPORTS, or the Bugle sound CLOSE
n, on which they will rise, face to the
ire, the inner files of subdivisions
, so as to clear the flanks of the sup-
losing upon them in the usual manner
n at quarter distance in rear of the

PLATE XLIX.

FORMATION OF BATTALIONS OF TEN OR SIX COMPANIES AFTER THE ALARM HAS BEEN SOUNDED.

Fig. 1.

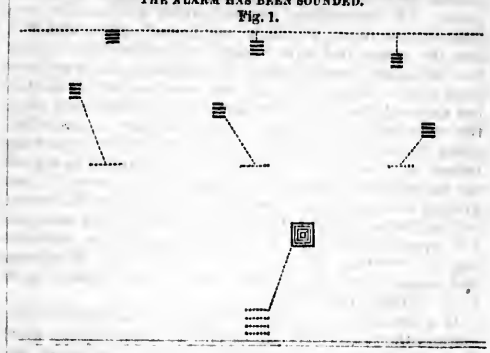
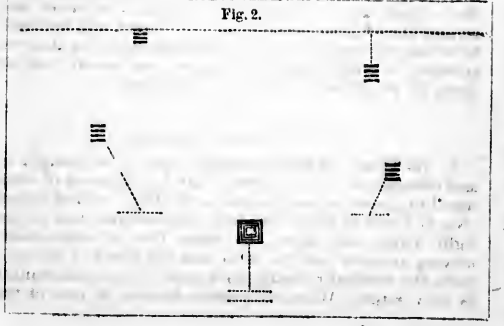


Fig. 2.



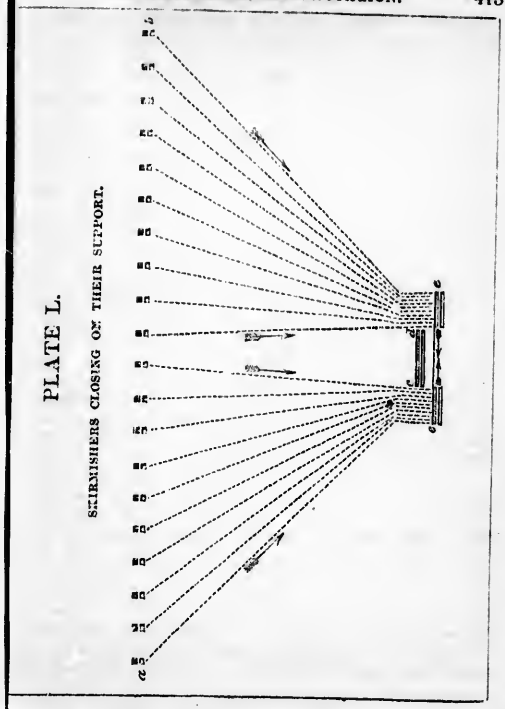


PLATE L.

SKIRMISHERS CLOSING ON THEIR SUPPORT.

supports the subdivisions will turn inwards, advancing arms, or shouldering if armed with short rifles, as they turn; halt, front, as they meet; order arms, and stand at ease, without words of command. If necessary the skirmishers may be directed to move at the double.

2. *The Close and Alarm.*—When skirmishers are not closely pressed by cavalry, the word CLOSE will be given, followed by LOOK-OUT FOR CAVALRY, or the bugle sound CLOSE (No. II.) followed by THE ALARM (No. XI.), on which the supports will advance, forming subdivisions on the march, and the skirmishers will move to the rear at the double, closing on the inward files of subdivisions, as described in the preceding paragraph, except that the centre files will incline outwards when they commence to retire, in order to keep clear of the front of their supports. As each company of skirmishers approaches its support, the leading subdivision of the latter will be halted by the captain, the rear subdivision closing to the front and halting without word of command; both will fix bayonets or swords as they come to the halt; the skirmishers will turn inwards, and form close column of subdivisions in rear of the supports, fixing bayonets or swords as they halt and front. The two companies will then be ordered to prepare for cavalry, in the same manner as a company in close column of sections.

In this formation the centre and left squares, if in line, should advance into echellon.

If the skirmishers are attacked by cavalry before they reach their supports they will form rallying squares; for parade purposes THE ALARM will be repeated when this is to be done.

When the skirmishers and supports have been formed separately into close columns of sections in the presence of cavalry, as described in Section 16 of this Part, and there is

time for the former to move in on the latter, the words ON THE SUPPORTS CLOSE, or the bugle sound CLOSE (No. II.), will be given, on which the supports will advance, and the skirmishers' columns will be ordered to retire in quick time, the latter forming on that flank of the former which happens to be nearest to them. The two companies will prepare for cavalry as a company in close column of sections, forming one square.

After the skirmishers have closed on the supports, if the battalion is again ordered to extend, the old supports will advance and extend from the centre, or from such file as will cause them to occupy the ground, and the old skirmishers will form companies in support.

If necessary the old supports will extend on their own ground from the halt, and the old skirmishers will re-form company and retire to their proper distance as supports.

S. 18. *Closing on the Reserve.* (Plate LI.)

1. ***Skirmishers and supports closing independently on reserve.*** —If skirmishers and supports in extended order are to be collected on the reserve, the reserve, if armed with long rifles, will be ordered to fix bayonets, and the words "ASSEMBLE ON THE RESERVE," or the bugle sound ASSEMBLE (No. VIII.) will be given; on which, the supports will be ordered to form fours inwards, retire in double time, by the shortest lines, and form at quarter distance in rear of the reserve. The skirmishers will rise, face to the right about, and retire in double time, each company closing on its centre as it goes to the rear. An officer will lead each company to the flank of the reserve as soon as it is closed, placing himself on the inward flank; as they arrive at quarter distance in rear of the reserve, each company will be ordered to turn inwards by fours, to halt, front, dress in column, and to fix

move in on the latter, the words ON
s, or the bugle sound CLOSE (No. II.),
ich the supports will advance, and
nns will be ordered to retire in quick
ng on that flank of the former which
t to them. The two companies will
a company in close column of sections,

---

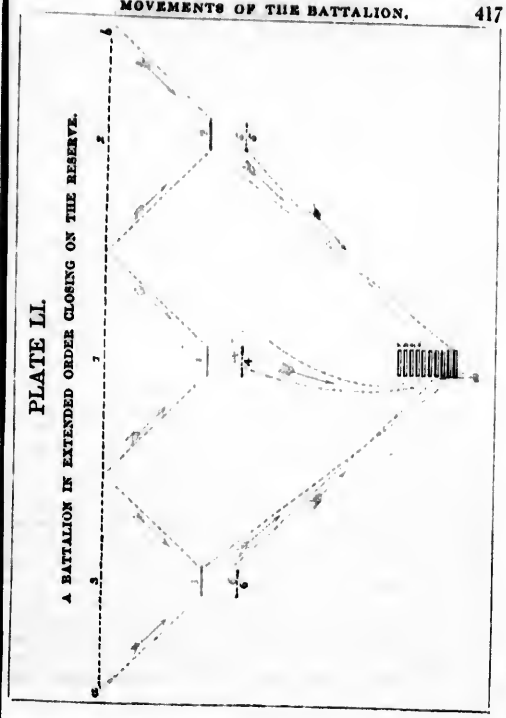
s have closed on the supports, if the
ered to extend, the old supports will
om the centre, or from such file as will
the ground, and the old skirmishers
a support.
l supports will extend on their own
and the old skirmishers will re-form
their proper distance as supports.

---

g on the Reserve. (Plate LI.)
pports closing independently on reserve.
supports in extended order are to be
, the reserve, if armed with long rifles,
bayonets, and the words "ASSEMBLE
or the bugle sound ASSEMBLE (No.
n which, the supports will be ordered
retire in double time, by the shortest
arter distance in rear of the reserve.
ise, face to the right about, and retire
ompany closing on its centre as it goes
r will lead each company to the flank
a as it is closed, placing himself on
hey arrive at quarter distance in rear
ompany will be ordered to turn in-
t, front, dress in column, and to fix

PLATE LI.

A BATTALION IN EXTENDED ORDER CLOSING ON THE RESERVE.



bayonets; remaining with ordered arms, at attention. When necessary, the skirmishers and supports may be directed to move in quick time.

The centre skirmishers and support, when there are three companies skirmishing, will move in, passing round the left of the reserve, the support in fours right in front.

The companies will take their places in rear of the reserve as they arrive, without reference to their numbers; if two companies from the opposite flanks meet, the one from the right will pass in front of the other, in other words, they will pass left arm to left arm.

When skirmishers have been reinforced and the men of different companies are mixed together, or when they have lost their order from other causes, on the sound ASSEMBLE (No. VIII.), they will double to the rear independently, and form companies on their coverers in rear of the reserve. Should there be no reserve, the commanding officer will place the coverers at his discretion.

2. *Skirmishers and supports closing on reserve together.*—When the skirmishers have closed in rear of their supports, as described in Section 17, No. 1 of this Part, and both are required to assemble on the reserve; on the words ASSEMBLE ON THE RESERVE, or on the bugle sound ASSEMBLE (No. VIII.), they will form fours inwards, each support moving with its skirmishers, by command of the senior captain of the two, the centre skirmishers and support forming fours to the right. They will move in double time by the shortest lines, and form at quarter distance in rear of the reserve, the centre skirmishers and supports passing round the left of the column. Should four companies coming from opposite flanks meet, the two from the right will form in front of those from the left. Each captain will halt and front his own company, give the words *Dress*, and *Fix-Bayonets* if the men are armed with long rifles, and the men will then remain with ordered arms.

In the presence of cavalry, supports should always be allowed to wait for their skirmishers before moving into the reserve.

Should any of the companies while they are assembling be attacked by cavalry, they will at once form square, and prepare to receive them; for parade purposes the ALARM will be sounded when this is to be done.

When a battalion, or part of a battalion, covering a line, skirmishers and supports only being in front, is ordered to assemble in rear of the line, or when the sound ASSEMBLE (No. VIII.) is given, the whole will move to the rear of the line by the shortest directions, and as quickly as possible, the supports in fours, the skirmishers independently, passing through the intervals between battalions. When in rear of the line they will move towards the commanding officer of the battalion, and form quarter distance column wherever he may direct, which should generally be in rear of the centre. If part of the battalion is already formed they will form in rear of it.

S. 19. Flanking Parties.

Skirmishers with supports, and, if necessary, a reserve, may be extended to protect the flank of a column. In this case, the skirmishers will move in files parallel to the direction of the column when it advances or retires, the supports and the reserve in fours; the leading file of the skirmishers should communicate with the flank of the advance guard. When the column halts, the skirmishers, supports, and reserve will halt and front.

The skirmishers of a battalion in extended order must never be required to change front at right angles; if it is necessary to protect a flank, fresh skirmishers should be sent out from the reserve or the main body.

---

cavalry, supports should always be
eir skirmishers before moving into

---

companies while they are assembling
, they will at once form square, and
; for parade purposes the ALARM
his is to be done.
part of a battalion, covering a line,
rts only being in front, is ordered to
line, or when the sound ASSEMBLE
he whole will move to the rear of
est directions, and as quickly as
in fours, the skirmishers indepen-
h the intervals between battalions.
line they will move towards the
f the battalion, and form quarter
ever he may direct, which should
the centre. If part of the battalion
will form in rear of it.

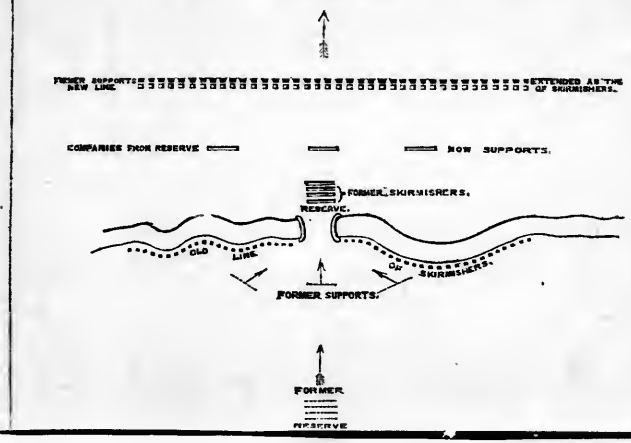
. *Flanking Parties.*
pports, and, if necessary, a reserve,
tect the flank of a column. In this
ill move in files parallel to the direc-
n it advances or retires, the supports
; the leading file of the skirmishers
th the flank of the advance guard.
lts, the skirmishers, supports, and
nt.

---

a battalion in extended order must
hange front at right angles; if it is
flank, fresh skirmishers should be
ve or the main body.

PLATE LII.

A BATTALION IN EXTENDED ORDER ADVANCING ACROSS A BRIDGE IN CONTACT WITH AN ENEMY.



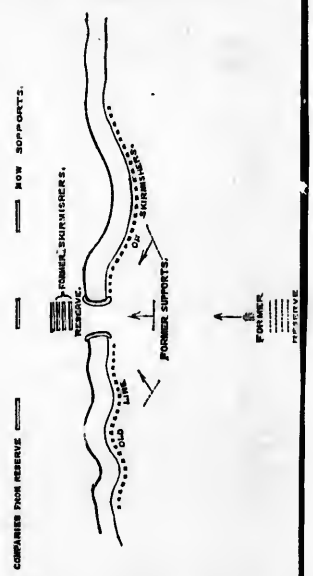
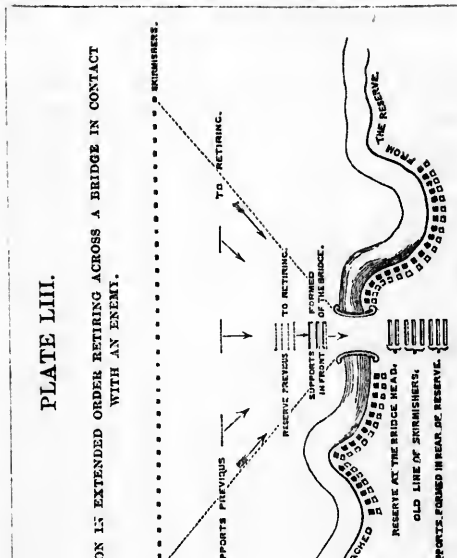
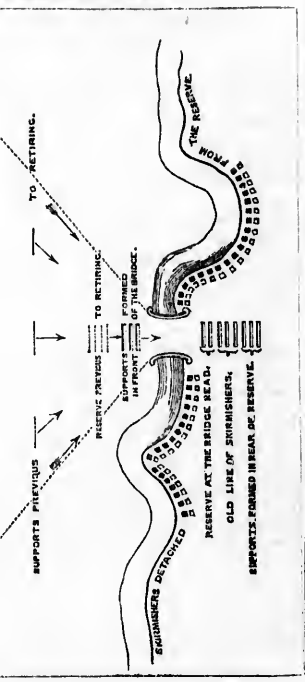

COMPANIES FROM RESERVE
NOW SUPPORTS.
FORMER SKIRMISHERS.
RESERVE.
OLD LINE
FORMER SUPPORTS.
FORMER RESERVE

PLATE LIII.

A BATTALION IN EXTENDED ORDER RETIRING ACROSS A BRIDGE IN CONTACT WITH AN ENEMY.





S. 20. Passing a Bridge or Short Defile in contact with an Enemy.—Plates LII. and LIII.

1. *Advancing.*—The skirmishers, on reaching the margin of the river, or the beginning of whatever other impediment may form the defile, will (when the flanks cannot be gained) lie down and cover themselves, keeping up a brisk fire upon the enemy. The supports, on approaching the bridge (or defile) will close upon that support which may be opposite to it, and supported by the reserve, charge and force the passage with the bayonet; this point gained, and the reserve having crossed the bridge, the supports will gradually extend from their centre, the reserve maintaining possession of the bridge, the old skirmishers will keep up their fire, until clouded in succession by the new line; when the new line has completed its extension the reserve will send out fresh supports, and the old skirmishers will assemble in rear of the reserve. The whole will then move forward according to the original formation.

2. *Retiring.*—In retiring, the reserve will first pass, and take post at the bridge-head, or the outlet of the defile, immediately detaching parties to both flanks to line the river, in extended order. The supports will close upon the one which is opposite the bridge, and in compact order, halt in front of it, until the line of skirmishers is withdrawn; in order that this may be effected without unnecessary delay, the skirmishers should incline towards the bridge when at some distance from it, and on arriving near it, they should run briskly over it, and form in rear of the reserve. The supports will then cross, and in like manner joining the reserve, the whole will be prepared to defend the bridge or to retire, as may be ordered. The new line of skirmishers will commence firing as soon as their front is clear; and if the retreat is to be continued, supports will be again thrown out between them and the reserve.

Advanced and Rear Guards.

S. 21. *Advanced Guards.*

1. *General Intention of Advanced Guards.*—Advanced guards are formed in front of a column, or of the columns of an army, for the purpose of feeling the way through a country—to gain intelligence of the enemy and to give timely notice of his vicinity or approach, in order that the main body may have time to prepare either for making or repelling an attack.

2. *Their Strength and Composition.*—Advanced guards are sometimes pushed a considerable distance in advance of the column, for the purpose of seizing a post, or of anticipating the enemy on some important point; their strength and composition, therefore, must depend on the distance they are required to precede the main body, the object contemplated, the nature of the country, and a variety of other circumstances which can only be appreciated on the spot.

3. *General Rules applicable to all.*—The general rules and principles which should govern an advanced guard in one situation, are, with a few obvious exceptions, applicable to all. To guard against surprise or unexpected collision with the enemy,—to watch his motions, or to gain intelligence of his situation,—and to cover and conceal the movements and formation of the main body,—are manifestly the great leading principles upon which advanced guards should be conducted, whether the object be to fall suddenly on the enemy's piquets, to dislodge him from a post, or merely to give warning of his vicinity.

4. *Specific Rules cannot be laid down.*—No specific rules can be laid down for the conduct of an advanced guard, where every instance of falling in with an enemy must vary; the officer in command of the guard must depend on

D AND REAR GUARDS.

. *Advanced Guards.*

of Advanced Guards.—Advanced
ont of a column, or of the columns
rpose of feeling the way through a
ligence of the enemy and to give
inity or approach, in order that the
me to prepare either for making or

nd Composition.—Advanced guards
a considerable distance in advance
e purpose of seizing a post, or of
y on some important point; their
ion, therefore, must depend on the
ired to precede the main body, the
e nature of the country, and a variety
s which can only be appreciated on

pplicable to all.—The general rules
should govern an advanced guard in
a few obvious exceptions, applicable
inst surprise or unexpected collision
vatch his motions, or to gain intelli-
—and to cover and conceal the move-
of the main body,—are manifestly the
s upon which advanced guards should
the object be to fall suddenly on the
slodge him from a post, or merely to
inity.

not be laid down.—No specific rules
the conduct of an advanced guard,
of falling in with an enemy must
mmand of the guard must depend on

his own intelligence for the proper execution of this most important duty, and allow nothing to escape his personal observation. The following remarks will be found useful in cases of the more frequent occurrence.

5. *Approaching a Village.*—An advanced guard, on approaching a village, must proceed with great precaution, if feeling for an enemy. The reserve and the advanced parties on the road must be halted beyond the reach of musketry from the village, while strong flanking parties are sent round the outskirts to threaten the rear. The corporal's party on the road may then move on, in single files, with a considerable interval between them, followed by as many files in succession, from the support, as may be deemed expedient; and the supports and reserve will move forward when it has been ascertained that the place is not in the occupation of the enemy.

6. *Entering a Defile or Hollow-way.*—The head of an advanced guard must never commit itself by entering a defile, or hollow-way, without previously occupying the heights on either side by flanking parties. When the heights are thus crowned, the leading party on the road will send on a single file, which will be followed by others in succession, near enough to keep the preceding one in view, the flanking parties on the heights on either side continuing to precede the centre until the defile is passed, when they will gradually fall back to their former stations, and the whole move forward in the original formation.

7. *The Flanks of all Objects to be turned.*—Generally speaking, the flanks of every object capable of affording concealment to an enemy, will invariably be turned, and the rear threatened previously to its being felt in front; by this means the enemy will be discovered and most frequently dislodged without loss.

8. *Ascending a Hill.*—On coming to a hill the flank files will first move in both directions round the base; a leading

file will then ascend, creeping up when near the top so as not to show itself upon the summit, but making its observations from behind the brow; it will then signal to the rest of the party whether the enemy is in sight or not.

9. *Bogs, Morasses, &c., to be examined.*—All bogs, morasses, &c. must be carefully examined before they are passed by an advanced guard, lest an enemy should be left concealed in them and the advanced guard cut off.

10. *Patroles.*—All houses, copses, enclosures, &c. that are too distant to be inspected by the advanced guard, should be examined by patroles, which may consist of a subaltern party, a serjeant and twelve, or a corporal and six, according to circumstances; the rules laid down for advanced guards apply equally to patroles.

11. *A good View of the Country to be obtained.*—All heights from which a view of the surrounding country can be obtained should be ascended by the advanced files of the guard, or by the patroles. The top of a church, a tower, a mound, &c., afford good positions for observations. The men thus employed must take care they are not seen by the enemy.

12. *Preconcerted Signals.*—The leading files of an advanced guard or patrole should be instructed to give immediate intelligence of the presence of an enemy by some preconcerted signal. One man of the leading file holding up his cap on a firelock, may signify that a small body of the enemy is in sight, both men holding up their caps on their firelocks, that the enemy is near in force. A firelock held up horizontally may signify that no enemy is in sight.

13. *Conduct in case of Attack.*—If the front of an advanced guard formed on a road is attacked, the leading files will at once fall back on their support; the commanding officer of the guard will then use his discretion in ordering his reserve to move up and reinforce the support, or the support to fall back on the reserve, according to the nature

eeping up when near the top so as
the summit, but making its observa-
row; it will then signal to the rest of
nemy is in sight or not.

c., to be examined.—All bogs, mo-
fully examined before they are passed
lest an enemy should be left con-
dvanced guard cut off.

uses, copses, enclosures, &c. that are
ted by the advanced guard, should
s, which may consist of a subaltern
elve, or a corporal and six, according
ules laid down for advanced guards
s.

the Country to be obtained.—All
ew of the surrounding country can
scended by the advanced files of the
es. The top of a church, a tower, a
od positions for observations. The
st take care they are not seen by the

nals.—The leading files of an ad-
should be instructed to give imme-
e presence of an enemy by some
ne man of the leading file holding up
ay signify that a small body of the
men holding up their caps on their
y is near in force. A firelock held
nify that no enemy is in sight.

of Attack.—If the front of an ad-
a road is attacked, the leading files
on their support; the commanding
then use his discretion in ordering
and reinforce the support, or the
the reserve, according to the nature

PLATE LIV.

AN ADVANCED GUARD ON THE LINE OF MARCH ON A ROAD

PLATE LIV.

ON THE LINE OF MARCH ON A ROAD

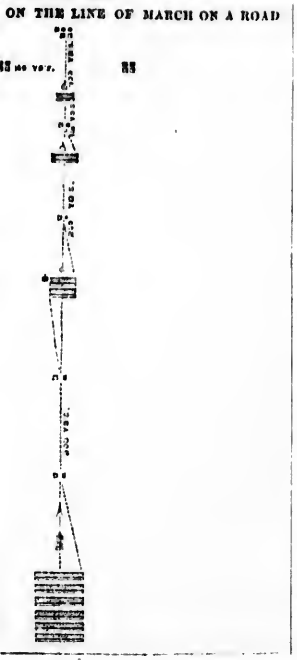


PLATE LV.

AN ADVANCED GUARD COMING OUT ON A PLAIN AND EXTENDING.

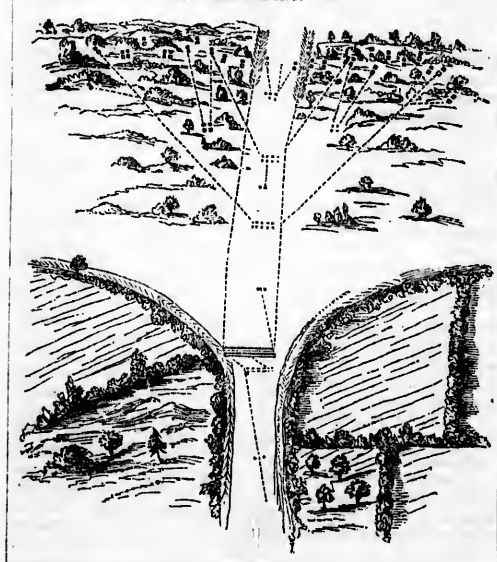
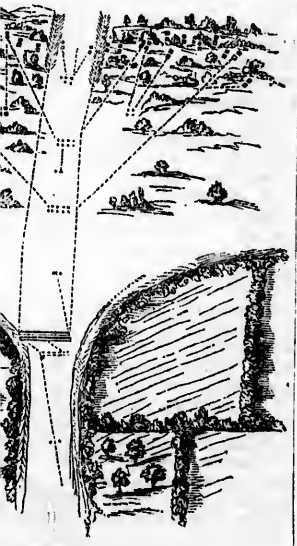


PLATE LV.

RD COMING OUT ON A PLAIN AND EXTENDING.



of the ground, the strength of the attacking party, and the distance he may be from the main body; remembering always that his principal duty is to give time for the column to prepare to receive the enemy, without unnecessarily exposing his own men. A patrole should never commit itself in action, if it can be avoided.

14. *Advanced Guards to be re-formed after dislodging the Enemy.*—No advanced guard or detached party of any kind, after carrying a post, should ever be permitted to advance without re-forming. The men should on no account pursue the flying enemy, but re-form rapidly, and wait for further orders.

15. *To be provided with Intrenching Tools.*—Every advanced guard should be provided with a proportion of axes and intrenching tools.

16. *Formation of an Advanced Guard on a Road.*—When a column is marching along a road, the advanced guard will be composed of one or more companies, divided into four parts or sections; the two rear sections (under the command of the senior officer) will form the reserve in front of the column; the second section from the front will form a support 200 yards in front of the reserve, under command of the third senior officer; the leading section will be 100 yards in front of the second section, and will detach a corporal and two files 100 yards to its front and two files to each flank, 100 yards from the road and about 50 yards more retired than the corporal's party. The senior subaltern will accompany the leading section. The detached files must carefully examine all houses, enclosures, &c., within their reach; but should more distant objects present themselves, patroles must be detached from the second section for their particular examination. Single files of communication will be placed between the different divisions of an advanced guard, and also between its reserve and the head of the column. The distance between

the two latter must be regulated by circumstances · but it will generally be about 500 yards during the day and about 300 during the night.

If the company is weak it may be advisable to send on only one file and a corporal in front and one file on each flank.

17. *Method of forming the Guard.*—The simplest method of forming an advanced guard will be to draw the company or companies up, in column of four sections or parts, in front of the main body, and then march off the different parts in succession, commencing with the corporal and two files who are to lead. If right is in front, the movement will commence from the right; if left is in front, it will commence from the left of the leading section or part. The connecting files in front of the reserve and support will be sent on from the reverse flanks of the second and third parts or sections, the connecting file in rear of the reserve will be dropped from the pivot flank of the rear section; one connecting file should be sent out from the leading company of the main body.

18. *Formation of an Advanced Guard on a Plain.*—An advanced guard, on a plain, is simply a line of skirmishers with supports, and if far distant from the main body, with a reserve. When the leading files of an advanced guard on a road come out on a plain, they will halt and lie down, the flanking files will move up and lie down in line with them at their usual distances of 100 yards. The remainder of the leading section or subdivision as it comes up, will extend from its centre; the second section or subdivision will also extend from its centre, and reinforce the leading section or subdivision. The skirmishers thus formed will advance, correcting their distances from the centre on the march, the reserve will form subdivision or company and act as a support to the skirmishers. This formation will occasionally be found useful when the leading

regulated by circumstances: but it 500 yards during the day and about

reak it may be advisable to send on poral in front and one file on each

g the Guard.—The simplest method l guard will be to draw the company olumn of four sections or parts, in r, and then march off the different mencing with the corporal and two If right is in front, the movement he right; if left is in front, it will of the leading section or part. The t of the reserve and support will be erse flanks of the second and third connecting file in rear of the reserve the pivot flank of the rear section; ould be sent out from the leading ody.

Advanced Guard on a Plain.—An plain, is simply a line of skirmishers far distant from the main body, the leading files of an advanced out on a plain, they will halt and lie will move up and lie down in line sual distances of 100 yards. The ng section or subdivision as it comes centre; the second section or sub- l from its centre, and reinforce the bdivision. The skirmishers thus correcting their distances from the o reserve will form subdivision or support to the skirmishers. This lly be found useful when the leading

files have discovered an enemy without having been themselves observed.

An advanced guard thus extended, may resume its original formation by the leading files moving on and the remainder halting till they have gained their proper distances, and then following on in succession, the remainder of the first and the second sections or subdivisions closing on their centres.

S. 22. *Formation of Rear Guards.*

1. *Formation of Rear Guards.*—Rear guards will be formed in precisely the same manner as advanced guards, only facing to the rear. When on a road the guard should be marched to the rear and formed in column facing to the rear; if the main body is right in front the rear guard will be left in front and *vice versâ.* If no enemy is near, and the column is on the march, the guard may be formed by the different parties facing about in succession, and marching off as the column gains the proper distances from them.

2. *General Intention of Rear Guards.*—A rear guard is an advanced guard reversed: it covers the retreating column from any sudden assault in the rear, and it prevents the enemy from stealing round, and gaining the flanks of the main body; it should be kept closer to the main body than it is usual to keep an advanced guard. The prevention of straggling is also an important part of the duties of a rear guard.

3. *Preparations for Retreat are made in the Rear.*—All preparations for retreat, before the enemy, should be made in the rear. For example, a line, previous to falling back, will extend its skirmishers behind it, concealed from view as much as possible, and with supports and reserves ready

to sustain them; these become the rear guard. In many cases an intended retrograde movement is concealed under a demonstration of attack, and the troops so employed in deceiving the enemy, will naturally become the rear guard, after that object is attained.

4. *Strength and Composition dependent on Local Considerations.*—The strength and composition of a rear guard can only be determined on the spot, according to the force and vicinity of the enemy, the nature of the country, and the degree of resistance that may probably be required, to give the column time to surmount any obstacles or difficulties in the route. The object being that of securing the retreat from interruption or annoyance, resistance will generally cease when that end is gained; but when the pursuit is close and vigorous, every hedge-row, copse, or defile becomes a post, which a rear guard must defend with obstinacy to the last.

5. *To be well provided with Intrenching Tools and Axes.*—Every rear guard should be well provided with axes and intrenching tools, to enable it to block up defiles and bridges, to break up the road, and throw impediments in the way of a pursuing enemy.

6. *The Rear Guard to be informed of all Obstacles in the Route, and reinforced when necessary.*—When a retreating column meets with obstacles in its route, or has to pass a bridge or defile, an officer will be sent back to apprize the rear guard of the circumstance, in order that it may be prepared to hold the enemy in check, during the delay which must ensue; and when hard pressed it will generally be advisable to halt a detachment at any defile or bridge the column may have passed, to make preparations for defence, to protect the rear guard in passing over, and afterwards to assist it in maintaining the post as long as may be practicable or expedient. Posts of this description may often

become the rear guard. In many
ograde movement is concealed under
tack, and the troops so employed in
vill naturally become the rear guard,
ined.

nposition dependent on Local Con-
gth and composition of a rear guard
on the spot, according to the force
my, the nature of the country, and
e that may probably be required, to
to surmount any obstacles or diffi-
he object being that of securing the
on or annoyance, resistance will
hat end is gained; but when the
gorous, every hedge-row, copse, or
hich a rear guard must defend with

with Intrenching Tools and Axes.—
ld be well provided with axes and
nable it to block up defiles and
e road, and throw impediments in
nemy.

be informed of all Obstacles in the
en necessary.—When a retreating
acles in its route, or has to pass a
r will be sent back to apprize the
mstance, in order that it may be
ny in check, during the delay which
hard pressed it will generally be
ment at any defile or bridge the
to make preparations for defence,
in passing over, and afterwards
the post as long as may be prac-
ests of this description may often

be defended until dark, and thereby afford the greatest relief to the retreating column.

7. *Flanking Parties to be constantly on the alert.*—While the rear guard is disputing any point, the flanking parties must be particularly on the alert, to notice any attempt the enemy may make to turn its flanks, by a ford for example, when the stand is made at a bridge. Indeed, it may always be presumed that a pursuing enemy will lose no opportunity that may present itself of stealing round the flanks of his opponents.

PIQUETS.

S. 23. *Piquets and their Sentries.*

1. *Use of Piquets.*—All armies or smaller bodies of troops in camp or bivouac must be protected by piquets.

2. *Descriptions of Piquets.*—Piquets are of two descriptions, outlying and inlying, varying in strength according to the extent of front to be guarded, and the liability to be attacked. The outlying piquet is thrown forward a considerable distance in front of the camp or cantonments; the inlying piquet usually remains in camp accoutred, and ready to turn out, and support the former at a moment's warning, having sentries advantageously posted for hearing and observing any alarm in front, and communicating, when necessary, by patroles with the advanced posts.

3. *Principal Duties of an Outlying Piquet.*—The principal duties of an outlying piquet are to secure the safety and repose of the camp, to prevent reconnaissances being made by the enemy, and to gain intelligence of his movements, and even of his intentions, by patrolling, by careful watching, by examining the peasantry of the country, and by all those indications with which every officer ought to

be familiar, such as the strengthening of the enemy's posts, unusual bustle or movement in his lines, the sound of troops or artillery on the march at night, the diminution or the increase of fires, &c. &c.

4. *How Piquet Duties are furnished.*—Piquets in the field may be taken by brigades, the different regiments furnishing one or more companies, as may be required, a field officer of the day being in charge of the whole; or an entire regiment may be employed on piquet duty under its own officers.

5. *Piquets to be extended as Light Infantry.*—Outlying piquets will be posted with a complete chain of double sentries in front, on the same principles that light troops are extended to cover a line. When they are posted near the main body, supports only will be necessary in rear of the line of sentries, but when distant, a reserve will also be required, and if the line is of considerable extent more than one reserve may be requisite. The post of the field officer of the day will usually be with the reserve.

6. *Piquets to be divided into Reliefs.*—In order that each company may be able to relieve its sentries periodically, it must be divided when on piquet duty into three reliefs; one relief only will be extended on sentry, the other two will remain in support. Sentries should be relieved every hour during the night.

7. *Detached Parties.*—If the chain of sentries should be so far extended as to make it inconvenient to relieve them all from the piquet in support, one or two small parties, forming intermediate supports to the chain, and under command of officers or non-commissioned officers, may be detached to convenient situations for the purpose of furnishing the sentries.

8. *Piquet Sentries.*—All piquet sentries must be double, except the connecting sentries between the front line and the parties in rear, which may be single.

ie strengthening of the enemy's posts, vement in his lines, the sound of troops rch at night, the diminution or the kc.

ties are furnished.—Piquets in the by brigades, the different regiments ore companies, as may be required, a being in charge of the whole; or an e employed on piquet duty under its

tended as Light Infantry.—Outlying d with a complete chain of double the same principles that light troops a line. When they are posted near rts only will be necessary in rear of t when distant, a reserve will also be e is of considerable extent more than quisite. The post of the field officer be with the reserve.

ded into Reliefs.—In order that each to relieve its sentries periodically, it on piquet duty into three reliefs; one nded on sentry, the other two will Sentries should be relieved every hour

.—If the chain of sentries should be make it inconvenient to relieve them n support, one or two small parties, supports to the chain, and under r non-commissioned officers, may be ent situations for the purpose of .

-All piquet sentries must be double, sentries between the front line and ch may be single.

9. *Positions and Conduct of Day and Night Sentries.*—Piquet sentries by day should be placed on heights and in commanding positions, whence they may see all the country in their front without exposing themselves to view; but at night they must be placed lower down so as to have the highest ground before them in order that they may see any approaching party against the sky without being themselves discovered. By day it is not necessary to leave more sentries on duty than are sufficient to watch thoroughly the country in their front; each sentry should be able to see the files on his right and left, as well as the intermediate country between them; at night or in thick weather a greater number will be required, and one man of each file should always remain on his post, looking out vigilantly to his front, while the other patroles to his right, till he comes up to the sentry next to him; in this mode they will alternately relieve each other. Sentries will also patrole to their front to a distance of twenty or thirty yards.

When sentries hear people approaching them by night they must challenge them, order them to halt, and allow only one person to advance until they are satisfied they are friends. By day sentries must not allow more than one stranger at a time to approach their posts on any pretence.

10. *Line of Sentries.*—In selecting the line for the chain of sentries, care must be taken not to extend it too much,—to post the men in the most advantageous situations for observing the roads and country in front, and to keep them as much concealed from the view of the enemy as the nature of their duty will admit. It is very desirable that every elevated spot, which overlooks the communications in the rear, shall be taken within the chain of sentries; but if this cannot be effected without extending the sentries too far, a party must be sent to occupy the height during the day, and care must be taken to support and ensure

the retreat of this party if attacked. Sentries must be so placed, moreover, as to secure one another from being cut off, and at such distances as to prevent any enemy from passing unperceived between them during the night. Sentries should never be posted near any copse or cover from which a sudden rush might be made upon them; but all woods, ravines, &c., in the neighbourhood of the post, must be watched, and occasionally visited by patroles, to prevent the enemy from assembling a body of troops, unobserved, in the vicinity.

11. *Flanks to be protected.*—The flanks of a line of piquet sentries should be thrown a little back, and if not protected by the nature of the country, a detached party under the command of an officer should be posted in the most favourable position to prevent the flank from being turned.

12. *Connecting Sentries.*—Communication should be kept up by means of single sentries, between the front line of sentries and the supports, also between the supports and the reserve.

13. *Officers to examine Ground.*—Officers going out on piquet duty must examine all the country over which they pass on their way from the camp, and select favourable positions for disputing the ground in case they are driven in by the enemy.

14. *Posting a Company on Piquet.*—When an officer in charge of a company sent on piquet duty arrives on the position he is to occupy, he will first look to the immediate safety of his own party, and place sentries on its flanks and front; he will then send a file to the most elevated spot in the vicinity to get a good view of the surrounding country, and proceed himself with a patrole to examine all objects near him capable of concealing an enemy. Having thus secured himself from surprise, he will proceed to throw out

y if attacked. Sentries must be so
secure one another from being cut
ces as to prevent any enemy from
between them during the night.
be posted near any copse or cover
ush might be made upon them; but
, in the neighbourhood of the post,
occasionally visited by patroles, to
m assembling a body of troops, un-
y.

rotected.—The flanks of a line of
be thrown a little back, and if not
rc of the country, a detached party
f an officer should be posted in the
on to prevent the flank from being

ries.—Communication should be kept
e sentries, between the front line of
orts, also between the supports and

ine Ground.—Officers going out on
nine all the country over which they
om the camp, and select favourable
g the ground in case they are driven

any on Piquet.—When an officer in
sent on piquet duty arrives on the
y, he will first look to the immediate
y, and place sentries on its flanks and
nd a file to the most elevated spot in
ood view of the surrounding country,
with a patrole to examine all objects
concealing an enemy. Having thus
urprise, he will proceed to throw out

his chain of sentries, and communicate with the parties on his right and left.

15. *When Piquets are attacked.*—When piquets are attacked, the same rule will be observed as in all other skirmishing, and the detached officers' parties will not run in on the main body, but support the skirmishers; and when compelled to retire, they will, if possible, retreat on the flank of the main body, and thereby afford mutual support to each other. When a sentry is satisfied that the enemy is moving on to the attack, he should not hesitate to fire at once, although the enemy may be far beyond the range of his musket.

16. *An Officer to strengthen his Post.*—An officer ought to strengthen his post when practicable, by constructing abattis, breastworks, &c.; where the defence of a bridge or ford is intrusted to him, he ought never to omit throwing up something of the kind to protect his men, and impede the advance of the enemy. An officer ought not, however, without permission, to block up a main road with other materials than such as are easily removed.

17. *A Piquet must not shut itself up without Orders.*—A piquet ought not to shut itself up in a house, or an enclosure, with the intention of defending itself to the last extremity, unless particularly ordered to do so, or that circumstances may render it necessary at the moment, for the preservation of the party, in the expectation of support.

18. *Under what Circumstances a Piquet should retire.*—A piquet may with safety defend its front as long as its flanks are not attacked; but as soon as the enemy attempts to surround the post, the piquet must begin to retire.

19. *Flags of Truce.*—On the approach of a flag of truce, one sentry will advance and halt it at such distance as will prevent any of the party who compose it from overlooking the piquet posts. The other sentry will acquaint the officer commanding the piquet of the circumstance, who will,

according to his instructions, either detain the flag of truce at the outpost, until he has reported to the field officer of the day, or he will forward the party blindfolded to the camp, under an escort. If the flag of truce is merely the bearer of a letter or parcel, the piquet officer must receive it, and instantly forward it to head-quarters. After having given a receipt, the flag of truce will be required forthwith to depart, and none of the piquet must be suffered to hold any conversation with this party.

20. *Precautions to be taken when Fires are allowed.*—When a piquet is permitted to have a fire, it should always be as much as possible concealed from observation; and the alarm post of the piquet, in the event of an attack at night, should invariably be fixed at a short distance in the rear of the fire, so as to prevent the piquet from being seen, when drawn up, and to compel the enemy to expose himself while passing the fire should he advance.

21. *Advanced Piquets to be under Arms an Hour before Daylight.*—Piquets will get under arms in the morning an hour before daylight; and if everything appears quiet in front, the officer will, as soon as he can discern objects distinctly, proceed to occupy the same posts that he held the day before; but he must previously send forward patroles to feel his way, and should any change be remarked in the enemy's posts or position, he will report it immediately to the field officer of the day.

22. *When advanced Piquets should be relieved.*—As attacks are most commonly made about daybreak, a desirable accession of force will be always obtained by relieving the piquets at that hour.

23. *Arrival of the Relief.*—When the new piquet has arrived, the officer commanding it will accompany the officer of the old piquet along the chain of posts, and this officer will point out the situation and strength of all the enemy's

uctions, either detain the flag of truce
ne has reported to the field officer of
Forward the party blindfolded to the
t. If the flag of truce is merely the
parcel, the piquet officer must receive
rd it to head-quarters. After having
ag of truce will be required forthwith
f the piquet must be suffered to hold
this party.

be taken when Fires are allowed.—
nitted to have a fire, it should always
e concealed from observation; and the
et, in the event of an attack at night,
ixed at a short distance in the rear of
nt the piquet from being seen, when
pel the enemy to expose himself while
l he advance.

ts to be under Arms an Hour before
ll get under arms in the morning an
and if everything appears quiet in
as soon as he can discern objects
occupy the same posts that he held the
ust previously send forward patroles
ould any change be remarked in the
ion, he will report it immediately to
day.

l Piquets should be relieved.—As
monly made about daybreak, a de-
ce will be always obtained by relieving
ir.

Relief.—When the new piquet has
manding it will accompany the officer
g the chain of posts, and this officer
ation and strength of all the enemy's

posts, and afford every other information to the relieving officer in his power.

24. *Duty of the Officer of the old Piquet.*—When the sentries are relieved, and the weather is sufficiently clear to ascertain that there is no indication of an attack, the officer who has been relieved will forward a written report to the field officer of the day, fall back upon the reserve piquet, and march to camp in the same order as when he advanced; but if the advanced piquets should be attacked before he arrives in camp, he will consider it his duty to face about instantly and march to their support.

25. *Patrolling.*—One of the most necessary and effectual methods of preventing surprise and of gaining information remains to be noticed, viz., patrolling, without which, however active and alert the sentries, the service of the outpost never can be properly performed. The mode of conducting these patroles, their strength, and the distance to which they may be sent, are all necessarily dependent on the ever-varying local circumstances in which piquets may be placed; but it may be laid down as a good general rule, that, when near the enemy, a patrole should be sent out once between every relief during the night.

26. *Vigilance, Silence, and Circumspection indispensable in patrolling.*—Vigilance, silence, and circumspection must be strictly enjoined upon all patroles: no noise must on any account be made, and when anything is to be communicated, it should be done in a whisper.

It is not possible to lay down exact rules for conducting patroles in every case that may occur on service, but one or two of the most usual modes of carrying on this important duty may be briefly adverted to.

27. *Patrolling in front of the Line of Sentries.*—The patrole on leaving the piquet, should, when practicable,

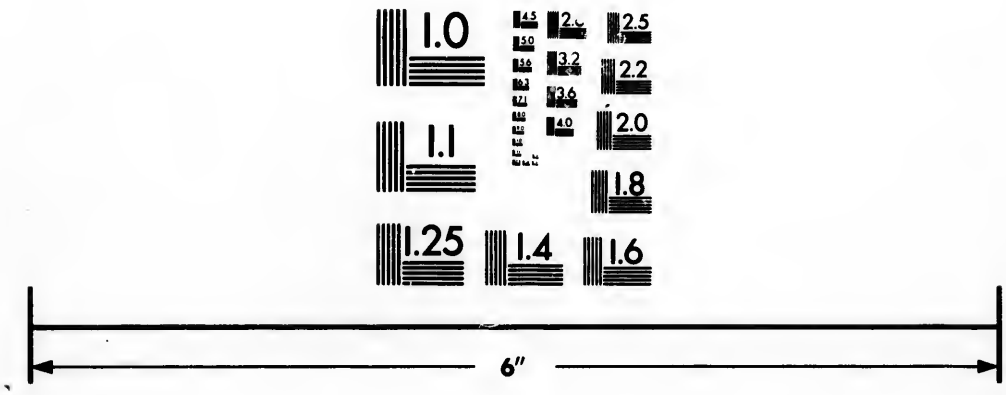
communicate in the first instance with the next post upon the right (or left), and patrole cautiously along the whole front of the line of sentries, just near enough to see them, and communicating with the next post upon the left (or right) return again to the piquet by the rear of the chain. The sentries must not be thrown off their guard by the frequent appearance of these patroles, but be taught to expect an enemy in all who approach them: some preconcerted signal, or interchange of countersign in a low tone, should be used, and which should be changed at every relief.

28. *Patrolling when the Enemy's Posts are distant.*—Patroles must also be sent along the roads in the direction of the enemy's posts, to such distance as may be deemed expedient. These patroles must be preceded by feelers, quick intelligent men selected for that duty, whom no sound will escape, and whose experienced ears will detect the approach of danger long before it reaches them. A patrole must above all things avoid unnecessary firing, or, in other words, false alarms: on hearing the approach of footsteps the feelers should instantly fall back to the patrole; and should the sounds indicate the advance of a larger body than a patrole, one or two men should be sent back with all haste to inform the officer of the piquet, who will make immediate preparations for defence. The patrole will retire steadily and unobserved, if possible, upon the piquet; but if perceived and overtaken by the enemy, an incessant fire must be maintained, in order to apprise the camp that the enemy is coming on in force. Although it may safely be inferred, that if the piquets know their duty, and are judiciously drawn up for the defence of the roads, it will be extremely difficult for an enemy, however strong, having failed in his plan for taking the advanced posts by surprise, to make head, under all the disadvantages of a night attack, against men who know the ground, and whose

rst instance with the next post upon
l patrole cautiously along the whole
ntries, just near enough to see them,
with the next post upon the left (or
the piquet by the rear of the chain.
t be thrown off their guard by the
of these patroles, but be taught to
all who approach them: some pre-
nterchange of countersign in a low
, and which should be changed at

the Enemy's Posts are distant.—
sent along the roads in the direction
to such distance as may be deemed
roles must be preceded by feelers,
elected for that duty, whom no sound
se experienced ears will detect the
ng before it reaches them. A patrole
avoid unnecessary firing, or, in other
n hearing the approach of footsteps
antly fall back to the patrole; and
licate the advance of a larger body
two men should be sent back with
officer of the piquet, who will make
for defence. The patrole will retire
l, if possible, upon the piquet; but
ken by the enemy, an incessant fire
order to apprise the camp that the
force. Although it may safely be
piquets know their duty, and are
or the defence of the roads, it will
r an enemy, however strong, having
king the advanced posts by surprise,
all the disadvantages of a night
ho know the ground, and whose

IMAGE EVALUATION
TEST TARGET (MT-3)



Photographic
Sciences
Corporation

23 WEST MAIN STREET
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580
(716) 872-4503

plans have been previously concerted for disputing those points in their line of retreat, and where the disparity of numbers must, in the dark, be in a great measure neutralized.

29. *Patroles to avoid exchanging Shots with the Enemy.*—In falling in with an enemy's patrole in advance of the chain of sentries, it will always be most prudent to retire at once without exchanging shots, which can only tend to harass and disturb the troops in their rear.

30. *A strong Patrole to be sent out just before Day-light.*—A strong patrole will always he sent some distance on towards the enemy's posts just before day-light, and this patrole, above all others, must proceed with redoubled caution, for fear of falling in with the enemy's columns, waiting for day-light to attack.

31. *The principal Object of Piquets in case of Attack.*—In the event of an attack, the commander of a piquet must ever bear in mind that the great object of his efforts is to gain sufficient time to enable the main body in his rear to get under arms and prepare for action. The points he is to dispute in falling back having been previously selected, few cases can occur in which it will be impossible to attain that end, without endangering the safety of his piquet; but even in an extreme case, he must remember that it is his duty to sacrifice himself, rather than be driven in upon the main body, before it has had time to form.

32. *Outlying Piquets pay no Compliments.*—Outlying piquets pay no compliments, but when approached by a general officer, the field officer of the day, or by any armed party, they will fall in and stand to their arms.

Sentries on out-post duty pay no compliments.

PART VI.

FORMATIONS AND MOVEMENTS OF THE BRIGADE OR LINE.

GENERAL PRINCIPLES.

I.

Application of Battalion Movements.—A battalion may be considered to hold in a brigade or line the relative situation of a company in a battalion; consequently the principles laid down in Part IV. for the evolutions of the battalion, will apply in a great measure to the movements of a brigade. In the following Sections such general principles and movements only will be described as have not been provided for in Part IV.

II.

Divisions of an Army.—1. Great bodies of troops are formed into one or more lines, and are divided into right and left wings, or into corps d'armée, each wing or corps d'armée is divided into divisions, each division into brigades, and each brigade is composed of two, three, or more battalions.

2. When a body of troops is formed with a view to attacking or resisting an enemy, a portion of it should always be kept in reserve. The reserve may be concentrated in one place, or divided, as circumstances may require. Troops in reserve should generally remain in column, as in that formation they can readily be moved to any point where their services are required. Reserves should, as far as practicable,

ART VI.

ND MOVEMENTS OF THE GADE OR LINE.

RAL PRINCIPLES.

I.

alion Movements.—A battalion may be a brigade or line the relative situation attalion; consequently the principles . for the evolutions of the battalion, easure to the movements of a brigade. ons such general principles and move- scribed as have not been provided for

II.

my.—1. Great bodies of troops are ore lines, and are divided into right corps d'armée, each wing or corps to divisions, each division into bri- le is composed of two, three, or more

f troops is formed with a view to n enemy, a portion of it should always e reserve may be concentrated in one cumstances may require. Troops in y remain in column, as in that for- be moved to any point where their Reserves should, as far as practicable,

be kept under cover and protected from the enemy's artillery.

III.

Formation in Line.—Battalions in line will be drawn up at the distance of six paces from each other. No increased distance should be allowed between brigades or divisions unless specially ordered.

IV.

Columns in Line.—Columns in line with intervals of six paces between them are called contiguous columns. This is the least distance at which columns should be formed. The intervals between columns in line may vary from six paces to deploying distance, according to circumstances and at the discretion of the commander.

V.

Formation of Open Column.—When divisions or brigades are formed in open column of route or manœuvre, the distances between battalions must be equal to the breadth of the leading company of the column and six paces; thus, should the battalions wheel into line, the interval of six paces will be preserved between them.

VI.

Mass of Columns.—When a brigade is formed in mass of close or quarter distance columns, the intervals between battalions will be six paces.

VII.

Points of Formation.—1. In brigade movements the positions and evolutions of each battalion will have reference to those of other battalions in the brigade.

2. To enable the battalions of a brigade to dress correctly on the same general alignment, points will be employed in the following manner:—

3. When forming or deploying into a line of contiguous columns, the coverers and supernumerary serjeants of the leading companies of battalions will mark the alignment, giving their points at arm's length in front of the line on which the companies are to dress, as directed in Part IV., General Principle V. The coverers will mark the outer flanks of the leading companies of their respective battalions; the supernumerary serjeant of the leading company of the battalion of formation will mark the point of appui; the supernumerary serjeants of the leading companies of the remaining battalions will mark the inner flanks of their respective companies, each preserving the interval of six paces from the outer flank of the battalion next to him towards the point of appui.

In wheeling from mass into line of columns, the pivot men and the coverers of the leading companies of battalions, placed as described in Part IV., Section 16, will be a sufficient guide to preserve the alignment.

In the above formations the brigade-major will, as usual, dress the points and pivots from the point of appui.

4. In the formation of a mass of columns, the leaders of companies will preserve the line of covering, the brigade-major correcting their covering from the point of appui. When the formation is on a central or rear battalion or company of the mass, the leaders in front of the point of appui will face about to cover, and will come to the front again on the brigade-major's word *Steady*, which may be given to each battalion in succession. The men should not be ordered to dress until the leaders of companies have completed their covering.

5. In all deployments or formations into line, or into line of columns at deploying distance, the general alignment will be preserved by mounted officers. The brigade point of appui will be marked by a major of the battalion of

deploying into a line of contiguous
and supernumerary serjeants of the
battalions will mark the alignment,
arm's length in front of the line on
re to dress, as directed in Part IV.,
The coverers will mark the outer
npanies of their respective battalions;
jeant of the leading company of the
will mark the point of appui; the
ts of the leading companies of the
will mark the inner flanks of their
each preserving the interval of six
flank of the battalion next to him
ppui.

nass into line of columns, the pivot
f the leading companies of battalions,
Part IV., Section 16, will be a suffi-
the alignment.

ions the brigade-major will, as usual,
vots from the point of appui.

of a mass of columns, the leaders of
ve the line of covering, the brigade-
covering from the point of appui.
is on a central or rear battalion or
the leaders in front of the point of
to cover, and will come to the front
major's word *Steady*, which may be
in succession. The men should not
ntil the leaders of companies have
ng.

ts or formations into line, or into line
ng distance, the general alignment
mounted officers. The brigade point
ed by a major of the battalion of

formation. When the formation is on the right flank of the base battalion, the senior major will mark the point of appui, when on the left flank, the junior major will mark that point; in both cases the adjutant will mark the distant flank. When the formation is on the centre, or on a central company of the base battalion, the senior major will mark the point of appui, the junior major the left flank, and the adjutant the right flank; in each case the adjutants of the remaining battalions of the brigade will mark the outer flanks of their respective corps. No mounted points will be required on their inner flanks, the supernumerary serjeant of the company on that flank of each battalion which is nearest to the base battalion, preserving the usual interval of six paces from the outer flank of the battalion next to him towards the point of appui.

6. When a battalion, not being the battalion of formation, moves up, either in single or double column, to a central point of the alignment on which it is required to deploy or form line, as represented by the centre battalion in Plate LX., the central base points (h, h, h,) of the battalion will be dressed by the major (l), assisted by the serjeant-major (m), on the points (e, d, or n, n, n,) of the battalion of formation; but the remaining battalion points (o, o, o,) will cover on the centre of their own battalion, as usual. The adjutant (f) will mark the outward flank, dressing on the brigade point of appui, but no other mounted point will be necessary.

7. When battalions form line or deploy in succession, they will complete their formation or deployment, each battalion in succession preserving the interval of six paces from the outer flank of the previously formed battalion, although the adjutants may not have taken correct distance; the majors will, however, dress all the coverers from adjutant to adjutant, in the same manner as a captain in the deploy-

ment of a battalion dresses all the men from coverer to coverer, whether they belong to his company or not. When battalions deploy simultaneously, and the space they have to occupy is consequently limited, as would be the case were a line of battalion columns formed at deploying distance required to deploy, they must not go beyond their outward points; if the distances are not sufficient, the companies or parts of companies for which there is no room must be formed in rear of the line, where they will be directed to order arms and stand at ease until space is made for them by order of the general commanding the troops.

8. The foregoing rules will apply equally to a division or any large body of troops. Only one base battalion, and consequently only one general point of appui, will be necessary in a line composed of any number of brigades, which may be prolonged to any extent by the adjutants, who will mark the outer flanks of their respective battalions. A brigade-major, when no general distant point has been given, may always use the two outward coverers of the brigade next to his own towards the point of appui, to assist him in dressing his own mounted points, but he should first ascertain, by looking back over their heads towards the general point of appui, that they are correctly covered in the alignment.

9. When taking up an alignment for a large body of troops, the assistant adjutant-general of the base division will mark the point of appui, and the assistant quartermasters-general will mark the distant points for their respective divisions, the adjutant-general dressing them from the point of appui. When the troops approach the alignment, the brigade-majors will move up with their foot or mounted points to take up the ground for their respective brigades, under the superintendence of their assistant adjutants-general. The assistant quartermasters-general, when they

dresses all the men from coverer to
belong to his company or not. When
ultaneously, and the space they have
iently limited, as would be the case
on columns formed at deploying dis-
ploy, they must not go beyond their
the distances are not sufficient, the
of companies for which there is no
in rear of the line, where they will be
s and stand at ease until space is made
the general commanding the troops.

ules will apply equally to a division or
roops. Only one base battalion, and
e general point of appui, will be neces-
ed of any number of brigades, which
o any extent by the adjutants, whic
flanks of their respective battalions.
en no general distant point has been
ise the two outward coverers of the
own towards the point of appui, to
ng his own mounted points, but he
n, by looking back over their heads
point of appui, that they are correctly
ent.

p an alignment for a large body of
adjutant-general of the base division
f appui, and the assistant quartermas-
the distant points for their respective
-general dressing them from the point
troops approach the alignment, the
move up with their foot or mounted
ground for their respective brigades,
ndence of their assistant adjutants
nt quartermasters-general, when they

are dressed, may be replaced by mounted orderlies if it is considered more convenient.

10. When a brigade-major is required to take up ground at a distance, for his brigade, and is not informed on which flank he will have to form, he may be obliged to take two or more majors of the brigade as well as the adjutants with him, in case he should be required to give the point of appui.

11. It may also be necessary in some cases to send on mounted points to take up ground for a brigade in contiguous columns. In this case one major and one adjutant will usually be enough to mark the flanks of the brigade, and they will be relieved at once when the coverers and supernumeraries move up.

12. Any mounted officers who are not required to mark points should be sent back by the brigade-major to their battalions.

13. The dressing of points in an alignment will be much facilitated by selecting some clearly defined distant point, such as a house or a windmill, in its prolongation, which may be used by the assistant adjutants-general or brigade-majors as the outer point on which they may dress their intermediate points.

14. Points will be given as directed in Part IV., General Principle V. When a mounted officer accompanying a movement leads a column or preserves deploying distance from it, while it is on the march, he will keep his own face in line with the leading rank of the column. In brigade movements, mounted officers giving points must not fall back to their posts until dismissed by signal from the brigade-major.

VIII.

Commands.—1. Cautions given by the general to a brigade or division in line, in line of columns at deploying

distance, or in echellon, will be passed by all the mounted officers; but when a caution is given to a brigade or division in line of contiguous columns, or in mass, it will be repeated only by the commanders of battalions. In order that words of command may be circulated with precision and rapidity, the eye and attention of each battalion leader must be constantly directed to the commanding general, or to the regulating battalion when he cannot be heard. Officers must take care properly to understand an order before passing it.

2. On the caution from the general of the division or brigade all interior movements of battalions will be made, so that the whole may be ready to step off at the executive command, which each battalion, on all occasions, will receive from its own leader.

3. To enable the commanders of battalions to give their executive words of command simultaneously, the general should give some signal by gesture, such as holding up his sword, or by bugle sound, on which the commanders will give their executive words; or he may order the commanders to take time from the battalion of direction.

4. The cautions of the general commanding the division or brigade must be expressed in terms which cannot be mistaken by the soldiers for battalion words of command.

5. When the progress of an order from battalion to battalion is interrupted by any cause, such as wind or the noise of fire-arms, the commanders will conform as quickly as possible to the movement they see executed by the battalion of direction.

6. Generals will also make use of their staff officers to convey orders to distant battalions; the advance or halt may be communicated to large bodies of troops by sound of bugle when considered necessary.

on, will be passed by all the mounted
aution is given to a brigade or division
columns, or in mass, it will be re-
commanders of battalions. In order
and may be circulated with precision
and attention of each battalion leader
irected to the commanding general, or
alion when he cannot be heard. Officers
perly to understand an order before

from the general of the division or
movements of battalions will be made,
y be ready to step off at the executive
battalion, on all occasions, will receive

ommanders of battalions to give their
command simultaneously, the general
nal by gesture, such as holding up his
ound, on which the commanders will
ords; or he may order the commanders
battalion of direction.

the general commanding the division
pressed in terms which cannot be mis-
for battalion words of command.

gress of an order from battalion to
ed by any cause, such as wind or the
e commanders will conform as quickly
vement they see executed by the bat-

so make use of their staff officers to
tant battalions; the advance or halt
d to large bodies of troops by sound of
d necessary.

IX.

Echellon Formations.—1. Echellon formations and movements are conducted in a line composed of a large body of troops, upon the principles laid down in Part IV. They are calculated to place a body of troops in an advantageous position to gain an enemy's flank; and sometimes they are formed with effect from the centre of a line, by refusing each wing. If an attack made by an advanced corps of a great echellon be effectual, each succeeding one moves up to improve the advantage; if it fails, the succeeding bodies are in a situation to protect the retreat; and in gradually retiring upon each other, they afford mutual aid and support.

2. A direct echellon, composed of a large body of troops, is formed by the successive advance of brigades or battalions from either flank, or from the centre of a line, or by columns placed in echellon parallel to the enemy's position; and in both cases, the distance of at least half their front will be preserved between the several parts of the echellon, in order to give sufficient room for the mutual protection of flanking squares, when such formation is required.

3. A line is thrown into oblique echellon for the purpose of gaining ground to a flank; in large bodies of troops the oblique echellon should be composed of companies (vide S. 53, Part IV.), as deviating least from the line formation, which can at any moment be resumed by halting and wheeling the companies back upon their pivots, (vide S. 54, Part IV.) These echellons at a distance have the appearance of a complete line; by this means a flank movement may be made almost imperceptibly to an enemy.

4. When the object is to gain an enemy's flank, the whole line will be thrown into echellon towards that flank of the enemy which it is intended to attack or turn; care being taken in such advances that the outer flanks of the echellon are protected from the enfilade of the enemy.

When it is necessary to refuse a flank attacked by an enemy, the line will be partially thrown into echellon from that flank direct to the rear; but when the enemy's attack is repulsed, a counter attack may be made upon him with advantage, by an advance in echelon from the other flank.

5. When the flank of a line is refused in this manner by a partial retreat in echellon of battalions, the flank that remains halted should (if possible) be posted upon a strong position, from which the fire of artillery could enfilade the advancing enemy.

6. In an open country, where the enemy is in a position whence he can observe their intention, echellon movements to attack or gain a flank are attended with difficulty and risk; advantage must therefore be taken of any objects, or ground, that may afford the means of partial concealment.

7. Wings of battalions, companies, or parts of companies in echellon will move by their directing flanks, as explained in Part IV.; columns in echellon will also move by their flanks on similar principles; but battalions in line moving in echellon of battalions will march by their centres, the leading battalion of the echellon being invariably the battalion of direction.

8. Oblique and direct echellons may be formed of quarter distance columns. Direct echellons, whether of lines or columns, may be composed of small or large bodies moving in concert, according to circumstances and the object contemplated; the chief precaution to be observed, is that the different parts of the echellon are never so far separated as to prevent their mutually supporting each other.

9. It may be assumed as a principle, that great echellon movements, preparatory to action, and previous to coming under the fire of artillery, will be made in quarter-distance columns; and that echellon movements of the line, when under fire, will be made either in oblique echellon of companies, or in direct echellon of battalions or larger bodies.

o refuse a flank attacked by an enemy,
y thrown into echellon from that flank
; when the enemy's attack is repulsed,
be made upon him with advantage, by
from the other flank.
of a line is refused in this manner by
chellon of battalions, the flank that
(if possible) be posted upon a strong
he fire of artillery could enfilade the

try, where the enemy is in a position
their intention, echellon movements
ank are attended with difficulty and
therefore be taken of any objects, or
d the means of partial concealment.
ons, companies, or parts of companies
y their directing flanks, as explained
in echellon will also move by their
iples; but battalions in line moving
ns will march by their centres, the
e echellon being invariably the bat-

t echellons may be formed of quarter
irect echellons, whether of lines or
sed of small or large bodies moving
circumstances and the object con-
recaution to be observed, is that the
echellon are never so far separated as
ly supporting each other.
l as a principle, that great echellon
to action, and previous to coming
ry, will be made in quarter-distance
ellon movements of the line, when
either in oblique echellon of com-
llon of battalions or larger bodies.

10. The attacks of armies are generally conducted on the principles of the echellon. There are few situations where the whole could act at the same time, or where it would be desirable or prudent that they should do so.

X.

Advance and Retreat of alternate Bodies. — 1. The advance and retreat of alternate bodies are performed in a line composed of a large body of troops, either by brigades, battalions, or half battalions, according to the principle laid down for the battalion in Part IV., S. 8.

When the retreat is by battalions or brigades, the distance they retire alternately beyond each other must depend on circumstances, but in order to afford mutual protection and support, and to ensure a continued and steady resistance to the enemy, it should rarely exceed two hundred yards. In retiring, one body will protect the retreat of another; and when the enemy presses hard, the retreating or rear line will turn to the front and form in the intervals of the first; the whole being supported by the reserve.

2. The intervals left in the front line by the bodies which have retreated will be occupied by light infantry. Each part of the line will move by a directing battalion, or half battalion, and any faults in either part of the line when halted should be corrected before the other part reaches it. The retiring part of the line will march direct upon the intervals between the battalions or half battalions in its rear, and when it has passed them it will move by its directing body.

XI.

Inversion of the Order of a Brigade or Division. — Great celerity may frequently be given to the movements of extensive bodies by battalions changing front individually on their own ground, so as to invert the order of a brigade or division. This inversion can never be attended with any

embarrassment or confusion, as the order in which the battalions of a brigade are arranged is a matter of no importance. A change of front to the rear can by this means be accomplished in a line of contiguous columns, by the countermarch of each battalion on its own ground.

XII.

Movements to be covered by Light Infantry.—All movements in line and changes of front or position in presence of an enemy should be protected by light infantry; the distance between the line and the skirmishers must depend on the nature of the ground and the character of the movement. When a line is advancing, and still far distant from the enemy, the skirmishers should be at a considerable distance in front, with supports and reserves; as the line approaches the enemy, the distance of the skirmishers must be reduced and the line itself will be a sufficient reserve, the skirmishers and supports only remaining in front. When near the enemy, skirmishers may occasionally be used with advantage close in front of the line, without supports; they may be directed to lie down while the battalions fire over them, and then to run on to cover the further advance, or run to the rear through the intervals between battalions.

XIII.

Bayonets to be fixed.—The rule laid down in Part IV., General Principle VIII., applies equally to the brigade or line, but large bodies of troops in reserve may, at the discretion of the general commanding, be ordered to unfix bayonets.

N.B. In this part the words of command to be given by the general of the brigade or division are printed in capitals, those to be given by the commanders of battalions in italics.

onfusion, as the order in which the bat-
are arranged is a matter of no impor-
f front to the rear can by this means be
ne of contiguous columns, by the coun-
ttalion on its own ground.

XII.

covered by Light Infantry.—All move-
hanges of front or position in presence
be protected by light infantry; the dis-
ne and the skirmishers must depend on
ound and the character of the movement
ancing, and still far distant from the
ers should be at a considerable distance
rts and reserves; as the line approaches
nce of the skirmishers must be reduced
ll be a sufficient reserve, the skirmishers
remaining in front. When near the
may occasionally be used with advantage
e line, without supports; they may be
while the battalions fire over them, and
cover the further advance, or run to the
ervals between battalions.

XIII.

xed.—The rule laid down in Part IV.
III., applies equally to the brigade or
dies of troops in reserve may, at the
eneral commanding, be ordered to unfix

; the words of command to be given by
rigade or division are printed in capitals
the commanders of battalions in italics

PLATE LVI.

Fig. 1.—A MASS OF BATTALION COLUMNS AT QUARTER DISTANCE WHEELING BY BATTALIONS INTO A LINE OF CONTIGUOUS COLUMNS.

Fig. 2.—A MASS OF BATTALION COLUMNS DEPLOYING INTO LINE UPON A CENTRAL BATTALION.

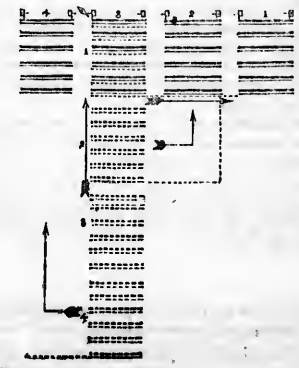
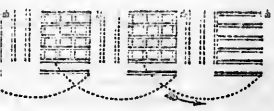
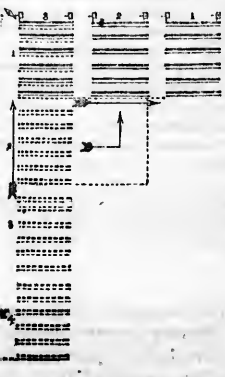


PLATE LVI.

TTALION COLUMNS AT QUARTER DISTANCE
ATTALIONS INTO A LINE OF CONTIGUOUS



BATTALION COLUMNS DEPLOYING INTO
PON A CENTRAL BATTALION.



Brigade Movements of contiguous Columns and Columns in Mass.

S. 1. *A Brigade in Mass of Columns at Close or Quarter Distance, wheeling into a Line of Columns.*—Plate LVI., Fig. 1.

THE BRIGADE WILL WHEEL INTO LINE OF CONTIGUOUS COLUMNS.—*Battalion Left* (or *Right*) *Wheel. Quick-March.*

The caution from the brigadier will be repeated by the battalion commanders, after which they will give their battalion cautions, on which the pivot man of the leading company of each column will face, and the coverer will mark the outer flank, as directed in Part IV., Section 16, the brigade major (*b*) dressing the line of pivots and coverers from the flank of the rear battalion of the column. The brigadier will then give his signal, and each commander of a battalion will wheel his column as directed in Part IV., Section 16.

After wheeling into line of columns, the battalions may, if required, be ordered to close to six paces' interval on any named battalion; in this case the coverers and supernumerary serjeants of the leading companies of columns will mark the front of their battalions, facing towards the point of appui, which will be on the pivot flank of the leading company of the battalion on which they close.

S. 2. *A Brigade in Line of contiguous Close or Quarter Distance Columns wheeling into Mass.*

A line of contiguous close columns, whose depth does not exceed their breadth of front, can always be wheeled

into mass, each battalion moving as directed in Part IV., Section 16.

A line of contiguous quarter-distance columns, or of contiguous close columns whose depth exceeds their breadth of front, ought never to be wheeled by battalions into mass of columns, as it is evident that the distances from pivot to pivot would not be sufficient for both the depth of the columns and the intervals of six paces, even were it sufficient for the former.

When it is necessary, therefore, to wheel contiguous columns at quarter distance, or contiguous close columns whose depth exceeds their breadth of front, into mass, it can only be done by opening them out to a distance sufficient to admit of the wheel, allowing also for the intervals of six paces between battalions.

When it is intended to move the column as soon as it is in mass, it will not be necessary to dress the pivots, the captains will gain their covering on the march.

But if it is necessary to dress the pivots accurately, the captains will be covered from the front by the brigade-major assisted by the commanders of battalions or the majors, the men standing fast. When the captains are correctly covered, on the word *Dress* from the battalion commanders, the men will close to and dress on them.

S. 3. A Brigade in Mass of Battalion Columns at Close or Quarter Distance deploying into Line of contiguous Battalion Columns.

THE BRIGADE WILL DEPLOY INTO LINE OF CONTIGUOUS COLUMNS ON

1. *If on the front Battalion.*—On the caution being repeated by the battalion commanders, the coverer and supernumerary serjeant of the leading company of the named battalion will give base points at arm's length from the front

alion moving as directed in Part IV.,

us quarter-distance columns, or of con-
s whose depth exceeds their breadth of
he wheeled by battalions into mass of
lent that the distances from pivot to
sufficient for both the depth of the
ervals of six paces, even were it suffi-

ssary, therefore, to wheel contiguous
distance, or contiguous close columns
s their breadth of front, into mass, it
by opening them out to a distance
the wheel, allowing also for the inter-
veen battalions.
d to move the column as soon as it is
be necessary to dress the pivots, the
ir covering on the march.
ary to dress the pivots accurately, the
ered from the front by the brigade-
ie commanders of battalions or the
anding fast. When the captains are
the word *Dress* from the battalion
will close to and dress on them.

Mass of Battalion Columns at Close or
e deploying into Line of contiguous
s.

1. *If on the front Battalion.*—On the
ution being repeated by the battalion
mmanders, the coverer and supernu-
erary serjeant of the leading company
the named battalion will give base
ints at arm's length from the front

THE LEADING BATTALION. *Form Fours—Right* (or *Left*).

Quick—March.

Front—Turn.
Halt.

of their column, being dressed by the brigade-major. The battalions, except the battalion of formation, will receive the commands, *Form Fours — Right* (or *Left*), from their respective leaders.

On the signal from the brigadier, the battalions in fours will receive the words *Quick-March*, from their commanders, and will deploy in the same manner as the companies of a battalion (see Part IV., Section 38), each column being halted, and dressed if necessary, at arm's length from the coverer and supernumerary serjeant of its leading company, who will mark its front, covering on the base points, the brigade-major correcting their covering from the point of appui.

In this movement, as soon as the second battalion from the front receives the word *Front—Turn*, the remainder will move across by the diagonal march. As each battalion receives the word *Front—Turn*, the lieutenants will move up on the reverse flanks of their companies to lead them, the lieutenant of the first company marching on the supernumerary serjeant, who will be marking the inner flank of the column, the other lieutenants retaining the relative positions held by the reverse flanks of their companies when correctly dressed by the pivot flank in column; thus the captains of each battalion will be found to cover when the line of contiguous columns is completed.

THE BRIGADE WILL DEPLOY INTO LINE OF CONTIGUOUS

2. *If on the rear Battalion.*—On the caution being repeated by the battalion commanders, the coverer and supernumerary serjeant of the leading company, of the named battalion, will move up to the front of the mass, and give a base for their column at arm's length from

COLUMNS ON THE REAR BATTALION.

the leading company of the leading battalion, being dressed by the brigade-major. The battalions, except the battalion of formation, will receive the words *Form Fours—Right* (or *Left*), from their respective commanders.

Quick—March.

On the signal from the brigadier, commanders will give the words *Quick-March*, and the battalions will deploy in the same manner as the companies of a battalion (see Part IV., Section 39), the coverers and supernumerary serjeants of the leading companies of battalions giving points for their columns to dress upon, covering upon the base points, the brigade-major correcting their covering from the point of appui.

3. *If on a central Battalion.*—The coverer and supernumerary serjeant of the leading company of the named battalion will give a base at arm's length from the front of the mass, facing inwards. The coverers and supernumerary serjeants of the leading companies of the remaining battalions will give points as described in Nos. 1 and 2 of this Section, (see Plate LVI., Fig. 2,) and the deployment will be performed as described in Nos. 1 and 2 of this Section. See Part IV., Section 40.

S. 4. *A Brigade in Line of contiguous Battalion Columns at Close or Quarter Distance forming Mass upon any named Battalion.*

FORM MASS IN REAR OF THE RIGHT BATTALION.

Right about—Face.

1. *If in rear of the Right Battalion.*—The caution from the brigadier having been repeated, the battalions, except the battalion of formation, will be faced to the right about by their commanders.

e leading company of the leading ttalion, being dressed by the brigade-ajor. The battalions, except the batta-on of formation, will receive the words *orm Fours—Right* (or *Left*), from their spective commanders.

On the signal from the brigadier, mmanders will give the words *Quick-arch*, and the battalions will deploy in e same manner as the companies of a ttalion (see Part IV., Section 39), the verers and supernumerary serjeants of e leading companies of battalions ving points for their columns to dress non, covering upon the base points, the igade-major correcting their covering om the point of appui.

i Battalion.—The coverer and super-f the leading company of the named base at arm's length from the front inwards. The coverers and supernu-he leading companies of the remaining points as described in Nos. 1 and 2 Plate LVI., Fig. 2,) and the deployment described in Nos. 1 and 2 of this Section. n 40.

Line of contiguous Battalion Columns at er Distance forming Mass upon any

1. *If in rear of the Right Battalion.*—e caution from the brigadier having en repeated, the battalions, except the ttalion of formation, will be faced to e right about by their commanders.

By the—Left, Quick—March.

Form Fours—Left, Halt—Front, Dress.

On the signal from the brigadier, the commanders will give the words *Quick—March*, and as the proper front of each battalion column in succession gains six paces to the rear of the rear company of the battalion that stood next on its right when in line, it will receive from its commander the words *Form Fours—Left;* when its pivot flank is in rear of the pivot flank of that battalion it will be halted and fronted, all the captains being covered by the brigade-major from the head of the mass, the commander or one of the majors assisting him.

FORM MASS IN FRONT OF THE RIGHT BATTALION.

Column will Advance.

2. *If in front of the Right Battalion.*—The caution from the brigadier having been repeated, the battalions, except the battalion of formation, will receive the caution from their commanders, *Column will Advance.*

Quick—March.

Form Fours—Right.

Halt—Front, Dress.

On the signal from the brigadier, the commanders will give the words *Quick—March*, and as the rear of each battalion column in succession gains six paces to the front of the leading company of the battalion which stood next on its right when in line, it will receive the words *Form Fours—Right* from its commander; when its pivot flank is in front of the pivot flank of the rear battalion, it will be halted and fronted, all the captains being covered by the brigade-major from the rear of the mass, the commanders or majors of battalions assisting him.

A brigade in line of contiguous columns will form mass on the left battalion in the same manner as on the right.

FORM MASS RIGHT (or LEFT) IN FRONT ON THE —BATTALION.

3. *If upon a central Battalion.*—The named battalion (*a*, Plate LVII.) will stand fast, and the remaining battalions will form in front and rear of it, as described in the foregoing numbers of this Section, the captains being covered by the brigade-major from the centre of the named battalion.

The captain of the leading company of each battalion which forms in rear of another will be responsible for the six paces distance from such other battalion; and the captain of the rear company of each battalion which forms in front of another, will be responsible for that distance.

The order in which the battalions of a brigade are arranged in mass does not in any way affect their pivot flanks; thus, although the battalion which stood on the left of the brigade when in line of contiguous columns, may be formed in front of the mass, as in No. 2 of this Section, if each battalion is right in front the left will be the pivot flank of the whole mass.

When a line of contiguous columns thus forms mass, the battalions need only move perpendicularly, until clear of the columns on the right or left, when each commander will cut off the right angle by the diagonal march.

S. 5. A Brigade in Line of contiguous Close, or Quarter Distance, Columns changing Front.—Plate LVIII.

1. *If with Columns whose Depth exceeds their Breadth of Front.*—On the caution the commanders will place them-

f contiguous columns will form mass
n the same manner as on the right.

. *If upon a central Battalion.*—The
ied battalion (*a*, Plate LVII.) will
nd fast, and the remaining battalions
form in front and rear of it, as
cribed in the foregoing numbers of
Section, the captains being covered
the brigade-major from the centre of
named battalion.

leading company of each battalion
f another will be responsible for the
rom such other battalion; and the
npany of each battalion which forms
ll be responsible for that distance.
ch the battalions of a brigade are
es not in any way affect their pivot
h the battalion which stood on the
hen in line of contiguous columns,
ont of the mass, as in No. 2 of this
ion is right in front the left will be
whole mass.
tiguous columns thus forms mass, the
move perpendicularly, until clear of
ght or left, when each commander will
by the diagonal march.

Line of contiguous Close, or Quarter
s changing Front.—Plate LVIII.

. *If with Columns whose Depth ex-*
ds their Breadth of Front.—On the
tion the commanders will place them-

PLATE LVII.

A LINE OF CONTIGUOUS BATTALION QUARTER DISTANCE COLUMNS FORMING MASS OF COLUMNS UPON A CENTRAL BATTALION.

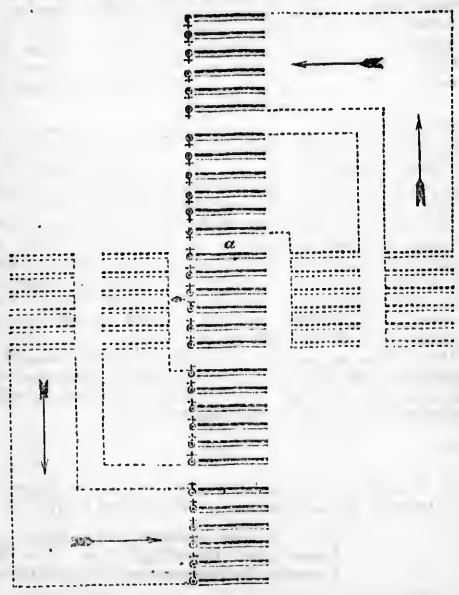
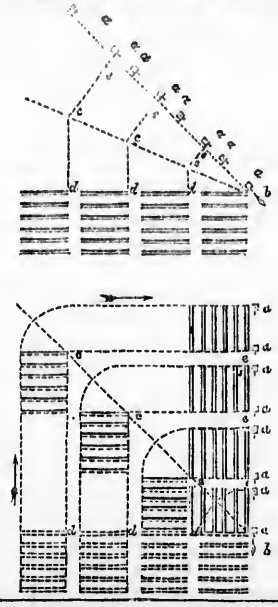


PLATE LVIII.

A LINE OF CONTIGUOUS BATTALION COLUMNS AT QUARTER DISTANCE CHANGING FRONT TO THE RIGHT FLANK.



THE BRIGADE WILL CHANGE FRONT TO THE RIGHT FLANK BY ECHELLON ON THE RIGHT BATTALION.

selves close to that flank of their leading companies which is nearest to the wheeling point, and having repeated the caution, the coverers and supernumerary serjeants will mark the ground on which the heads of their battalions are to rest in the new alignment, the brigade-major (*b*) covering them from the wheeling point.

Quick—March.

Halt.

On the signal from the brigadier, the battalions, except the inward or pivot battalion, will receive the words, *Quick—March*, on which they will move straight to their front (*d, e,*) each commander looking to the line of points, (*a, a, a,*) and giving the word *Halt* when he sees that the flank of the leading company of his battalion is in rear of his supernumerary serjeant, in a line perpendicular to the new alignment.

THE ECHELLON WILL WHEEL TO THE RIGHT AND FORM LINE ON THE RIGHT BATTALION.

Battalion Right—Wheel.

Halt.

Battalion on the move, Right—Wheel.

The brigadier will give the annexed caution, which will be followed by the cautions of the commanders of battalions. At the usual signal, the commanders will give the words *Quick — March*, on which the pivot or inward battalion will wheel into the new alignment on a halted pivot, and the remaining columns will wheel on moveable pivots. When the latter have wheeled up parallel to the new alignment they will receive the word *Forward*, and when they have moved up to the hands of the coverers and supernumerary serjeants, *Halt*. The

Forward.
Halt.

battalions will be ordered to dress, if necessary.

THE BRIGADE WILL CHANGE FRONT TO THE RIGHT (OR LEFT).
Right (or *Left*) *—Wheel.*
Quick—March.
Halt.
Quick—March.
Right (or *Left*) *—Wheel.*
Forward.
Halt.

2. *If with Columns whose Depth does not exceed their Breadth.*—The new alignment will be taken up in the manner described in No. 1 of this Section, but it will not be necessary to halt the battalions in echellon. Each column will wheel in succession as it arrives perpendicularly in rear of its supernumerary serjeant, and when its front is parallel to the new alignment it will receive the word *Forward*, and move up into line.

In these changes of front, the point at which each wheel is made must be at the intersection of two straight lines (*d*, *c*, and *e*, *c*), the one perpendicular to the old line erected at the inner flank (*d*) of the battalion, the other perpendicular to the new line erected at the point of entry (*e*), where the inner flank of the battalion will rest when the movement is completed. Thus it will be found that all the wheeling points, if the columns are correctly halted in echellon, will be situated on the same straight line drawn from the point of intersection of the old and new alignments, and bisecting the angle formed by those alignments.

In changing front at right angles, it is evident that each battalion will be formed, when in echellon, at a distance equal to its own breadth and six paces from the battalion next in front of it; and the perpendicular lines from the inner flanks of battalions, and the points of entry, will meet at right angles on the wheeling points.

3. *Changing Front on a Central Battalion.*—Supposing the change of front to be to the right on No. 3 battalion, and that the brigade is formed of four battalions, the

battalions will be ordered to dress, if necessary.

2. *If with Columns whose Depth does not exceed their Breadth.*—The new alignment will be taken up in the manner described in No. 1 of this Section, but it will not be necessary to halt the battalions in echellon. Each column will wheel in succession as it arrives perpendicularly in rear of its supernumerary serjeant, and when its front is parallel to the new alignment it will receive the word *Forward*, and move up into line.

of front, the point at which each wheel the intersection of two straight lines e perpendicular to the old line erected *d*) of the battalion, the other perpen- line erected at the point of entry (*e*), k of the battalion will rest when the ed. Thus it will be found that all the the columns are correctly halted in ated on the same straight line drawn rsection of the old and new alignments, gle formed by those alignments.

at right angles, it is evident that each med, when in echellon, at a distance dth and six paces from the battalion and the perpendicular lines from the ions, and the points of entry, will meet e wheeling points.

t on a Central Battalion.—Supposing to be to the right on No. 3 battalion, de is formed of four battalions, the

movement will be performed as follows:—The right of No. 3 will be the point of appui; that battalion and No. 4 will proceed as described in Nos. 1 or 2 of this Section. The supernumerary serjeant of the front company of No. 2 battalion will cover on the base points of No. 3 battalion, at six paces from the supernumerary serjeant, who will be marking the point of appui. No. 2 battalion will be faced about and ordered to retire until its proper front company is one pace beyond its supernumerary serjeant; it will then be directed to form four to the right; as soon as its leading flank has passed the supernumerary serjeant by an arm's length the column will be wheeled to the right, as described in Part IV., Section 17; and when square with the new alignment it will be halted and fronted, the coverer of its leading company marking the outer flank as soon as the column has wheeled clear of the alignment.

The supernumerary serjeant of the front company of No. 1 battalion will cover on the base points furnished by No. 2 battalion, at six paces from the coverer marking the outer point. No. 1 battalion will be faced about, and ordered to retire simultaneously with No. 2 battalion, and will proceed in like manner.

When the depth of the column exceeds their breadth, and the battalions thrown forward are consequently obliged to halt in echellon, those which are thrown back must not retire until the rest commence their wheel; when the depth of the columns does not exceed their breadth, and the battalion of formation is able to wheel at once, all the battalions may be put in motion at the same time. It may occasionally be necessary to order a battalion that is retiring, to mark time until the outer point of the preceding battalion is placed.

Movements in Line or Line of Columns.

S. 6. *Naming the Regulating Battalion.*

THE BRIGADE WILL ADVANCE. THE — REGIMENT WILL DIRECT.

When a brigade is required to advance or retire in line, or in line of columns, a regulating battalion, or battalion of direction will be named, to which all the rest will conform; in subsequent movements the same battalion will continue to direct, unless another is named.

S. 7. *A Brigade Advancing or Retiring in Line.*

1. When a brigade advances or retires in line, each battalion will march by its own centre, the commanders only looking to the battalion of direction. The centre serjeant of the battalion of direction will select points to march on under the guidance of the commanding officer or adjutant; these points should not be too far off, as smoke or dust might conceal them from view; the direction can be preserved to any distance by taking fresh points, when necessary, in the prolongation of the straight line passing through the original points. The direction of the regulating battalion, when it has been correctly established, should not be altered. The centre serjeants of the remaining battalions will also select points to march upon, but their direction must at once be altered if it is found not to be parallel to that of the regulating battalion; any deviation from the proper direction will be made apparent by the increase or decrease of the intervals between battalions.

2. *Marching over Heights, &c.*—When parts of a brigade in line march over heights or across valleys, they will require more time to pass them than the rest who are moving on level ground; in order to preserve a correct line, the latter should be directed to step short.

Line or Line of Columns.

ng the Regulating Battalion.

When a brigade is required to ad-
ance or retire in line, or in line of
olumns, a regulating battalion, or bat-
lion of direction will be named, to
hich all the rest will conform; in sub-
equent movements the same battalion
ill continue to direct, unless another is
amed.

Advancing or Retiring in Line.

le advances or retires in line, each
by its own centre, the commanders
battalion of direction. The centre
ion of direction will select points to
uidance of the commanding officer or
s should not be too far off, as smoke
them from view; the direction can
distance by taking fresh points, when
longation of the straight line passing
points. The direction of the regulating
been correctly established, should not
tre serjeants of the remaining batta-
points to march upon, but their direc-
altered if it is found not to be parallel
ing battalion; any deviation from the
be made apparent by the increase or
als between battalions.

Heights, &c.—When parts of a brigade
ghts or across valleys, they will require
em than the rest who are moving on
er to preserve a correct line, the latter
step short.

3. *Attention in Marching.*—Too much attention cannot be paid to procure a correct advance in line, which is the movement that immediately leads to the enemy; no hurry or doubling must be allowed; if any part of a brigade falls in rear of the battalion of direction, the latter must be ordered to step short till the rest come up in line. No brigade can advance correctly unless the direction of the regulating battalion is perpendicular to the original front. A central battalion should in general be named to direct.

4. *Correct Formation.*—No body of troops can advance in line with firmness and order unless the original formation of that line was correct.

S. 8. *A Brigade Advancing or Retiring in Line of contiguous Columns.*

1. In this movement the battalion of direction will march by its proper pivot flank; the remaining battalions will march by the flank nearest to the regulating battalion, preserving their distance from it.

2. When retiring in line of contiguous columns, the leading company of each battalion must be ordered to move in line with that of the regulating battalion, unless the brigade is only required to retire a short distance, in which case they will preserve their relative positions.

3. When ordered to halt and front, the regulating battalion will halt, front, and stand fast, throwing out base points at once. The remaining battalions will move on, turn to the front, and move up, or halt and front at once, as may be necessary to bring their proper front companies in line with the front of the battalion of direction. If the battalions have not altered their relative positions they will halt and front together.

S. 9. A Brigade Advancing or Retiring in Line of Quarter-Distance Columns at deploying Distance.

1. When a brigade advances in line of columns at deploying distance, if the columns are right in front and the right battalion is named to direct, the adjutants will accompany the movement at deploying distance from the left of their respective battalions. The battalion of direction will move perpendicularly to its front, the remaining battalions will advance, each preserving the distance of six paces from the adjutant of the battalion next on its right.

2. When the columns are right in front and the left battalion is named to direct, the adjutants will not be required to mark the distant points during the advance, but the senior majors will place themselves on the inner flanks of their leading companies, and will regulate the march of their columns so as to preserve their deploying distances and six paces from the battalions next on their left respectively.

3. When a central battalion is named to direct, the foregoing rules will equally apply to the battalions on its right and left.

4. When the columns are left in front the foregoing rules will apply, the flanks being reversed, and the junior major leading when required.

5. When a brigade is ordered to retire, similar arrangements will be made facing to the rear, the majors of the proper rear wings of battalions or the adjutants, as may be required, moving in line with the proper rear companies, and keeping their dressing on the proper rear rank of the proper rear company of the battalion of direction. On the words *Halt—Front*, or *Front—Turn*, the majors of the front wings, or the adjutants, as may be required, will move up to preserve the distances in the front alignment, all

ncing or Retiring in Line of Quarter-
lumns at deploying Distance.

advances in line of columns at de-
the columns are right in front and
named to direct, the adjutants will
ment at deploying distance from the
battalions. The battalion of direc-
ndicularly to its front, the remaining
ce, each preserving the distance of six
nt of the battalion next on its right.

nns are right in front and the left
o direct, the adjutants will not be
e distant points during the advance,
s will place themselves on the inner
ng companies, and will regulate the
ns so as to preserve their deploying
ces from the battalions next on their

battalion is named to direct, the fore-
ly apply to the battalions on its right

ns are left in front the foregoing rules
being reversed, and the junior major
d.

is ordered to retire, similar arrange-
facing to the rear, the majors of the
battalions or the adjutants, as may be
line with the proper rear companies,
essing on the proper rear rank of the
of the battalion of direction. On the
r *Front—Turn*, the majors of the front
nts, as may be required, will move
distances in the front alignment, all

dressing on the proper front company of the battalion of direction. It will usually be found convenient to name the deepest column in the brigade to direct when retreating.

S. 10. *A Brigade formed in Line of Double Columns, at deploying Distance, Advancing or Retiring.*

1. When a brigade advances in a line of double columns at deploying distance, if the right battalion is named to direct, the adjutants will accompany the movement at deploying distance from the left of their respective battalions. The battalion of direction will move perpendicularly to its front, the senior majors of the remaining battalions will lead their columns so as to preserve the deploying distances of their right wings, and six paces from the adjutants of the battalions next on their right respectively.

2. When the left battalion is named to direct, similar arrangements will be made, the adjutants moving at deploying distance from the right of their respective battalions, and the junior majors leading the columns by the left.

3. When a central battalion is named to direct, its junior major and the adjutant will both accompany the movement, the former at deploying distance from the left, the latter at deploying distance from the right; the remaining battalions will move as directed in Nos. 1 and 2 of this Section.

4. When the brigade is ordered to retire, the same arrangements will be made facing to the rear, and the points will move as directed in the preceding Section.

5. When only one major is present, the commander of the battalion must lead the column when required.

S. 11. *A Brigade in Line advancing in Open Columns from the Flanks of Battalions, or in Double Columns from the Centres of Battalions.*

THE BRIGADE WILL ADVANCE IN OPEN COLUMNS OF COMPANIES FROM THE RIGHT (or LEFT) OF BATTALIONS.

THE BRIGADE WILL ADVANCE IN DOUBLE COLUMNS OF COMPANIES (OR SUBDIVISIONS) FROM THE CENTRE OF BATTALIONS.

A brigade formed in line may advance in open columns of companies from the right (or left) of battalions, or in double columns of companies or subdivisions from the centres of battalions, the points being placed as described in the preceding Section.

For battalion movements, *see* Part IV., Sections 29 and 30.

S. 12. *A Brigade retiring in Open Columns of Companies from the one Flank of Battalions in rear of the other, or from both Flanks of Battalions in rear of their Centres.*

THE BRIGADE WILL RETIRE IN OPEN COLUMNS OF COMPANIES FROM THE RIGHT (or LEFT) IN REAR OF THE LEFT (or RIGHT) OF BATTALIONS.

In these movements the points will be placed as directed in Sections 9 and 10 of this Part, and during the retreat they will keep in line with the leading companies or subdivisions, but on the words

Line advancing in Open Columns from alions, or in Double Columns from the ons.

LL N NIES or NS.

A brigade formed in line may advance in open columns of companies from the right (or left) of battalions, or in double columns of companies or subdivisions from the centres of battalions, the points being placed as described in the preceding Section.

For battalion movements, *see* Part IV., Sections 29 and 30.

---

ring in Open Columns of Companies of Battalions in rear of the other, or f Battalions in rear of their Centres.

In these movements the points will be laced as directed in Sections 9 and 10 of his Part, and during the retreat they ill keep in line with the leading com-anies or subdivisions, but on the words

THE BRIGADE WILL RETIRE IN DOUBLE COLUMNS OF SUBDIVISIONS FROM BOTH FLANKS IN REAR OF THE CENTRES OF BATTALIONS.

Halt–Front, they will be given in the proper front alignment, and will be dressed on the front company of the battalion of direction.

Movements of a Brigade in Double Column.

S. 13. *A Brigade advancing in double Column of Companies from the Centre, or retiring by Companies from both Flanks in rear of the Centre.*

THE BRIGADE WILL ADVANCE IN DOUBLE COLUMN OF COMPANIES FROM ITS CENTRE.

1. *Advancing.*—A brigade will advance in double column of companies from the centre, in the same manner as a battalion, except that the companies when in column will march by their inner flanks, the lieutenants leading; the two centre companies of the brigade will move to the front, the remaining companies of the battalions on the right wheeling into open column, left in front, and those of the battalions on the left wheeling into open column, right in front. All the lieutenants will keep the distances of their own companies, without regard to the position of the corresponding companies in the double column, the two leading companies of which, only, are required to keep in line.

When the front of a double column is composed of the right company of one battalion and the left company of another, the interval of six paces will be preserved between the columns; when it is composed of the two centre companies of a battalion, room will be left between them for the lieutenants to move up and lead on the inner flanks; the colours will drop to the rear, and the remainder of the movement will be performed as described in Part IV. In either case the senior major of the centre or left centre battalion, or the brigade-major, will move in rear of the lieutenant who leads the column, to superintend the direction.

When the number of battalions in a brigade is even, the inner companies of the two centre battalions will be considered as the centre; when the number is uneven, the two centre companies of the centre battalion will be considered as the centre of the brigade, without reference to the strength of battalions or number of companies in them.

THE BRIGADE WILL RETIRE BY COMPANIES FROM BOTH FLANKS IN REAR OF ITS CENTRE.

2. *Retiring from both Flanks.*—A brigade in line will retire by companies from both flanks in rear of the centre, on the same principles as a battalion, except, that when in column, the companies will march by their inner flanks, the lieutenants leading. When the wings of the brigade are of unequal strength, as soon as the weaker wing is completely formed into column, the battalions composing it will be ordered by their respective commanders to mark time or halt, until the stronger wing is also in column; the weaker will then be directed to continue its retreat, the lieutenant of the leading company preserving his relative position

f a double column is composed of the
ne battalion and the left company of
of six paces will be preserved between
it is composed of the two centre com-
, room will be left between them for
ove up and lead on the inner flanks;
to the rear, and the remainder of the
rformed as described in Part IV. In
major of the centre or left centre bat-
e-major, will move in rear of the lieu-
column, to superintend the direction.

of battalions in a brigade is even, the
he two centre battalions will be con-
; when the number is uneven, the two
the centre battalion will be considered
e brigade, without reference to the
s or number of companies in them.

2. *Retiring from both Flanks.*—A
rigade in line will retire by com-
anies from both flanks in rear of the
entre, on the same principles as a bat-
lion, except, that when in column,
e companies will march by their
ner flanks, the lieutenants leading.
hen the wings of the brigade are of
nequal strength, as soon as the weaker
ng is completely formed into column,
e battalions composing it will be
dered by their respective commanders
mark time or halt, until the stronger
ng is also in column; the weaker
ll then be directed to continue its
reat, the lieutenant of the leading
mpany preserving his relative position

with the stronger wing during the march; in this manner the proper wheeling distance of companies will be kept, and the two centre companies of the brigade will always be in a line ready to form a base when the column is halted and fronted.

When retiring, the same intervals will be kept as are described in the advance of double columns; the stronger wing must of course direct.

When a brigade is advancing or retiring in double column of companies, the proper left centre battalion or wing will direct, unless especially ordered to the contrary, as will be the case in retiring, when the right wing is the stronger.

When a brigade in double column forms part of a line with other brigades, its flanks will be marked and the distances preserved by staff officers, or by the adjutants of the two outward battalions, in precisely the same manner as the deploying distances of a battalion in double column are preserved in a brigade. The major, or brigade-major superintending the direction of the column, will be responsible for the distance of the inner half of the brigade when it is not the regulating brigade.

S. 14. *A Brigade in double Column of Companies forming Line to the Front or to a Flank.*

1. *To the Front.*—Each of the single columns composing a double column may form line to the front on the leading company, by the echellon movement described in Part IV., Section 33; or the centre battalion, or battalions, only, may form by the echellon march of companies, the remainder

closing to quarter distance on their leading companies moving across to the alignment, and then deploying on their inner flanks; or, if necessary, the whole may close to double mass at quarter distance and then deploy.

THE BRIGADE WILL FORM LINE TO THE RIGHT (OR LEFT).

2. *To a Flank at Right Angles.*—A brigade in double column of companies will form line to a flank in the same manner as a battalion. If on the march it should first be halted, and as the companies will in general be of unequal strength, the captains of the inner wing of the brigade, who will be on the outer flanks of their companies, should first be covered from the front, by the brigade major previously to forming; this done the inner wing of the brigade will wheel into line, and the outer wing will form to the reverse flank, as described in Part IV., Sections 2 and 35, the adjutants as usual marking the outer flanks of battalions.

3. *To a Flank in an oblique Direction.*—If the line is to be formed in an oblique direction to the original alignment the battalions of the inner or pivot wing of the brigade will be brought up to the alignment, as described in Part IV., Section 15, No. 3, the adjutants marking the flanks farther from the centre of the brigade, after which they will be wheeled into line; the outer wing at the same time will advance, changing direction at once, and will form to the reverse flank, as described in Part IV., Section 35, No. 2.

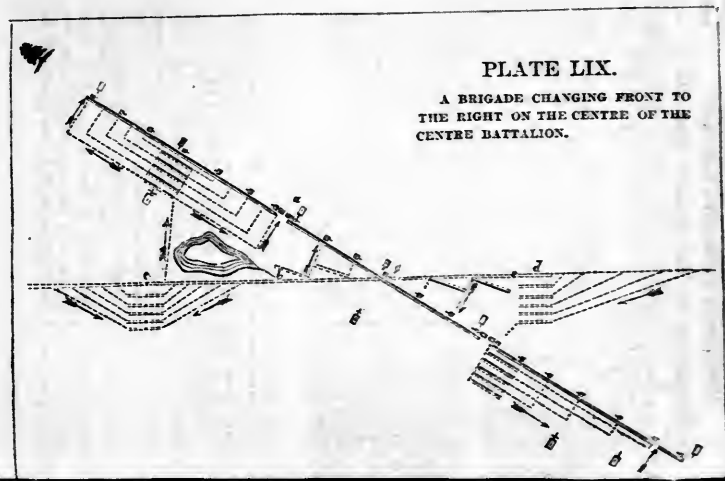
r distance on their leading companies
the alignment, and then deploying o
; or, if necessary, the whole may close t
arter distance and then deploy.

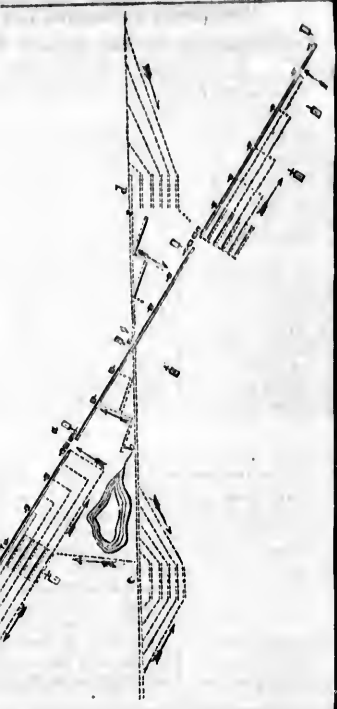
2. *To a Flank at Right Angles.*—
brigade in double column of companie
will form line to a flank in the sam
manner as a battalion. If on the marc
it should first be halted, and as th
companies will in general be of unequa
strength, the captains of the inner win
of the brigade, who will be on the out
flanks of their companies, should first b
covered from the front, by the brigad
major previously to forming; this don
the inner wing of the brigade will whe
into line, and the outer wing will for
to the reverse flank, as described i
Part IV., Sections 2 and 35, the adjutant
as usual marking the outer flanks o
battalions.

an oblique Direction.—If the line is t
blique direction to the original alignment
he inner or pivot wing of the brigade wi
the alignment, as described in Part IV
the adjutants marking the flanks farthe
of the brigade, after which they will b
; the outer wing at the same time wi
direction at once, and will form to th
escribed in Part IV., Section 35, No. 2.

PLATE LIX.

A BRIGADE CHANGING FRONT TO THE RIGHT ON THE CENTRE OF THE CENTRE BATTALION.





Advancing or Retiring in Column.

S. 15. *A Brigade advancing in open Column of Companies from either Flank, or retiring by Companies from one Flank in rear of the other.*

THE BRIGADE WILL ADVANCE IN OPEN COLUMN OF COMPANIES FROM ITS RIGHT (or LEFT).

THE BRIGADE WILL RETIRE IN OPEN COLUMN OF COMPANIES FROM ITS RIGHT (or LEFT), IN REAR OF ITS LEFT (or RIGHT).

A brigade will advance in open column of companies from either flank, or retire from one flank in rear of the other, on precisely the same principles as a battalion. When advancing, the captain of the leading company of each battalion (except the first) will be responsible for his company's wheeling distance and six paces from the battalion in front of him; when retiring, the captain of the leading company of each battalion will be responsible for the wheeling distance of the company then in front of him and six paces.

Changes of Front and Position.

S. 16. *A Brigade in Line changing Front on a named Company of a named Battalion.*—Plate LIX.

CHANGE FRONT ON N° — COMPANY OF —

1. *If all the Battalions are to move in Echellon.*—The brigadier will name the battalion and the company on which he intends the change to be made, and will point out the direction required; the base company or companies will then be wheeled into the new alignment, the base points will be

REGIMENT RIGHT (or LEFT) THROWN FORWARD, THE WHOLE IN ECHELLON. COMPANIES WILL WHEEL — PACES.

placed, and the distant point or points will be selected. The brigadier, if the remaining companies are to wheel into echellon on halted pivots, will also name the number of paces they are to wheel; the commanders will wheel their battalions into echellon of companies, and on the signal from the brigadier the new line will be formed as described in Part IV., Section 56, 57, or 58, the adjutants marking the alignment for their respective battalions.

CHANGE FRONT ON N° — COMPANY OF — REGIMENT, RIGHT (or LEFT) THROWN FORWARD.— REMAINING BATTALIONS FORM QUARTER DISTANCE COLUMN.

2. If the outward battalions are to move in quarter distance columns, the brigadier will proceed as above described, except that he need not name the number of paces to be wheeled. The battalion of formation will be wheeled into echellon (*b*, *c*,) and the remaining battalions will be formed in quarter distance columns in rear of their inner companies (*d*), or in double columns of companies or subdivisions in rear of their centres (*e*) by their respective commanders, and on the signal from the brigadier, the former will form line, and the latter will move into the new alignment and deploy, as described in Part IV.

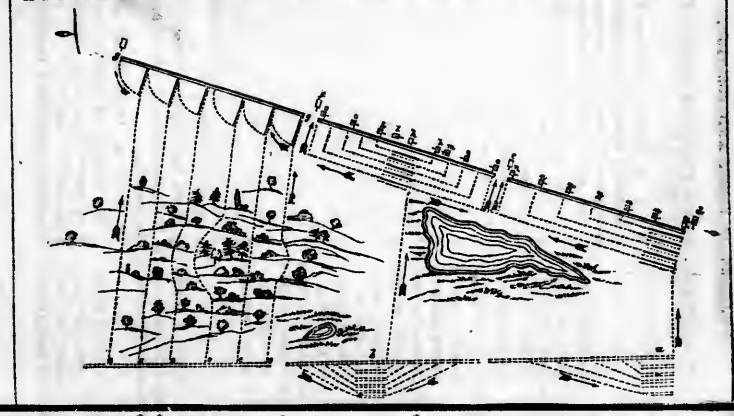
—

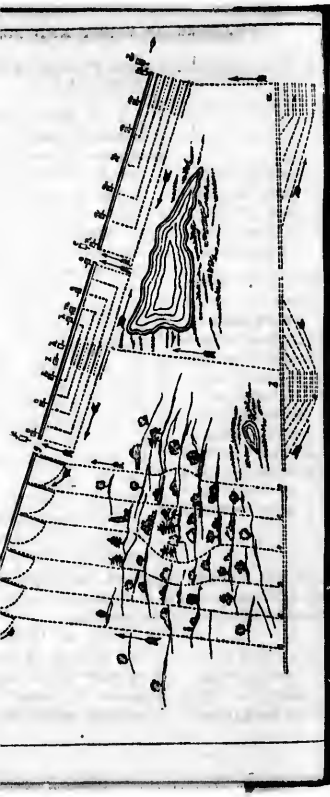
placed, and the distant point or points will be selected. The brigadier, if the remaining companies are to wheel into echellon on halted pivots, will also name the number of paces they are to wheel; the commanders will wheel their battalions into echellon of companies, and on the signal from the brigadier the new line will be formed as described in Part IV., Section 56, 57, or 58, the adjutants marking the alignment for their respective battalions.

2. If the outward battalions are to move in quarter distance columns, the brigadier will proceed as above described, except that he need not name the number of paces to be wheeled. The battalion of formation will be wheeled into echellon (*b*, *c*,) and the remaining battalions will be formed in quarter distance columns in rear of their inner companies (*d*), or in double columns of companies or subdivisions in rear of their centres (*e*) by their respective commanders, and on the signal from the brigadier, the former will form line, and the latter will move into the new alignment and deploy, as described in Part IV.

PLATE LX.

A BRIGADE MOVING INTO A POSITION OBLIQUE TO THE OLD LINE ON DETACHED POINTS.





S. 17. A Brigade changing Position on detached Points.—Plate LX.

CHANGE POSITION TO THE RIGHT (or LEFT) ON DETACHED POINTS.

BATTALIONS WILL FORM QUARTER DISTANCE COLUMNS IN REAR OF THEIR RIGHT (or LEFT) COMPANIES, OR BATTALIONS WILL FORM DOUBLE COLUMN OF SUBDIVISIONS IN REAR OF THEIR CENTRE.

1. *In Quarter Distance Column or Double Columns of Subdivision.*—The commander will give the general direction of the future position, and will signify on what battalion the new line will be formed, which in this movement will usually be a flank one. The brigade-major will place himself at the point of appui and will select a distant point, the major of the battalion of formation and the adjutants will follow to mark the alignment for their respective battalions in succession. At the same time, the whole will form columns at quarter distance on the right or left companies (*a*), or on the centre subdivisions of battalions (*b*), as may be ordered. and on the signal from the brigadier they will move by the shortest lines to their places in the new alignment, where they will deploy in succession as they arrive, or wait for the brigadier's command, as may be directed.

When thought expedient, the battallons may move off at once in open column from the flanks or centre, and close to quarter distance on the march.

CHANGE POSITION TO THE RIGHT (or LEFT) ON DETACHED

2. *By the Flank March in Fours.*—The change of position may also be effected by the flank march of companies in fours (*c, c, c*), companies moving across and forming in open

POINTS. ADVANCE IN FOURS FROM THE RIGHT (OR LEFT) OF COMPANIES.

column (*g*, *g*,) on their coverers, (who in this instance will dress with their inner arms in line with the front rank of the remaining regiments), and then wheeling into line, either by companies or battalions in succession, or by the whole brigade at the same time, as may be directed.

Each battalion in a brigade may, if necessary, be ordered to move in a different formation according to the nature of the ground, as represented in Plate LX.

DEPLOYMENTS.

S. 18. *A Brigade in Line of contiguous Columns, at Close or Quarter Distance, deploying into Line.*

THE BRIGADE WILL DEPLOY ON N° — COMPANY OF — REGIMENT.

A brigade may deploy on any named company of any named battalion. After repeating the brigade caution, the commander of the named battalion will give his battalion caution, as directed in Part IV., Section 38, 39, or 40. If the deployment is on a flank company, a major will mark the point of appui and the adjutant the distant point. If the deployment is on a central company, the junior major will mark the left of the battalion, and the adjutant the right, the senior major marking the point of appui. The companies of the battalion of formation, except the base company, and the remaining battalions, will be ordered to form fours outwards by their commanders.

Quick—March.

On the signal from the brigadier, the commanders will give the words *Quick—March*, upon which the battalion of

lumn (*g, g,*) on their coverers, (who in is instance will dress with their inner ms in line with the front rank of the maining regiments), and then wheeling to line, either by companies or battalions succession, or by the whole brigade at e same time, as may be directed.

a brigade may, if necessary, be ordered it formation according to the nature of sented in Plate LX.

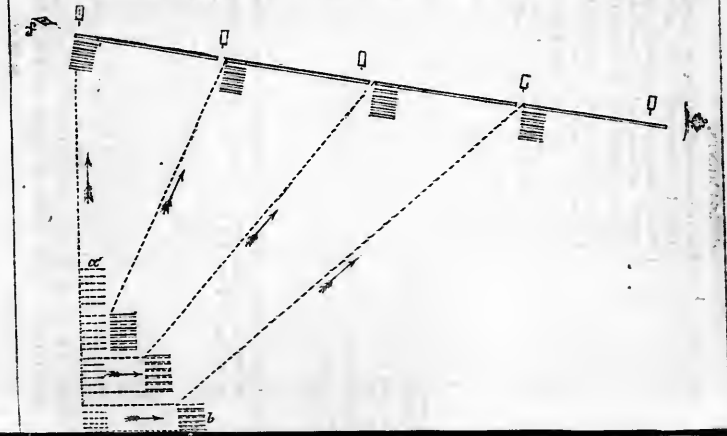
DEPLOYMENTS.

n Line of contiguous Columns, at Close Distance, deploying into Line.

A brigade may deploy on any named ompany of any named battalion. After epeating the brigade caution, the commander of the named battalion will give is battalion caution, as directed in Part V., Section 38, 39, or 40. If the deployment is on a flank company, a major vill mark the point of appui and the djutant the distant point. If the deployment is on a central company, the nnior major will mark the left of the attalion, and the adjutant the right, the enior major marking the point of appui. The companies of the battalion of formaion, except the base company, and the emaining battalions, will be ordered to orm fours outwards by their commanders.

On the signal from the brigadier, the ommanders will give the words *Quick -March*, upon which the battalion of

PLATE LXI.—A BRIGADE IN MASS OF BATTALION COLUMNS OPENING OUT TO DEPLOYING DISTANCE ON DETACHED POINTS, AND DEPLOYING INTO LINE.



formation will deploy as described in Part IV., Section 38, 39, or 40; the other battalions will move by the flank march of fours, and deploy when at the proper interval from the preceding battalion, which, as usual, will be marked by the supernumerary serjeant of the inner company. The inner flank company of each battalion will be halted and fronted by the commanding officer, the remaining companies by their leaders, as laid down in the above-named Sections.

A brigade in mass may be ordered to deploy on any named company of any named battalion without previously forming line of contiguous columns; in this movement the named battalion, if not already there, will move up at the double to the front base, and deploy as usual; the remaining battalions will move by the shortest lines to the point where their inner flanks are to rest in the line, and will then deploy in the usual manner.

S. 19. *A Brigade in Mass of Battalion Columns opening out to deploying Distance on detached Points, and deploying into Line.*—Plate LXI.

THE BRIGADE WILL DEPLOY INTO LINE OF COLUMNS AT DEPLOYING DISTANCE ON DETACHED

In this movement the leading battalion will march to its place in the new line and will at once give a base and distant point, the remaining battalions will disengage to the flank by fours, each turning to the front in succession when in direct echellon (*a*, *b*). The brigade-major (*f*) will place himself at the point of appui and will dress the

POINTS. REAR COLUMNS DISENGAGE TO THE RIGHT (OR LEFT) BY FOURS.

points of the battalion of formation in the required direction; the remaining adjutants will move out to mark the alignment for their respective battalions in the usual manner; the commanders will lead their battalions to their places in the new alignment by the shortest lines.

The battalions may be ordered to deploy into line in succession, as they come up to their places in the new alignment, or simultaneously, after the line of columns is completed.

The Flank March in Fours.

S. 20. *The General Application of the Flank March in Fours to the Advance of a Brigade.*

The principles laid down in Part IV., Section 25, may frequently be adopted with great advantage in the movements of a brigade, especially where the advance of parts of the line is likely to be interrupted by obstacles. In this movement a battalion of direction must be named as usual, and a company of that battalion will also be named, by which the rest will march. The battalion least likely to be interrupted by obstacles should be selected to direct. If a single battalion in the brigade has to close to quarter or close distance, its full distance in the line must be kept by its mounted officers, in the same manner as in line of columns at deploying distance. The direction of the advance may be changed, by altering the direction of the regulating company, the remaining companies and battalions conforming. During this movement the companies may at any moment form to the front into line, or battalions may form square on their flank or centre companies.

---

points of the battalion of formation in the required direction; the remaining adjutants will move out to mark the alignment for their respective battalions in the usual manner; the commanders will lead their battalions to their places in the new alignment by the shortest lines.

nay be ordered to deploy into line in come up to their places in the new align- ously, after the line of columns is com-

---

FLANK MARCH IN FOURS.

ral Application of the Flank March in o the Advance of a Brigade.

id down in Part IV., Section 25, may ed with great advantage in the move- especially where the advance of parts of be interrupted by obstacles. In this on of direction must be named as usual, that battalion will also be named, by march. The battalion least likely to be tacles should be selected to direct. If in the brigade has to close to quarter its full distance in the line must be ed officers, in the same manner as in deploying distance. The direction of the anged, by altering the direction of the y, the remaining companies and batta- During this movement the companies nt form to the front into line, or bat- quare on their flank or centre companies.

SQUARES.

S. 21. A Brigade forming Squares.

Brigade squares, or squares consisting of several battalions, can seldom be necessary, although they may be formed from columns on the same principle as a battalion square; if formed from double columns of companies, subdivisions will wheel outwards to form the side faces instead of sections. Battalion squares flanking each other in direct echellon afford the readiest and most efficient defence. When time will admit, the battalions of a brigade in line should be advanced in direct echellon to any required distance before forming squares.

MOVEMENTS OF DIVISIONS OR LARGER BODIES.

S. 22. Application of Brigade Drill to Divisions or large Bodies.

1. In the explanations contained in the preceding sections reference has only been made to a brigade, but the same principles are equally applicable to the manœuvres of divisions or larger bodies, which are performed simply by a succession of brigade movements.

2. Generally speaking, the orders of the general commanding a division or line will be conveyed to the brigadiers by staff officers, unless the whole body is in mass or line of contiguous columns, in which case the general may give his own words of command.

3. In all movements, a brigade must move under the direction of its own brigadier, in the same manner as a battalion moves under the direction of its own commander. When deploying from mass into line of contiguous columns, each brigade will move across in mass (as far as possible by the diagonal march) to the alignment, and will then

deploy by command of its brigadier. When a line of contiguous columns changes front, each brigade will advance to its proper distance in direct echellon of brigades, and then change front by word of command from the brigadier, the columns moving up to the general alignment in succession, or forming on the inner flank of the brigade, and then moving up into the general line, as may be ordered. In this movement distance must be shortened as much as possible by the application of the diagonal march.

SECOND LINES.

General Principles.

I.

Formation.—Second lines are usually composed of single or double quarter distance columns of battalions at deploying distance.

II.

Regulating Column.—Second lines will be directed by the column which is in rear of the battalion of direction of the first line. If that column be single and right in front, it will be in rear of the right company of that battalion, if it is a single column left in front, it will be in rear of the left company, and if it is a double column, it will be in rear of the centre of that battalion; the remaining columns of the second line will keep their deploying distances from the regulating battalion.

III.

Distance.—The distance between lines should be sufficient to prevent any liability to disorder by the unforeseen retreat of the first line; it should, in general, be equal to the front of two battalions.

IV.

Movements.—The movements of the second line must correspond with those of the first. If the first line makes a

l of its brigadier. When a line of con-
hanges front, each brigade will advance
nce in direct echellon of brigades, and
y word of command from the brigadier,
g up to the general alignment in suc-
on the inner flank of the brigade, and
to the general line, as may be ordered.
listance must be shortened as much as
lication of the diagonal march.

ECOND LINES.

ENERAL PRINCIPLES.

I.

ond lines are usually composed of single
stance columns of battalions at deploying

II.

n.—Second lines will be directed by the
rear of the battalion of direction of the
olumn be single and right in front, it will
ght company of that battalion, if it is a
in front, it will be in rear of the left
is a double column, it will be in rear of
battalion; the remaining columns of the
eep their deploying distances from the

III.

distance between lines should be suffi-
y liability to disorder by the unforeseen
line; it should, in general, be equal to
talions.

IV.

movements of the second line must
se of the first. If the first line makes a

PLATE LXII.

TWO LINES CHANGING FRONT UPON A FLANK OF THE FIRST LINE.—THE SECOND LINE IN COLUMNS OF BATTALIONS AT QUARTER DISTANCE.

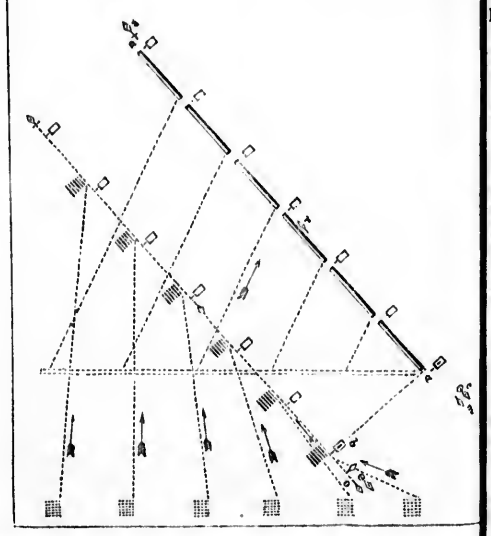
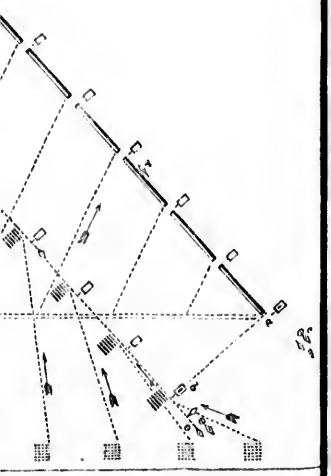


PLATE LXII.

ING FRONT UPON A FLANK OF THE FIRST
COND LINE IN COLUMNS OF BATTALIONS
ISTANCE.



change of front, the second line must make a corresponding change and form parallel to it, on a point placed perpendicularly in rear of the point of appui of the first line.

V.

Relieving Front Line.—When the second line is required to relieve the first, it will be deployed, and the movement performed as described in Part IV., Section 10.

MOVEMENTS.

S. 23. Two Lines changing Front on the Flank of the First Line.—Plate LXII.

CHANGE FRONT UPON THE RIGHT FLANK OF THE FIRST LINE, LEFT THROWN FORWARD.

The first line will change its front to the given direction (*a*, *a*), as directed in Section 16 of this Part; a point (*b*) will then be placed by a staff officer at the required distance, in a line perpendicular to the flank of the first line. A point (*o*) of direction may also be given if required on the prolongation of the line passing through the point (*b*) parallel to the front line, or a distant point may be selected on which to dress the line.

THE SECOND LINE WILL CHANGE POSITION ON DETACHED POINTS IN REAR OF THE FIRST LINE.

On the caution from the commander of the second line, the adjutants will move out to mark the alignment for their respective battalions. On the usual signal from the brigadiers, the battalions of the second line will be formed at deploying distance, in the new alignment, on the principles already described.

S. 24. Two Lines changing Front upon a Central Point of the First Line.—Plate LXIII.

CHANGE FRONT UPON THE CENTRE OF THE FIRST LINE, RIGHT OF LEFT THROWN BACK.	The point (*a*) in the first line on which the change is to be made having been determined, another point (*b*) will be taken at the distance required in rear of the point (*a*), in a direction perpendicular to the new front; the distant points (*o*, *o*) will also be placed or selected to mark the direction of the second line, care being taken that it is placed parallel to the first, and a point of direction may be placed if required.
THE SECOND LINE WILL CHANGE POSITION ON DETACHED POINTS IN REAR OF THE FIRST LINE.	The first line will change its front as directed in Section 16 of this Part, and the second line will form in columns at deploying distances on the central point of appui (*b*), on the principles already described, dressing on the outward points (*o*, *o*).

Position of Artillery.

S. 25. Position of a Battery of Artillery when moving with a Brigade.

The usual position of a battery of artillery, when in line, is on the right, with an interval of 22½ yards, 28½ yards, or 34½ yards, according to the number of horses in the guns, whether four, six, or eight.

When the battalions are in contiguous quarter-distance columns, the battery will be on a flank, as ordered, at

hanging Front upon a Central Point o
First Line.—Plate LXIII.

The point (*a*) in the first line on whic
he change is to be made having bee
letermined, another point (*b*) will b
aken at the distance required in rear o
he point (*a*), in a direction perpendicula
o the new front; the distant points (*o, o*
vill also be placed or selected to mark th
lirection of the second line, care being
aken that it is placed parallel to the first
nd a point of direction may be placed i
equired.

The first line will change its front a
lirected in Section 16 of this Part, an
he second line will form in columns a
leploying distances on the central poin
of appui (*b*), on the principles alread
lescribed, dressing on the outward point
o, o).

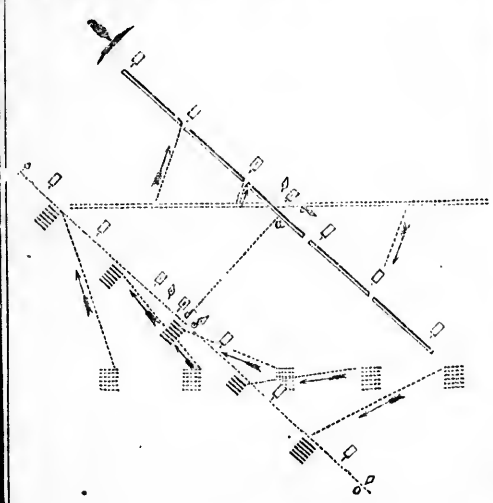
SITION OF ARTILLERY.

a Battery of Artillery when moving wit
a Brigade.

on of a battery of artillery, when in line
h an interval of 22½ yards, 28½ yards, o
g to the number of horses in the guns
or eight.
lions are in contiguous quarter-distanc
ery will be on a flank, as ordered, at

PLATE LXIII.

TWO LINES CHANGING FRONT UPON A CENTRAL POINT OF THE FIRST LINE.—THE SECOND LINE IN DOUBLE COLUMN OF SUBDIVISIONS.



distance equal to the depth of the strongest column in rear of the alignment, unless they are formed for inspection, or review, in which case they will be dressed with the leaders' heads on the alignment. In echellon the battery will be on a flank.

When squares are formed in echellon, and the battery is brought into action, the muzzles of the guns should be in line with the rear base of the rear square.

N.B.—A battery on all occasions to keep its full interval when possible.

It is the duty of the commander of the artillery to keep his battery so well in hand that he may never interfere with deployments, or other movements of the brigade; and the brigadier should impress upon the officers commanding regiments, that they should at all times give way to the guns when the latter have occasion to advance or retire through the line, by smartly wheeling back a section or company.

Should skirmishers be in front of the battery and be obliged to retire, they should only retire to the guns, and remain with them as long as they continue in action, retiring with them.

Should the battery be detached from the brigade, two companies at least should accompany it as an escort.

These remarks apply equally to horse artillery when working with cavalry.

PART VII.

MISCELLANEOUS SUBJECTS.

INSPECTIONS OR REVIEWS.

S. 1. *Inspection or Review of a Battalion.*

Formation.—The battalion will be drawn up in line a open order as explained in Part IV., Section 4, and a cam colour will be placed at 80 or 100 paces in front of it centre.

GENERAL SALUTE. PRESENT—ARMS.

1. *Receiving the General.*—When th reviewing general arrives in front of th centre of the battalion, at a distance o about 50 or 60 paces, he will be re ceived with a salute, the men presentin arms, the officers saluting, the colour flying, the band playing, and the drum beating.

ROYAL SALUTE. PRESENT—ARMS.

2. To members of the Royal Family and persons entitled to that honour, th colours will be dropped.

SHOULDER—ARMS.

3. On the word ARMS, the men wil shoulder and the officers will bring thei swords to the port.

Riding down the Ranks.—The general, accompanied b the commanding officer of the regiment, will then ride dow the front of the line; commencing on the right, he wil pass round the left flank and return along the rear, the men standing with shouldered arms. While he is going round th battalion, the band will play until he returns to the right o the line, and the divisions of drums will beat the prescribed compliment as he passes them; the colours will be held steady, gathered in under the right hand, they are not to be

ART VII.

ANEOUS SUBJECTS.

ECTIONS OR REVIEWS.

tion or Review of a Battalion.

battalion will be drawn up in line a
ied in Part IV., Section 4, and a cam
d at 80 or 100 paces in front of it

1. *Receiving the General.*—When th
viewing general arrives in front of th
ntre of the battalion, at a distance o
out 50 or 60 paces, he will be re
ived with a salute, the men presenting
ms, the officers saluting, the colour
ing, the band playing, and the drum
ating.

2. To members of the Royal Family
d persons entitled to that honour, th
lours will be dropped.

3. On the word ARMS, the men wil
oulder and the officers will bring thei
ords to the port.

Ranks.—The general, accompanied b
cer of the regiment, will then ride dow
e; commencing on the right, he wil
ank and return along the rear, the men
ered arms. While he is going round th
vill play until he returns to the right o
sions of drums will beat the prescribed
asses them; the colours will be held
nder the right hand, they are not to b

allowed to fly, nor will they be dropped when the general passes.

REAR RANK TAKE CLOSE —ORDER. MARCH.

Taking Close Order.—The battalion will take close order while the general is proceeding to the camp colour, placed in front of the centre of the line.

OPEN COLUMN RIGHT IN FRONT, RIGHT ABOUT—FACE, RIGHT—WHEEL QUICK —MARCH. *Halt—Front, Dress.*

Wheeling into Open Column.—The battalion will break into open column of companies right in front, and the pioneers, band, and drums will move to the head of the column, the pioneers forming in a single rank in front, the band forming in two ranks next, and the drums in two ranks in rear of them; this is an exception to the general rule laid down in Part IV., Section 1.

SLOPE ARMS.

The men will slope arms.

Points for Marching past.—Four points will be placed by the adjutant to mark the ground, as described in Part II., Section 13, one point at about the wheeling distance of a company in front of the column, one at two or three paces in rear of the column, the two points marking the saluting base will be covered in a line four paces from the camp colour, at which the general will usually place himself to receive the officers' salutes, and see the companies march past.

Marching past in Slow Time.

1. On the word MARCH, the column will step off and march past, each company moving as directed in Part II., Section 13.

2. When marching past the reviewing general, the colonel will be about eight paces in front of the right centre section of the leading company, the senior major in front of the left centre section, a little in rear of the colonel; the re-

maining field officers will follow in rear of the column at six paces distance, the lieutenant-colonel on the right, the junior major next, and the adjutant on the left. When the colonel is absent, the lieutenant-colonel will take his place, the other mounted officers remaining in the places above-named. All the mounted officers will salute as they approach the general. The commanding officer, after he has saluted, will move out and place himself near the general, and remain there till the column has passed.

3. The band will commence playing as soon as the leading company has completed its second wheel. When it arrives in front of the general it will turn to the left, wheel to the right, and halt and front opposite to him, continuing to play until the rear of the column has passed.

4. The colours, carried by the two senior ensigns, will be placed as described in Part IV., Section 1, and will change flank during the second wheel. When the right centre company takes open order, they will dress with the supernumerary rank at three paces from the rear rank. The colours will be cast loose when passing the general, and will be lowered to persons entitled to that honour.

The staff officers, excepting the adjutant, do not march past, but the musketry instructor will march past with the company to which he belongs.

The quartermaster-serjeant, the schoolmaster, the hospital serjeant, the armourer-serjeant, the orderly-room clerk, and the paymaster's clerk will not be required to march past.

Marching past in Quick Time.—1. The commanding officer will order the column to break into quick time, as directed in Part II., Section 13. On the word *Forward, by the Right,* on entering the saluting alignment, the rear and supernumerary ranks will lock up, the former stepping out three paces, the latter six. Both ranks will regain their usual distances by stepping short on the word *Forward, by the Left,*

follow in rear of the column at
lieutenant-colonel on the right
the adjutant on the left. When
lieutenant-colonel will take his
officers remaining in the places
ounted officers will salute as they
he commanding officer, after he
out and place himself near the
till the column has passed.
nce playing as soon as the leading
s second wheel. When it arrives
will turn to the left, wheel to the
opposite to him, continuing to
olumn has passed.
y the two senior ensigns, will be
t IV., Section 1, and will change
wheel. When the right centre
, they will dress with the super-
paces from the rear rank. The
hen passing the general, and will
led to that honour.
ing the adjutant, do not march
tructor will march past with the
ga.
nt, the schoolmaster, the hospital
ant, the orderly-room clerk, and
not be required to march past.

---

ime.—1. The commanding officer
eak into quick time, as directed
the word *Forward, by the Right,*
lignment, the rear and supernu-
, the former stepping out three
h ranks will regain their usual
on the word *Forward, by the Left,*

after the third wheel. When marching past in quick time, one of the officers will salute, unless the battalion has not previously marched past in slow time, in which case, the mounted officers alone will salute. The colours will not be cast loose, nor will they be lowered.

BATTALION—HALT. LEFT WHEEL INTO—LINE, QUICK-MARCH. *Halt—Dress. Eyes—Front.*

2. When the battalion arrives on its original ground, it will be halted and wheeled into line.

A battalion halted in open column may be ordered to march past in quick time, without having previously marched past in slow time, the command will then be MARCH PAST IN QUICK TIME, QUICK—MARCH.

ORDER—ARMS. UNFIX—BAYONETS. STAND-AT-EASE. MANUAL AND PLATOON EXERCISE, TAKING THE WORD FROM THE SENIOR MAJOR.

1. *Manual and Platoon Exercise.*—After having directed the men to order arms and unfix bayonets, the commanding officer will give the annexed caution, and then proceed to the rear of the line, the senior major moving out to the front to take command.

ATTENTION. SHOULDER—ARMS. FOR MANUAL EXERCISE, REAR RANK TAKE OPEN—ORDER, MARCH

2. The senior major will order the men to take out their stoppers; he will then call the battalion to attention, give the words SHOULDER—ARMS, and proceed to open the ranks as follows:—On the word ORDER, the captains will face to the right, the subaltern officers remaining steady in their places; on the word MARCH, the rear and supernumerary

ranks will step back as usual, and the captains will move to six paces in rear of the centre of their companies.

3. The coverers and pivot men will move as in taking open order for the general salute.

4. The junior major and adjutant, the colours (which will be kept at the order and furled), and the pioneers, band and drums will remain, throughout the manual and platoon exercises, posted as in close order.

5. The major will put the battalion through the manual exercise, direct the rear rank to take close order (the captains remaining in rear), and will then proceed with the platoon exercise in slow and quick time, as directed in Part III. Section 8. After which, having directed the men to replace their stoppers, unless they are going to load, he will fall back to his place in the line, the captains resuming their posts at the same time. The commanding officer will then take the orders of the reviewing general regarding the remainder of the inspection.

Advancing in Review Order.—At the end of the review if required to do so by the general, the battalion will be formed in line at open order, on its original position, and on the command, THE LINE WILL ADVANCE IN REVIEW ORDER, SLOW-MARCH, it will advance, the band and drums playing, till within 30 or 40 paces of the reviewing general when it will be halted and ordered to salute, in the same manner as when receiving the general, after which it will shoulder arms and wait for orders.

S. 2. Review of Two or more Battalions.

When two or more battalions are inspected together, they will either be formed in line with intervals of six paces between them and proceed in the same manner as a sing

will step back as usual, and th
ns will move to six paces in rear o
ntre of their companies.

pivot men will move as in takin
al salute.

d adjutant, the colours (which wi
d furled), and the pioneers, band
hroughout the manual and platoo
ose order.

the battalion through the manua
nk to take close order (the captain
will then proceed with the platoo
uick time, as directed in Part III.
having directed the men to replac
ey are going to load, he will fa
line, the captains reassuming thei
The commanding officer will the
eviewing general regarding the re
n.

Order.—At the end of the review
the general, the battalion will b
order, on its original position, an
LINE WILL ADVANCE IN REVIEW
t will advance, the band and drum
40 paces of the reviewing genera
nd ordered to salute, in the sam
ng the general, after which it wi
or orders.

Two or more Battalions.

talions are inspected together, the
line with intervals of six pace
ed in the same manner as a sing

battalion, observing the additional directions that are given with respect to regiments in brigade, or be formed, should the reviewing general think proper, in a line of columns.

In this section the commands are printed as in Part VI.

1. *Formation in Columns.*—The troops will be formed in a line of contiguous battalion columns at quarter distance.

OFFICERS AND COLOURS WILL TAKE POST IN REVIEW ORDER. *Officers and Colours to the Front. Quick—March.*

2. On the word *Front*, from their commanders, the officers of each battalion will recover their swords, and on the word *March* they will move up to the front, and place themselves two paces in front of the column, the colours being in the centre, and the officers sized from flanks to centre, and at equal distances from each other, the adjutant on their left.

3. The commanding officer will be three paces in front of the colours, the remaining field officers two paces in front of the line of officers, dividing the distances between the commanding officer and the flanks; the paymaster, surgeons, and quartermaster will be in rear of the battalion, the staff serjeants in rear of them.

4. The general officer commanding will be stationed in front of the centre of the line, the generals of divisions in front of the centre of their divisions, and the brigadiers in front of the centre of their brigade; their distances from the line will depend on the strength of the body of troops, and will be determined by the general commanding.

5. The band and drums will move up and form in several ranks on the right of battalions, their front being in line with the leading company.

6. The pioneers will be in two ranks in rear of the drums.

7. The reviewing general will be saluted without opening ranks, the men presenting arms, the officers saluting, the colours flying or being lowered, according to regulation, and

the bands playing. After the salute the troops will be ordered to shoulder arms, and the general will go down the line.

OFFICERS AND COLOURS WILL TAKE POST WITH THEIR BATTALIONS. *Officers and Colours take Post. Quick—March.*

8. On the command *Officers and Colours take Post*, the officers of each battalion will face outwards from the centre, the ensigns carrying the colours facing to the left; and on the words *Quick—March*, the whole will move back to their places in column, the bands, drums, and pioneers taking post in rear.

9. When the bands of a brigade have been practised together, they should form as one band thirty paces in rear of the centre of the line, the pioneers of the brigade ten paces in their front, and before marching past, they should both move to the head of the leading column.

10. When troops are drawn up in line for inspection or review, after the salute has been paid to the reviewing officer, the generals of divisions, brigadiers, and officers commanding battalions, will post themselves upon that flank of their divisions, brigades, or battalions to which he repairs, where they will receive him and will accompany him to the extent of their respective commands, after which they will resume their original posts.

When troops are reviewed in line of contiguous columns, the generals of divisions and the brigadiers only will accompany the reviewing general to the extent of their respective commands, the commanding officers of battalions remaining at their posts.

---

1. *Marching past in Columns.*—Points will be placed by a staff officer in the same manner as they are placed for a single battalion.

e salute the troops will be ordered
eneral will go down the line.

he command *Officers and Colours*
, the officers of each battalion
outwards from the centre, the
carrying the colours facing to
and on the words *Quick—March*,
will move back to their places
n, the bands, drums, and pio-
ing post in rear.

a brigade have been practised
as one band thirty paces in rear
the pioneers of the brigade ter
fore marching past, they should
ie leading column.

rawn up in line for inspection
has been paid to the reviewing
ons, brigadiers, and officers com-
ost themselves upon that flank
or battalions to which he repairs
and will accompany him to the
commands, after which they will

d in line of contiguous columns
l the brigadiers only will accom-
to the extent of their respective
g officers of battalions remaining

umns.—Points will be placed by
nanner as they are placed for

TAKE GROUND TO THE RIGHT IN FOURS. *Form Fours—Right. Quick—March.*

2. On the caution from the general, TAKE GROUND TO THE RIGHT IN FOURS, the commanders will order their battalions to form fours to the right, and on his signal they will give the words *Quick—March.*

3. Each battalion in succession, when it has cleared the first point, will receive the words *Front—Turn*, from its commander, and at every succeeding angle will wheel to the left in double time, receiving the words *Forward—Quick* when square, an interval of twenty-five paces being preserved between the columns. It may sometimes be necessary to continue at the double for a short distance after the word *Forward*, to prevent crowding or to correct distances. The officers should be ordered to change their ranks before commencing the wheel which brings them into the saluting base, and will return to their former places after the following wheel, on the words *Forward—Quick by the Left.*

4. The battalion having wheeled into the saluting base, and taken up the quick time, will come to the shoulder by word of command. Each column, when it has passed the general, will be ordered to slope arms. Troops armed with the short rifle will march past in quarter-distance column, with trailed arms.

5. When marching past in quarter-distance column, the mounted officers only will salute; and each general of a division, or the brigadier, if a single brigade is being reviewed, will move out after he has saluted and place himself near the reviewing general whilst his column is passing.

6. After marching past, the leading column will be halted on the original alignment, and the remaining columns will close upon it to six paces' interval; the general will then order the mass to wheel into line of columns, and proceed with his intended movements; or the columns may be

wheeled into line in succession as they arrive at their place in the alignment.

Marching past in Open Column.—After each column has wheeled into the saluting base, in quarter distance, it may be halted and ordered to open from the front and march past in open column.

Marching Past in "Grand Divisions."—Battalions may march past in columns of double companies, which will be called "Grand Divisions;" they will be formed as follows: the left companies will move up on the left of the right companies, that is, No. 2 on the left of No. 1, No. 4 on the left of No. 3, and so on, the captains will be posted on the outward flanks of their companies; the grand divisions will march past by the right at company distance from each other. This is an exceptional formation, only to be used in marching past; the ordinary column will be re-formed before the manœuvres commence.

Advancing in Review Order.—At the end of the review, if required to do so by the reviewing general, the columns will be formed on their original ground in review order, the officers and colours in front, as described in the first part of this section; they will then advance in slow time, the bands and drums playing, and when at a convenient distance from the reviewing general, which must vary according to the extent of the line, they will be halted and ordered to salute as described in paragraph 7 of the first part of this section, after which they will be ordered to shoulder arms and will proceed as directed by the general.

THE FOLLOWING IS THE ORDER OF MARCH TO BE OBSERVED AT REVIEWS PERFORMED BEFORE THE SOVEREIGN; AND IS ALSO TO BE OBSERVED, IN AS FAR AS IT IS APPLICABLE, AT ALL REVIEWS BEFORE GENERAL OFFICERS.

1. Detachment of life guards, or other cavalry, preceded by an officer of the quartermaster-general's department.

ssion as they arrive at their place

Column.—After each column ha
base, in quarter distance, it ma
open from the front and marc

and Divisions."—Battalions ma
double companies, which will b
' they will be formed as follows
ove up on the left of the righ
on the left of No. 1, No. 4 on th
he captains will be posted on th
mpanies; the grand divisions wil
at company distance from each
ional formation, only to be used
rdinary column will be re-forme
mence.

der.—At the end of the review, i
reviewing general, the column
ginal ground in review order, th
t, as described in the first part o
advance in slow time, the band
hen at a convenient distance from
ich must vary according to the
l be halted and ordered to salute
7 of the first part of this section,
dered to shoulder arms and wil
general.

ORDER OF MARCH TO BE OB-
ERFORMED BEFORE THE SOVE-
O BE OBSERVED, IN AS FAR AS
LL REVIEWS BEFORE GENERAL

ards, or other cavalry, preceded
master-general's department.

2. The Sovereign's led horses.
3. Aides-de-camp to the commander-in-chief.
4. Aides-de-camp to the Sovereign.
5. Deputy adjutant-general, deputy quartermaster-general, and equerries in waiting to the Sovereign.
6. Adjutant-general, military secretary to the commander-in-chief, quartermaster-general.
7. Commander-in-chief.
8. Princes of the blood.
9. The SOVEREIGN.
10. Gold stick in waiting, and master of the horse, if present.
11. Foreign general officers, general officers and colonels on the staff in successive order, according to rank and seniority, followed by such other general officers, not upon the staff, as may be present, and equerries and attendants upon the foreign princes.
12. Assistant adjutant-general, assistant quartermaster-general, and deputy assistants.
13. Aides-de-camp and majors of brigade to general officers on the staff.
14. Royal carriages.
15. Detachments of cavalry.

ROUTE MARCHING.

S. 3. *The Order of March.*

1. The success of military operations depends in a great measure upon the compact and well-regulated order of march observed by an army in its several parts or columns.

2. Troops may march, either in open columns of companies, subdivisions, or sections, in quarter-distance columns formed in mass or line, or in fours, according to circumstances and the nature of the country.

3. The rear companies, subdivisions, or sections of a ba talion or more considerable column, will follow every tur which the head may make, each successively changing i direction at the same point as the leading company, or pa of a company, without word of command.

4. Troops marching on a road will keep to the side ne to the reverse flank, in order that the pivots may be ke clear, and that staff officers may be able to pass backwar and forwards to circulate orders.

5. In route marching, the baggage should be in the rea No impediments whatever should be permitted in the li of march, except the artillery, which will generally be forme between the divisions, or brigades of an army. When th admission of a portion of the baggage of an army in the line of march becomes unavoidable, it should be place between the brigades, but never between the battalions of brigade.

S. 4. Places of Officers.

1. All officers are to remain constantly in their plac during the march, unless required to move as stated paragraph 5.

2. The majors, when marching at ease, are to march rear of their respective wings; namely, the first major rear of the right, and the second major in rear of the le wing; if there is only one major, his post is in the rear the battalion.

3. The captains, or officers commanding companies, whe marching at ease, are to march in rear of their companie a subaltern officer or serjeant moving up to lead.

4. Commanding officers of corps, assisted by their adj tants, will move from one part to another as occasi

, subdivisions, or sections of a ba
ble column, will follow every tur
ke, each successively changing i
nt as the leading company, or pa
ord of command.

n a road will keep to the side ne
order that the pivots may be ke
cers may be able to pass backward
e orders.

the baggage should be in the rea
er should be permitted in the li
llery, which will generally be forme
r brigades of an army. When th
of the baggage of an army in
es unavoidable, it should be place
it never between the battalions of

Places of Officers.

remain constantly in their plac
ess required to move as stated i

marching at ease, are to march
wings; namely, the first major
ne second major in rear of the le
ne major, his post is in the rear

ficers commanding companies, whe
march in rear of their companie
jcant moving up to lead.

ers of corps, assisted by their adj
one part to another as occasio

requires their presence, for the preservation of order, and particularly for the prevention of unnecessary defiling.

5. In like manner, the majors and commanding officers of companies will quit their habitual stations when their presence is required in any other part of their wings or companies, but will return to them as soon as the purpose for which they quitted them shall be effected.

S. 5. Marching off, Marching at Ease, and passing Words of Command.

1. On all occasions, when marching out of camp or quarters, or when moving after a regular halt upon the march, each corps will march off by word of command, and with music, unless particularly ordered to the contrary.

2. The men must be perfectly silent, dress, and keep the step, as if moving on parade, until the word MARCH AT EASE, is given by the commanding officer of the regiment, and repeated by the captains.

3. All words of command addressed to men marching at ease must be preceded by the word *Attention*, upon which, the men will slope their arms, if armed with the long rifle, or trail if armed with the short rifle, and take up the step; perfect order and silence being resumed, until the word is again given to march at ease.

4. The words ATTENTION and MARCH AT EASE, coming from the commanding officer of the battalion, unless they are given as a command to the whole of the battalion, will be repeated by all the captains, who must speak loud enough to be heard distinctly, at least by the captains next to them in column, as they will have to take the command from each other in succession.

5. When marching at ease, the ranks may be opened and the files loosened; but each rank, section, or company must

be kept perfectly distinct, and every man must remain in his place.

6. When either of the majors or officers commanding companies want to pass any notice to the commanding officer of the battalion or to any other company or section, the word must be passed by the officers, or officers and serjeants only.

S. 6. Halting when on the March.

1. Whenever the bugles sound the halt, the head of each battalion will halt and stand fast, although it may not be closed up to the preceding one, but the following companies of each battalion must close up to half or quarter distance, unless the column is entering an alignment, or making any other movement preparatory to a formation to a flank.

2. When it is intended that the whole column should close up, the head will be halted without sound of bugle, and the word of command, QUARTER, HALF, or WHEELING DISTANCE, will be passed from front to rear; and when the rear is closed up, the bugle of the rear battalion will sound the halt as a notice.

3. When at the end of a march it happens that a line is to be taken up by a successive formation, each company may slope arms as soon as it is halted, by word of command from its own officer; but the companies should not order arms, or stand at ease, until they are directed to do so by the commanding officer of the battalion, which will not be done until the whole is formed.

S. 7. Defiling, and increasing and diminishing Front.

1. No battalion, company, or section is, at any time, to defile or diminish its front, or attempt in any way to avoid

, and every man must remain

majors or officers commanding
any notice to the commanding
o any other company or section,
by the officers, or officers and

when on the March.

sound the halt, the head of each
nd fast, although it may not be
one, but the following companies
se up to half or quarter distance,
ng an alignment, or making any
y to a formation to a flank.
that the whole column should
halted without sound of bugle,
QUARTER, HALF, or WHEELING
rom front to rear; and when the
of the rear battalion will sound

march it happens that a line is
ssive formation, each company
t is halted, by word of command
e companies should not order
they are directed to do so by
the battalion, which will not be
ed.

asing and diminishing Front.

r, or section is, at any time, to
or attempt in any way to avoid

any bad spot in the road, unless the preceding battalion or company has done so.

2. Whenever defiling is necessary, it must be executed with order and precision, as in manœuvring at a field day, by the proper word of command, preceded by the word *Attention.*

3. When a battalion or company comes to a defile, stream, or bad place in the road, where it might be more convenient for the men to defile individually, the officers must be on the alert, to keep their men from so doing.

4. Whenever a stream, ditch, bank, or other obstacle is to be crossed, it will be generally found that, instead of defiling or diminishing the front, the very contrary should be done, not only by causing the files of each section to open out gradually before they arrive at the ditch or obstacle, but even by increasing front to subdivisions or companies.

5. When a bad place is to be passed the majors and captains will go to the head of their respective wings and companies, to see that any orders which may have been given are obeyed with regularity and steadiness. They will remain at the spot till the whole of their wings or companies have passed, and will then resume their stations in their rear, and give the words *March at Ease.*

6. It has been proved that the defiling of one battalion on the march, even if done with as much promptitude as is practicable on such occasions, causes a delay of ten minutes; the defiling of a brigade, consisting of three battalions, would therefore cause a delay of at least half an hour. In the winter, when obstacles such as pools of water are frequent, and the days short, a column which is constantly defiling without cause will arrive at its quarters after dark; whereas, if it had performed the march regularly, it would have got in, in good time.

7. This order respecting defiling is, therefore, as much

calculated to provide for the personal ease and comfort of the men, as it is essential for the due performance of the movements of an army.

S. 8. Regulations concerning Stragglers.

1. No man is to remain behind or quit the ranks for any purpose, or on any account whatever, without permission from the captain or officer commanding the company.

2. Officers are never to give permission to any man to quit the ranks excepting on account of illness, or for the purpose of easing themselves, or for some other absolutely necessary purpose.

3. The officers must be particularly attentive to prevent the men from going out of the ranks for water. When this is required the regiment or column will be halted.

4. Men who obtain permission to fall out for a temporary purpose, or for any other cause than illness, must invariably leave their packs and arms, to be carried by the section they belong to, until they return.

S. 9. Hurry and Stepping out to be prevented.

1. It is of the greatest importance that the men should not on any account be hurried on the march; they are to be instructed that they are never to step out beyond the regular step, still less to double, unless by word of command.

2. When the proper distances of companies, or sections, cannot be preserved without an alteration in the step, it must always be effected by making the head of each battalion or company step short, instead of allowing the others to step out. Companies must invariably be kept intact, and the leading company of each battalion will, when necessary, step short until the last company of the battalion

he personal ease and comfort of
for the due performance of the

concerning Stragglers.

behind or quit the ranks for any
nt whatever, without permission
commanding the company.
give permission to any man to
on account of illness, or for the
ves, or for some other absolutely

particularly attentive to prevent
f the ranks for water. When this
column will be halted.
rmission to fall out for a tem-
y other cause than illness, must
s and arms, to be carried by the
il they return.

epping out to be prevented.

importance that the men should
rried on the march; they are to
e never to step out beyond the
uble, unless by word of command.
tances of companies, or sections,
out an alteration in the step, it
by making the head of each
p short, instead of allowing the
anies must invariably be kept in-
any of each battalion will, when
the last company of the battalion

has closed up, even though a large interval should be thereby occasioned between it and the preceding battalion.

3. When the head of a company, suppose No. 4, cannot keep up without overstepping, or leaving its own sections at too great a distance, the officer commanding it must call out "No. 4 cannot keep up," which must be repeated by the officers or serjeants on the flanks of the leading sections of the companies in front of No. 4 until it comes up to the commanding officer, who will shorten the step at the head of the column, unless he perceives that some obstacle, ascent, or difficult ground in front will give time to No. 4 to close up; in the meantime No. 4, if no answer is returned to the notice of its having lost distance, will continue at the regular step.

4. In like manner, if the head of a battalion cannot keep up with the preceding battalion, the commanding officer will forward a notice to the head of the column, detaching files at the same time, to preserve the communication.

5. When obstacles which delay the march are frequent, it may be desirable, in order to avoid loss of time, that each company, after passing an obstacle, should march on at the usual rate, without shortening its step, as the following company may overtake it at the next obstacle or ascent; but the leading section of a company should never be allowed to march on until the rear section has completely passed and closed up. The intervals between companies may be occasionally increased with advantage, but each company in itself must be kept intact.

SINGLE RANK AND SKELETON DRILL.

S. 10. *Battalion Drill in Single Rank.*

When there is not a sufficient number of men to form a complete battalion, the companies may be formed, for

practice, in single rank; in like manner a battalion may be divided into two, each formed in single rank, for the purpose of practising brigade movements.

S. 11. *Skeleton Drill.*

1. The following method of forming a skeleton battalion, for the instruction of officers and non-commissioned officers, will be adopted when a sufficient number of men cannot be collected to form a battalion in single rank.

2. A skeleton battalion will be formed of companies composed of two, four, or eight men each; representing, if there are two, the flanks of the company; if there are four, the flanks of subdivisions; if there are eight, the flanks of sections; the interval between the flanks will be preserved by means of a piece of rope held at the ends, which must at all times be kept at its full extent.

3. The ropes may be made to represent any number of files; the space for each (namely, 21 inches) being marked by a small piece of red cloth. Short pieces of wood should be fastened across the ends of the ropes, to enable the men to hold them.

4. When there are a sufficient number of men, several skeleton battalions may be formed, with which all the manœuvres of a brigade may be practised.

GUARDS.

S. 12. *Guard mounting and trooping the Colour.*

For guard mounting, the guards will be told off in equal divisions by the adjutant of the day, and formed in

a like manner a battalion may formed in single rank, for the e movements.

---

keleton Drill.

of forming a skeleton battalion, and non-commissioned officers, cient number of men cannot be in single rank.

ıt be formed of companies com- nen each; representing, if there company; if there are four, the ere are eight, the flanks of sec- the flanks will be preserved by l at the ends, which must at all nt.

le to represent any number of mely, 21 inches) being marked Short pieces of wood should of the ropes, to enable the men

ficient number of men, several formed, with which all the be practised.

ARDS.

and trooping the Colour.

e guards will be told off in ant of the day, and formed in

open column with unfixed bayonets; the senior serjeant of each division taking command of it. The cavalry (if any are present) will be in front.

The guards will be wheeled into line by the adjutant of the day, a serjeant being on the left of the line. The colour will be placed at a distance of about two divisions in front of the left of the line, in charge of a serjeant with double sentries. The walk of these sentries will be at right angles to the line, and their front inwards; all their movements must correspond, the man nearest the line, who will be the front rank man of the file, giving the time; they must turn outwards together when at three paces from the colour, and inwards when at ten paces from it, always turning towards the front, right, or left about, as the case may be; these sentries will order arms, stand at ease, come to attention, and shoulder with the men in the line.

The men of the right file of the first division will always be mounted as sentries on the colour, and they will resume their places while that division is wheeling to the left after receiving the colour, as will hereafter be described; the serjeant will also join that division.

The band will be formed in front of the right of the line, at right angles with it, facing inwards opposite the colour; the drums will be in front of the left of the line, a short distance in front of the colour, facing the band.

The guards will take open order by command of the adjutant, and will be handed over by him with shouldered arms to the town, or brigade, major. The adjutant will then take post on the right of the line.

The town, or brigade, major will inspect the guards and take command.

NON-COMMISSIONED OFFICERS — All the serjeants commanding guards will recover arms and move out two paces in front of the line, the right-hand

COMMANDING GUARDS—TO THE FRONT.	men of the rear ranks of divisions filling up the intervals left by their commanders.
QUICK—MARCH.	The serjeants will step off in quick time, and when near the saluting base on which the guards are to march past, they will receive the words INWARDS—TURN, on which the serjeant in the centre will halt, and face to the right about, bringing his rifle to the shoulder. The remaining serjeants will turn inwards, and will halt and face towards the line as they reach the centre serjeant, shouldering arms as they face.
INWARDS—TURN.	
ORDER—ARMS. STAND—AT EASE.	The guards and serjeants will then be directed to order arms and stand at ease.

The drums will beat the assembly marching across the parade, they will march through the intervals of the band, and halt and front in rear of it. As the assembly commences, the officers for duty will fall in, three paces in front of the serjeants, and about three paces from each other, with carried swords; the town, or brigade, major will then deliver the parole and countersign to the commanders of guards, and point out the divisions they are respectively to command. When sufficient officers are present for duty, there should be a captain, lieutenant, and ensign, or other officer to carry the colour, with the right division, which will form the escort to receive the colour; when there are not sufficient officers the captain and ensign only will be with the first division, in front of the second files from the right and left, and the lieutenant commanding the second division will take command of the escort when it goes for

e rear ranks of divisions fill-
e intervals left by their com-

jeants will step off in quick
when near the saluting base
the guards are to march past,
receive the words INWARDS—
which the serjeant in the
ll halt, and face to the right
bringing his rifle to the
The remaining serjeants will
ards, and will halt and face
the line as they reach the
eant, shouldering arms as they

ards and serjeants will then be
o order arms and stand at

assembly marching across the
ough the intervals of the band,
of it. As the assembly com-
will fall in, three paces in front
three paces from each other,
wn, or brigade, major will then
ntersign to the commanders of
ivisions they are respectively to
t officers are present for duty,
lieutenant, and ensign, or other
with the right division, which
ive the colour; when there are
aptain and ensign only will be
ont of the second files from the
tenant commanding the second
l of the escort when it goes for

the colour, moving together with the ensign in front of the centre of the first division.

GUARDS—ATTENTION. SHOULDER—ARMS.	The town, or brigade, major having called the guards to attention, and ordered them to shoulder arms, will give the detail of the duties to the field officer of the day, and hand over the parade to him.

The field officer of the day will then proceed as follows with the guard mounting, having previously asked permission to do so, if a senior officer is on the parade.

OFFICERS AND NON-COMMISSIONED OFFICERS, OUTWARDS—FACE.	The officers and serjeants will face outwards, the former recovering swords, the latter their rifles.
TAKE POST IN FRONT OF YOUR RESPECTIVE GUARDS. QUICK—MARCH.	The officers and serjeants will step off and will halt and face towards the line, the officers opposite their proper posts in line, the serjeants opposite the right of their guards or divisions; the former will port their swords, and the latter shoulder their rifles, as they halt.
TO YOUR GUARDS. SLOW—MARCH.	On the word MARCH, the officers and serjeants will step off in slow time, recovering their swords and rifles, as they take the first pace. The band will play a slow march as the officers and serjeants march to the line, and cease playing as the latter arrive at their places. When the officers arrive at three paces from the line they will mark time; the senior

	serjeants of divisions will mark time when on the right of their divisions; the remainder will move through the line to the supernumerary rank.
HALT—FRONT.	The officers and serjeants will halt and front, the former porting their swords, the latter shouldering their rifles.
ORDER—ARMS. FIX—BAYONETS. SHOULDER—ARMS.	According to regulation.
OFFICERS AND NON-COMMISSIONED OFFICERS, INSPECT YOUR GUARDS.	The officers and non-commissioned officers commanding divisions will pass down the front rank, and back between the ranks, inspecting the men, and will then resume their positions in front of the line, the remaining non-commissioned officers standing fast.
COLLECT THE REPORTS.	The adjutant of the day will ride down the front of the line of officers, and, having received the reports of the officers and non-commissioned officers commanding divisions, will make his report to the field officer of the day, and then place himself on the left of the front rank, six paces from it.

The field officer will take his post nine paces in front of the centre of the line, with his back to it.

TROOP.	The band and drums will play a slow march from the right to the left of the line, and on arriving near the colour, they will change front, halt, and cease playing.

of divisions will mark time
n the right of their divisions;
ainder will move through the
he supernumerary rank.

fficers and serjeants will halt and
ie former porting their swords,
r shouldering their rifles.

ding to regulation.

officers and non-commissioned
commanding divisions will pass
ie front rank, and back between
ks, inspecting the men, and will
ume their positions in front of the
e remaining non-commissioned
tanding fast.

adjutant of the day will ride
ie front of the line of officers,
ving received the reports of the
and non-commissioned officers
ding divisions, will make his
the field officer of the day, and
ce himself on the left of the front
paces from it.

e his post nine paces in front of
his back to it.

band and drums will play a slow
om the right to the left of the
on arriving near the colour, they
ge front, halt, and cease playing.

SLOPE ARMS. { The guards will slope arms by command of the field officer, the sentries on the colour supporting at the same time.

The band and drums will then play a quick march from left to right, change front, halt, and cease playing when in front of the right of the infantry.

The "Drummers call" will beat. On the first tap of the call the captain and lieutenant of the right division will recover swords and face inwards, the ensign who will be in front of the centre of the company will step back one pace; during the call, the captain will move across in quick time and place himself in front of the right file of the second division, and the lieutenant will place himself two paces in front of the ensign, both carrying their swords. The band will be placed in front of the first division, and the serjeant major, with his sword drawn, four paces in rear of the centre file.

The field officer will then give the commands SHOULDER—ARMS, ESCORT FOR THE COLOUR, STAND FAST; REMAINDER, ORDER-ARMS, STAND AT EASE—the sentries on the colour remaining with shouldered arms.

ESCORT FOR THE COLOUR, REAR RANK TAKE CLOSE—ORDER, MARCH. } The escort will take close order, the officers remaining in front.

QUICK—MARCH. *Left—Wheel. Forward. Halt, Rear Rank take Open Order—March.* { The escort, preceded by the band playing the "British Grenadiers," will move out the distance of a division and a half from the line, then wheel to the left, and march straight to the colour; the officer commanding the escort will halt his division at rather more than wheeling distance from the colour and will open the ranks.

The band when near the colour will wheel to the left, cease playing, halt, and face to the right about.

GUARDS ATTENTION SHOULDER—ARMS.	The field officer of the day will call the guards to attention, and shoulder arms.

The serjeant-major will move in quick time, by the left flank, to the front, receive the colour, and return towards the escort; the ensign will move out four paces in front of the lieutenant, passing by his right, and having saluted and returned his sword, will receive the colour from the serjeant-major, place it in his belt, and face about; the escort will then be ordered to present arms, the serjeant-major saluting, the remaining serjeants porting arms and facing outwards; the band will play "God save the Queen;" the sentries will also present arms.

Shoulder—Arms.	The escort will shoulder arms, the ensign will resume his post in rear of the lieutenant, passing by his left; the serjeant-major will move to the rear of the division, still keeping his sword drawn, and the band will front.
On the Move, Left Wheel, Slow March.	The escort will step off in slow time and wheel to the left preceded by the band, playing the "Grenadier's March;" the lieutenant keeping his sword at the port; the sentries and serjeant who had charge of the colour joining the escort.

When the band approaches the left of the line it will cease playing, turn to the right, and countermarch to the left, passing between the officers and front rank and the front and rear ranks.

he colour will wheel to the left,
e to the right about.

eld officer of the day will call the
o attention, and shoulder arms.

move in quick time, by the left
the colour, and return towards
move out four paces in front of
y his right, and having saluted
will receive the colour from the
his belt, and face about; the
d to present arms, the serjeant-
ing serjeants porting arms and
will play "God save the Queen;"
nt arms.

escort will shoulder arms, the en-
l resume his post in rear of the
nt, passing by his left; the ser-
ajor will move to the rear of the
, still keeping his sword drawn,
band will front.

scort will step off in slow time and
the left preceded by the band,
the "Grenadier's March;" the
nt keeping his sword at the
e sentries and serjeant who had
f the colour joining the escort.

aches the left of the line it will
right, and countermarch to the
officers and front rank and the

The drummers will move in rear of the rear rank. The band and drums will mark time until the escort reaches them.

To the Right—Turn Left—Wheel. / *Left—Wheel.* — The lieutenant when at four paces from the line of officers will give the words *To the Right Turn, Left Wheel,* and on the leading file of the escort arriving at the left file of the front rank of the line, will again give the words *Left—Wheel.*

GUARDS PRESENT ARMS. — As soon as the lieutenant has given the second word *Wheel,* the field officer of the day will order the guards to present arms, and the band will recommence playing.

The lieutenant of the escort, with his sword at the port, will move along the front of the line of officers, abreast of the second file from the right of the escort; the ensign carrying the colour following him, abreast of the centre of the escort.

The front rank of the escort will file between the ranks of the guards, the rear rank, one pace behind the rear ranks of the guards.

When the head of the escort arrives at the right of the remainder of the line, the captain with his sword at the port, will take the place of the lieutenant, and move on with the division, the lieutenant will mark time when at his original post, and the ensign will move on, passing him by the proper front; when the escort has cleared the remainder of the line, the lieutenant will give the words *halt-front, dress, eyes-front,* after which the captain will give the words *present-arms;* the band ceasing to play before the escort is halted.

The band will form up on the right of the line of infantry.

SHOULDER-ARMS. { The field officer will then order the guards to shoulder arms.

If a general officer is present, the field officer will order a general salute.

After this, the guards will take close order, the colour taking post in rear of the fourth file from the left of the right company, the serjeant-major placing himself in rear of it, and one serjeant on each side.

The guards will then break into open column, and march past in slow and quick time, as described in Section 1 of this part, the colour changing flank during the second wheel.

Having arrived on the original alignment, the guards will be halted and wheeled into line, and will then be directed to order arms and stand at ease.

The coverers of guards will be called to the front, and when they are properly covered in open column, the line will be called to attention by the town, or brigade, major, and will be ordered to face to the left and form guards.

FORM FOURS—RIGHT, TO YOUR RESPECTIVE GUARDS. QUICK MARCH. { On these commands, the guards will form fours to the right and march off to their posts; except those of less than four files, which will move to the front in line, or face to the right and move in file according to the order of the garrison.

When the guard mounting parade is dispensed with, the guards may be ordered to mount from their regimental private parades, or may be assembled in open column on the usual garrison parade, and then be wheeled into line and inspected by the town, or brigade, major, who will also march them off to their posts.

---

eld officer will then order the
shoulder arms.

ent, the field officer will order a

ill take close order, the colour
ourth file from the left of the
-major placing himself in rear of
side.

ak into open column, and march
, as described in Section 1 of this
ank during the second wheel.

original alignment, the guards
ed into line, and will then be
stand at ease.

will be called to the front, and
ered in open column, the line will
he town, or brigade, major, and
e left and form guards.

ese commands, the guards will
rs to the right and march off to
ts; except those of less than four
ch will move to the front in line,
to the right and move in file
g to the order of the garrison.

ng parade is dispensed with, the
mount from their regimental
assembled in open column on
and then be wheeled into line
or brigade, major, who will also
ts.

S. 13. *Relieving Guard.*

When practicable, the new guard will form line at twenty or thirty paces in front of the old guard, and will then advance in slow time.

New Guard Halt—Dress. Rear Rank take Open—Order, March.	When at ten or fifteen paces from the old guard, the new guard will be halted, dressed, and directed to take open order.
Old Guard Present—Arms.	The old guard, drawn up at open order on its parade, will receive the new guard with the prescribed salute.
New Guard Present—Arms.	The new guard will return the salute.
Old Guard Shoulder—Arms. New Guard Shoulder—Arms.	After which, both guards will be ordered to shoulder, and the commander of the old guard will hand the duplicate of his guard report to the commander of the new guard.
Old Guard Order—Arms. Stand at-Ease. New Guard Order—Arms. Stand at-Ease.	The guards will order arms and stand at ease.

The guard will then be told off and the first relief sent out; while the relief is going round, the commander will take over the property in charge of the guard, according to the list in the old guard report.

Old Guard Attention. Shoulder-Arms. New Guard Attention. Shoulder-Arms.	When the reliefs have returned, and all the men of the old guard have fallen in, both guards will be called to attention, and ordered to shoulder arms.

Old Guard Rear Rank take Close Order—March.	The old guard will then take close order.
Old Guard Form Fours—Right (or To the Right—Face.) Slow—March. New Guard Present—Arms.	The old guard will form fours (or face) to its right and march off in slow time, the new guard presenting arms.
Old Guard Quick. New Guard Shoulder-Arms.	When the left of the old guard is clear of the ground on which it stood, the guard will break into quick time, and the new guard will shoulder arms.
Guard, Form Fours—Right. Left Wheel, Quick—March. Left—Wheel.	The new guard will form fours to the right and wheel to the left in quick time; when its leading files arrive at the left of the ground on which the old guard was formed, it will again wheel to the left.
Halt—Front, Dress, Order—Arms, Stand at Ease, Attention. Shoulder Arms, To the Right—Face. Lodge—Arms.	When the new guard is on the ground which was occupied by the old guard, the commander will order it to halt, front, order arms, and stand at ease. He will then read the orders of the guard to his men, after which he will dismiss them in the usual manner; when the first relief comes in, the orders must be read to the men who have been on sentry.

In situations where the new guard cannot advance in line towards the front of the old guard, it will move up in fours or files in slow time and will be halted and fronted opposite to the latter, or if necessary on its left, in the same line, leaving an interval between them of four or six paces.

d guard will then take close

d guard will form fours (or face)
ht and march off in slow time,
guard presenting arms.

the left of the old guard is clear
round on which it stood, the
ll break into quick time, and the
d will shoulder arms.
ew guard will form fours to the
wheel to the left in quick time;
leading files arrive at the left of
nd on which the old guard was
t will again wheel to the left.
the new guard is on the ground
as occupied by the old guard,
ander will order it to halt, front,
ns, and stand at ease. He will
d the orders of the guard to
, after which he will dismiss
the usual manner; when the
f comes in, the orders must be
e men who have been on sentry.
new guard cannot advance in
e old guard, it will move up in
and will be halted and fronted
necessary on its left, in the same
tween them of four or six paces.

S. 14. *Marching Reliefs.*

Reliefs of less than four men will be formed in single rank, when of four men, or upwards, they will be formed in two ranks, and may be marched in line, in open ground; but in streets, or in narrow places, reliefs should always be marched in single rank, or files. When marching in line, the corporal will be on the right of his relief; when in single rank or files, he will be on the proper front of the rear file; he will carry his arms advanced, with his bayonet fixed.

When the first relief of a new guard is sent out, a corporal belonging to the old guard will accompany it, to bring in the relieved sentries. If the relief moves in line, he will be on the left flank; if in single rank or files, he will be in front, leading the single rank, or front rank of files. As soon as all the sentries are relieved, the corporals will change places, and the corporal of the old guard will take command.

S. 15. *Relieving or posting Sentries.*

On the approach of the relief, a sentry will place himself with shouldered arms in front of his sentry box. The corporal of the relief will proceed as follows:—

Shoulder Arms.	At about ten paces before the relief arrives opposite the sentry.
Relief—Halt.	At about six paces from the sentry.
Sentries Port—Arms.	The old sentry and the man who is to relieve him will port arms, the latter moving out from the relief and placing himself at one pace from the former, facing him; the old sentry will then give over his orders, the corporal referring to the board of orders to see if they are correctly given.

Pass.	On this word, the old sentry will take one pace to his left and then move to his place in the relief, facing to the rear, and the new sentry will take one pace to his front.
Front. *Shoulder—Arms.*	The sentries will then be ordered to front and shoulder arms.
Relief *Quick—March.* *Support—Arms.*	The relief will be marched on, and when it has proceeded about ten paces will be ordered to support arms.

The proper front of a sentry's post should be pointed out to him when he is posted, as well as the extent of his walk.

Sentries walking backwards and forwards on their posts, must do so in a brisk and soldier-like manner; they must on no account quit their arms, lounge, or converse with any one, nor must they stand in their sentry boxes in good or even in moderate weather. Sentries are permitted to support arms (or to sling, or trail, with the short rifle), or to order their arms and stand at ease; but they are not to slope them unless specially ordered to do so.

S. 16. *Sentries paying Compliments.*

On the approach of an officer, when he is at least fifteen paces distant, a sentry, if on the march, will halt, front, and shoulder arms; if standing at ease with ordered arms, he will come to attention and shoulder. To field officers and other officers of the army and navy entitled to the salute, he will present arms.

To all armed parties, whether they are commanded by an officer or not, a sentry will present arms, and the party will return the compliment, when marching at the slope or support, by shouldering arms, but when marching at the

s word, the old sentry will take
to his left and then move to
in the relief, facing to the rear,
new sentry will take one pace
nt.

entries will then be ordered to
shoulder arms.

elief will be marched on, and
has proceeded about ten paces
dered to support arms.

try's post should be pointed out
, as well as the extent of his

rds and forwards on their posts,
soldier-like manner; they must
ns, lounge, or converse with any
n their sentry boxes in good or
Sentries are permitted to sup-
rail, with the short rifle), or to
d at ease; but they are not to
ordered to do so.

paying Compliments.

ficer, when he is at least fifteen
the march, will halt, front, and
at ease with ordered arms, he
shoulder. To field officers and
nd navy entitled to the salute,

ther they are commanded by an
present arms, and the party will
hen marching at the slope or
ns, but when marching at the

trail, by advancing arms if armed with long rifles, or shouldering arms if armed with short rifles. Parties with side arms are to be considered as armed parties.

To all unarmed parties a sentry will shoulder arms, unless they are commanded by field officers, in which case he will present; in return, the commander of the party will give the word *eyes right*, or *eyes left*, as the case may be, and having passed him, *eyes front*.

Parties marching with arms at the secure, and parties with side arms, will pay and return compliments as unarmed parties.

Sentries will not present arms to any officer after sunset; but as long as they can discern an officer, they will come to their front on his approach, and stand steady with shouldered arms till he has passed.

Sentries in their sentry boxes will salute by coming smartly to attention.

For sentries on out-post duty, see Part IV. Section 23, No. 32.

S. 17. Sentries Challenging.

When it gets dark the sentries will challenge in the following manner:—On the approach of any person the sentry will port arms and call out in a sharp tone, *who comes there;* when on a post where a sudden rush could be made upon him, he will at once come to the charge; if the person approaching gives a satisfactory reply, the sentry will say *Pass friend, all's well*, remaining at the port or charge till he has passed. If the person approaching answers ROUNDS, the sentry will demand *What rounds;* and after the reply GRAND (or VISITING) ROUNDS, when there is no countersign, he will say *Pass grand* (or *visiting*) *rounds, all's well*, shouldering his arms at the same time, and presenting as they pass if they are grand rounds; but when there is a countersign he will say *Stand grand* (or *visiting*) *rounds,*

advance one and give the countersign, at the same time coming down to the charge; in this position he will receive the countersign, and if it is correct will say *Pass grand* (or *visiting*) *rounds*, and proceed as above described.

If the sentry is on or near the guard-room door, he will proceed as described in Section 19.

S. 18. *Instruction of Recruits as Sentries.*

Recruits should be instructed in their duties as sentries. The instructor will post them in different parts of the barrack yard, giving each of them some particular orders to attend to, and will teach them all the principles described in the preceding Section.

S. 19. *Guards Turning out.*

When guards turn out they will fall in with shouldered arms at open order, and will pay the compliments laid down in the "Queen's Regulations;" guards will not turn out after sunset, except on the approach of a body of troops, in cases of alarm, or to receive visiting rounds, or grand rounds; in the latter case only paying compliments.

The following form will be observed when a guard is visited by the field officer or captain of the day, called grand or visiting rounds. On the approach of the rounds the sentry at, or near, the guard-room door will port arms, and challenge *who comes there;* the officer will answer ROUNDS; *what rounds?* GRAND (OR VISITING) ROUNDS, *Stand grand* (or *visiting*) *rounds, guard turn out;* the guard will then turn out, and if there is no countersign, as soon as it has fallen in, the commander will call out *advance grand* (or *visiting*) *rounds, all's well;* to grand rounds he will present; to visiting rounds he will remain at the shoulder.

If there is a countersign to be given, a corporal or serjeant will be sent out with the right or left file of the guard, according to the position of the rounds; he will

countersign, at the same time in this position he will receive s correct will say *Pass grand* ceed as above described.
ar the guard-room door, he will on 19.

f Recruits as Sentries.

ted in their duties as sentries. n in different parts of the bar- hem some particular orders to em all the principles described

ls Turning out.

ey will fall in with shouldered pay the compliments laid down s;" guards will not turn out pproach of a body of troops, in ve visiting rounds, or grand ly paying compliments.
be observed when a guard is captain of the day, called grand e approach of the rounds the room door will port arms, and he officer will answer ROUNDS; SITING) ROUNDS, *Stand grand urn out;* the guard will then countersign, as soon as it has ill call out *advance grand* (or o grand rounds he will present, main at the shoulder.
to be given, a corporal or ser- the right or left file of the ition of the rounds; he will

move next to the front rank men; when at about ten paces from the rounds he will order his men to halt and port arms, and will then repeat the challenge *who comes there?* ROUNDS, *What rounds?* GRAND (or VISITING) ROUNDS; *Stand grand* (or *visiting*) *rounds, advance one and give the countersign;* the officer, or the non-commissioned officer accompanying the rounds, will then advance and give the countersign, the two men of the file charging bayonets as he advances; the non-commissioned officer of the escort will go back and repeat the countersign to the commander of the guard, who (if the word is correct) will call out, *Advance grand rounds* (or *visiting rounds*), *all's well.* The non-commissioned officer of the escort having returned to his men, will then order them to *Shoulder Arms*, face inwards, and step back three paces each. The rounds will pass between them. If they are grand rounds the escort will be ordered to present; the guard will also present to grand rounds as they approach. As soon as the rounds have passed, the escort will be ordered by a non-commissioned officer to shoulder (if they have presented), face inwards, march back, and fall in on the flank of the guard, taking up "the present," if the rest of the guard are at the present; the guard will then be dismissed, as already described in Part I., Section 48.

FUNERALS.

S. 20. *Directions for Funeral Parties.*

The party appointed for the escort, according to the rank of the deceased, will be drawn up two deep, with opened ranks and unfixed bayonets, facing the house or marquee where the corpse is lodged. Small parties that are to march in files will be formed with their files extended at one side pace from each other. When the corpse is brought out, the officer commanding will proceed as follows:—

PRESENT—ARMS. According to regulation.

REVERSE—ARMS.

Throw the rifle out to the front to the full extent of the left arm, give the butt a cant with the right hand towards the body, bringing the butt inside the left arm, and turning the muzzle straight over to the front; seize the rifle with the right hand under the lower band, barrel to the front, muzzle pointing down, guard as high as the chin, and seize the cock with the left hand without moving the rifle, arms close to the body.

Two.—Give the rifle a cant under the left arm, bringing the muzzle to the rear, sling uppermost, and with the right hand behind the body seize the rifle.

The officers' swords are reversed under the right arm, the point of the sword downwards, the hilt being grasped with the right hand.

The serjeants' rifles are reversed also under the left arm.

REAR RANK TAKE CLOSE ORDER—MARCH. BY COMPANIES (SUBDIVISIONS OF SECTIONS) LEFT WHEEL, OR ON THE RIGHT BACKWARDS WHEEL. QUICK—MARCH. HALT—DRESS. REAR RANKS TAKE OPEN ORDER—MARCH.

Large funeral parties will march by companies, subdivisions, or sections, which will be wheeled forwards or backwards into column, as circumstances may require, and will be placed left in front at the head of the procession; when formed, the ranks will again be opened, and the files will be extended to one side pace distance from the right.

TO THE
FACE
SLOW-
MARCH
The re
follows:—
FALL BA
OFFICERS
TWO, AC
COMPANI
SUBDIVIS
TO THE
TURN—R
—WHE
HALT—R
INWAR
FACE—F
RANK F
PACES S
BACK-
MARCH
If the
outwards,

the rifle out to the front to the
ut of the left arm, give the butt
th the right hand towards the
nging the butt inside the left
d turning the muzzle straight
the front; seize the rifle with
hand under the lower band
the front, muzzle pointing
uard as high as the chin, and
cock with the left hand without
he rifle, arms close to the body.
Give the rifle a cant under the
bringing the muzzle to the
uppermost, and with the right
ind the body seize the rifle.
ficers' swords are reversed under
arm, the point of the sword
ds, the hilt being grasped with
hand.
rjeants' rifles are reversed also
e left arm.

funeral parties will march by
s, subdivisions, or sections,
ll be wheeled forwards or back
o column, as circumstances may
nd will be placed left in front
ead of the procession; when
he ranks will again be opened
files will be extended to one
distance from the right.

TO THE LEFT FACE. — In small parties, after the men have reversed arms, they will simply be faced to the left, and moved to the head of the procession, both ranks countermarching inwards, if necessary.

SLOW—MARCH. — The party will move off in slow time followed by the music, with drums muffled, playing the Dead March.

The remainder of the procession will be formed as follows:—

THE CORPSE.

PALL BEARERS OF EQUAL RANK WITH THE DECEASED ON EACH SIDE OF THE CORPSE.

CHIEF MOURNERS.

OFFICERS, OR NON-COMMISSIONED OFFICERS, TWO AND TWO, ACCORDING TO RANK, THE JUNIORS IN FRONT.

COMPANIES (or SUBDIVISIONS) TO THE LEFT TURN—RIGHT—WHEEL. HALT—RANKS INWARDS, FACE—FRONT RANK FOUR PACES STEP BACK—MARCH. — When the head of the procession arrives near the spot where it is to meet the clergyman, if the escort is formed in companies or subdivisions, they will be ordered to turn to the left and wheel to the right. When the wheels are completed the escort will be halted, the ranks faced inwards, and the front rank ordered to step back four paces, or more if necessary, forming a lane for the corpse to pass through.

If the party is formed in files the ranks will incline outwards, and will then be halted and faced inwards.

The rifle will be quitted by the right hand and brought to a perpendicular

REST ON YOUR ARMS REVERSED.	position; the muzzle placed upon the toes of the left foot. The right and left hands open, are placed upon the butt end of the rifle.
STAND AT EASE. ATTENTION.	The soldiers' heads lean on the back of the left hand, so as to look towards the corpse. The corpse and the remainder of the procession having passed through the lane, the word ATTENTION is given, on which the soldiers raise their heads.
REVERSE ARMS.	Lay hold of the rifle with the right hand under the lower band, fingers round the barrel, and raise it under the left arm, muzzle slanting to the rear; seize the cock at the same instant with the left hand, move the right hand smartly to the rear of the body, and grasp the rifle.
RANKS RIGHT AND LEFT FACE—SLOW HALT—FRONT. MARCH.	The ranks will then be faced towards the grave and will move in slow time, the front rank inclining towards the rear rank till at two paces distance from it; the escort will be halted and fronted in open order, near the grave and facing towards it.
REST ON YOUR ARMS REVERSED. STAND AT EASE.	As before described.

The funeral service will be performed, after which the escort will proceed as follows:—

ATTENTION.	As already described.
PRESENT ARMS.	1st. Seize the rifle with the left hand at the swell, thumb in front, back of the hand towards the body.

n; the muzzle placed upon th
the left foot. The right and le
open, are placed upon the but
the rifle.
soldiers' heads lean on the back o
t hand, so as to look towards th
. The corpse and the remainder o
ocession having passed through th
he word ATTENTION is given, o
the soldiers raise their heads.
hold of the rifle with the righ
under the lower band, fingers round
arrel, and raise it under the lef
nuzzle slanting to the rear; seize
ck at the same instant with th
nd, move the right hand smartly
rear of the body, and grasp th

ranks will then be faced towards
ave and will move in slow time
ont rank inclining towards th
nk till at two paces distance from
e escort will be halted and fronted
n order, near the grave and facing
ls it.

before described.

ill be performed, after which th
llows:—
already described.
Seize the rifle with the left hand
swell, thumb in front, back of th
towards the body.

	2nd. Seize the small of the butt with the right hand, the back of it to the left, thumb pointing down. 3rd. Turn the rifle with the butt close to the outside of right arm, inclining the muzzle to the front, to the position of presented arms.
SHOULDER ARMS.	According to regulation.
WITH BLANK CARTRIDGE LOAD.	According to regulation.
FIRE THREE VOLLEYS IN THE AIR. READY.	According to regulation.
PRESENT.	Elevating the muzzle in the air, fire and proceed to load according to regulation.

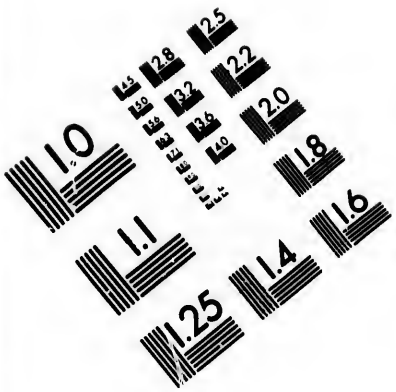
After firing three rounds the men will be directed to order arms, fix bayonets, shoulder arms, and the ranks will be closed. The escort will then be marched back to camp or barracks, in fours, subdivisions, or sections right in front in quick time.

In marching back, the music is not to play, or the drums to beat, until the party is entirely clear of the burying ground.

N.B. In the funerals of general officers, the arrangements of the prescribed number of pieces of cannon, and of the different troops, must be made under the superintendence of the general officer commanding the whole, and must necessarily depend on local circumstances.

LONDON:
Printed by GEORGE E. EYRE and WILL[illegible] SPOTTISWOODE,
Printers to the Queen's most Exce[illegible] Majesty.
For Her Majesty's Stationery [illegible]ce.

LONDON:
GEORGE E. EYRE and WILLIAM SPOTTISWOODE,
to the Queen's most Excellent Majesty.
for Her Majesty's Stationery Office.



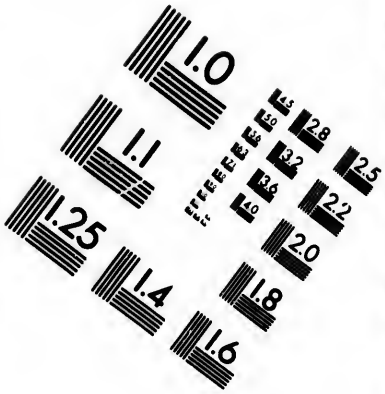
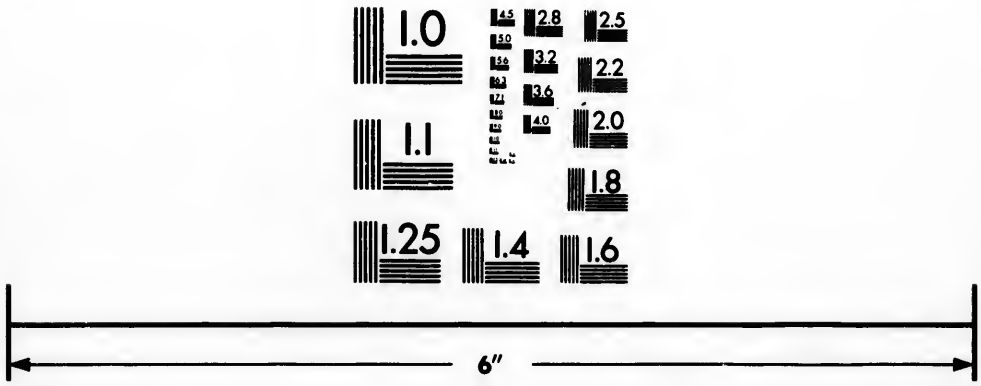
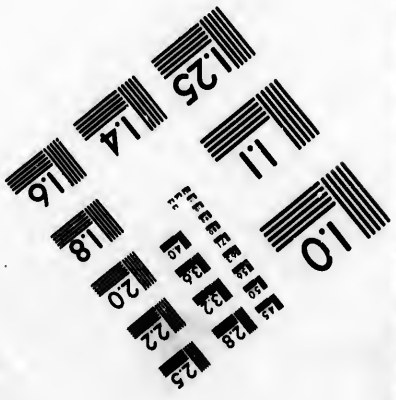


IMAGE EVALUATION
TEST TARGET (MT-3)





Photographic
Sciences
Corporation

23 WEST MAIN STREET
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580
(716) 872-4503